EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

New Hello! ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors

GPS
تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلى

الصف الثالث الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الثانى

3rd Prep.
2024
SECOND TERM

طبعة جديدة

طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات
الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣-٢٠٢٤
ونظام البوكلت وتعديلات
كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٤

Unit 7

Our world

Objectives:

- **Reading:**
- **Writing:**
- **Listening:**
- **Speaking:**
- **Language:**
- **Life skills:**

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 2 : 5
WB pages 70 & 71

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

natural wonders	العجائب الطبيعية	oasis - oases (n)	واحة-واحات
shooting stars (n)	الشهب	national park (n)	محمية طبيعية / حديقة وطنية
meteorite (n)	نيزك	coast (n)	ساحل
surround(ed)(v)	يحيط بـ	shape (n)	شكل
date palm trees	أشجار النخيل	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
destroy (ed) (v)	يدمر	volunteer (ed) (v), (n)	يتطوع- متطوع
pollute (d) (v)	يلوث	spring (n)	ينبوع [مياه]
newsagent (n)	بائع صحف / محل بيع الصحف		

Natural habitats

البيئات الطبيعية

coastal habitat	البيئة الساحلية	rainforest habitat	بيئة الغابة المطيرة
grassland habitat	البيئة العشبية [المراعى]	wetland habitat	بيئة الأرض الرطبة
polar habitat	البيئة القطبية	desert habitat	البيئة الصحراوية
mountain habitat	البيئة الجبلية	forest habitat	بيئة الغابات

Animals

حيوانات

orangutan	إنسان الغاب	polar bear	الدب القطبى
caracal	الوشق المصرى [قط الكاركال]	frog	ضفدع

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

grassland – Polar – desert – shape – destroys

1. ..... bears live in the North Pole.
2. The ..... habitat has large green areas with no mountains.
3. The ..... of the egg is oval.
4. Cutting down trees ..... the environment.

Lesson 1

SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 70

The Nile Delta	دلتا النيل	cover (ed) (v)	يغطى
area (n)	منطقة	wet (adj)	مبتل
warm (adj)	دافئ	guess(ed)(v)	يخمن
model (n)	نموذج	call(ed)(v)	يسمى - يدعى

Lesson 2

SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 71

contain (ed) (v)	يحتوى على	locals = local people (n)	السكان المحليون
field (n)	حقل	appearance (n)	المظهر الخارجى
believe (d) (v)	يؤمن - يصدق	cause (d) (v)	يسبب
fence (n)	سياج - سور	magazine (n)	مجلة
robot (n)	انسان آلى	factory (n)	مصنع
Bedouin (n) , (adj)	البدو / بدوى	tourist(n)	سائح
location (n)	موقع	continue (d) (v)	يستمر
dive (d) (v)	يغطس	furniture (n)	أثاث

Famous places

أماكن مشهورة

the White Desert National Park	محمية الصحراء البيضاء	the Kharga Oasis	واحة الخارجة
		Gebel Elba	جبل علبة [محمية طبيعية]
Al Nayzak Lake	بحيرة النيزك	Wadi al-Weshwashy	وادى الوشواشى [فى مدينة نويبع جنوب سيناء]
the Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى		
Red Sea Coast	ساحل البحر الأحمر	Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen
lay	تضع البيض	laid	laid
drive	يقود	drove	driven
hide	يختبئ	hid	hidden

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

habitat	the natural home of an animal or plant	البيئة الطبيعية
coastal habitat	these habitats are next to the sea or the ocean. You often find rocks there	البيئة الساحلية
desert habitat	there is very little or no rain in these habitats. It can be very hot	البيئة الصحراوية

forest habitat	these habitats are large areas of land that are covered with trees	بيئة الغابات
grassland habitat	these habitats usually have large green areas and no mountains	البيئة العشبية (المراعي)
polar habitat	these habitats are always cold and are often covered by ice	البيئة القطبية
rainforest habitat	these habitats have a lot of trees. They are usually very hot and have a lot of rain	بيئة الغابة المطيرة
wetland habitat	there is not always rain in these habitats, but there is always a lot of water	بيئة الأرض الرطبة
fill	make something full, so there is no space for any more of something	يملأ
oasis	an area in the desert where you can find water	واحة
polar bear	a large, white bear which lives on the ice of the Arctic	الدب القطبى
mountain habitat	these habitats are very high. It can be very cold in the highest parts	البيئة الجبلية
wonder	something that makes you feel it is beautiful or amazing	عجيبة - أعجوبة
surrounded by	everywhere around you	محاط بـ

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
cause	سبب	reason	effect / result	نتيجة
strange	غريب	unusual / unfamiliar	usual / familiar	عادى - مألوف
local	محلى	native	foreigner / stranger	أجنبى
top	قمة	peak	bottom	قاع
destroy	يدمر	damage / break down	save	ينقذ
protect	يحمى	reserve / save	endanger	يعرض للخطر
natural	طبيعى	normal	unnatural / artificial	غير طبيعى
huge	كبير (الحجم)	massive / enormous	tiny	صغير (الحجم)
bright	صافى - رائق	clear / shiny	polluted	ملوث
national	وطنى - قومى	public	private/special	خاص

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
re–	يقوم بالفعل مرة ثانية	rewrite	يعيد كتابة
un–	تعطى عكس المعنى	unusually	على غير العادة
–ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	location	موقع
–ern	تكون الصفة من الاسم	western	غربى
en–	تكون الفعل من الاسم	endanger	يعرض للخطر
–al	تكون صفة من الاسم	natural coastal national	طبيعى ساحلى قومى
–ance	تكون الاسم من الفعل	appearance	مظهر

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 coast (n) - shore - beach - bank

* coast (n) — ساحل [حدود البلد تجاه البحر]
  - My dad has a villa on the North **Coast**.
* shore (n) — شاطئ [الأرض التى على حافة البحر أو البحيرة]
  - I like walking along the **shore**.
* beach (n) — شاطئ (البلاج) [المنطقة الرملية التى بجوار البحر]
  - My kids like playing on the **beach**.
* bank (n) — ضفة (النهر)
  - There are many cities on the **banks** of the Nile. *SB Page 3 / WB Page 71*

2

ملحوظة : عدم جمع الاسم بعد العدد فى حالة وجود (-) فى التعبيرات التالية :

a three - **hour** drive / a ten - **floor** building

a five - **pound** note / a six - **person** table *SB Page 4*

3 wonder - wander

* wonder (ed) (v) — يتساءل - يتعجب
  - I **wonder** where Manar lives.
* wonder (n) — عجيبة - أعجوبة
  - I think the Great Pyramid is the best **wonder** from the past.
* wander(ed) (v) — يتجول (بلا هدف)
  - I don't like those who waste their time **wandering** in the city.

SB Page 4

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
get the most rain	يسقط عليها أكثر نسبة أمطار	covered by	مغطى بـ
lay eggs	تضع البيض	in the shape of an eye	على شكل عين
make a list of	يعد / يكتب قائمة من	(be) surrounded by	محاط بـ
take its name from	يستمد اسمه من	on the western side of	فى الجانب الغربى من
show respect for	يظهر الاحترام لـ	fall into	يسقط فى
made into strange shapes	تحوّل إلى أشكال غريبة	(be) cut out of the rock	منحوت فى الصخر
		for the first time	لأول مرة
a three-hour drive from	تبعد مسافة ٣ ساعات بالسيارة عن	cut down	يقطع (الأشجار)
		home to	موطن لـ
easy to reach	سهل الوصول إليه	on a day-trip	فى رحلة لمدة يوم واحد

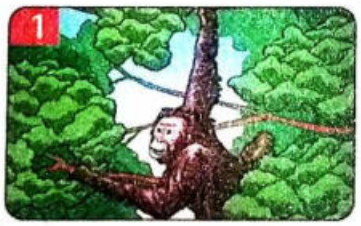
II Skills

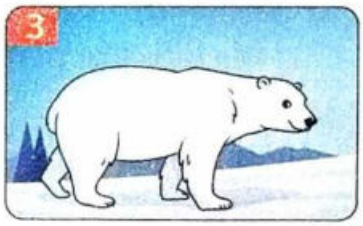
1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 2



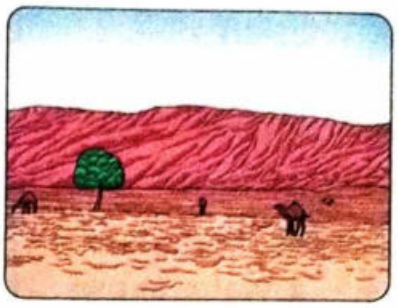


1. Orangutans live in rainforests and spend **nearly**(1) **their entire lives**(2) in trees .
2. Sea turtles **rarely**(3) leave the ocean, except to **lay eggs**(4) in the sand.
3. The polar bear is one of the few animals that can live in a polar habitat.
4. Caracals live in grasslands because they like to **hide**(5) in the long grass.
5. Frogs are wetland animals that are able to live on land **as well as**(6) in water.

(1) تقريبًا | (2) حياتهم بأكملها | (3) نادرًا | (4) تضع البيض | (5) يختبئ | (6) بالإضافة إلى

on Lesson 2 WB page 71

The **Kharga Oasis**(1) is surrounded by desert, far from the River Nile. It is visited by more and more tourists every year. Hundreds of **date palm trees**(2) are grown here. The dates are sold in many shops in the **area**(3). You can also fill your bags with the baskets, shoes and **furniture**(4) that are also made from the date palm trees. The Kharga Oasis is one of Egypt's natural wonders!



Pop Quiz on Reading

- Making inference — عمل استنتاج

Learn 1. Infer why they plant palm trees and don't plant trees instead.
- *I think because they use date palm trees to make baskets, shoes and furniture.*

Practise 2. Infer that the Kharga Oasis is important.
.....

(1) واحة الخارجة
(2) نخيل التمر
(3) منطقة
(4) أثاث

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

Definitions

1. WB " ....." are warm, wet areas of land where many kinds of plants, and birds can grow and live. *(Menofia 2023)*
   a. Deserts b. Rivers c. Rainforests d. Lakes
2. SB ..... habitats usually have large green areas and no mountains.
   a. Polar b. Coastal c. Desert d. Grassland
   (New Valley 2022)
3. SB A ..... land is the land that is next to the sea or the ocean.
   a. forest b. desert c. coastal d. polar
   (South Sinai 2022)
4. LM A ..... is the natural home or environment of an animal, plant, or other organisms.
   a. habit b. habitat c. hobby d. health

Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes

5. LM Some large habitats are found at the top of Earth. "....." is the opposite in meaning to "top".
   a. East b. West c. Bottom d. Button
6. The floods broke down some coastal hotels in Thailand. The words "broke down " here mean ".....". *(Minia 2023)*
   a. destroyed b. designed c. built d. made

7. We can make an adjective from the word "coast" by adding the suffix "....." . *(South Sinai 2023 / Gharbia 2022)*
   a. -ed b. -ive c. -ly d. -al
8. I'll reread the story. The prefix "re" means to read it ..... . *(Assiut 2022)*
   a. once b. last c. before d. again

▸ **Guessing the meaning from the text**

9. SB Some animals prefer a grassland habitat. "Habitat" here means ..... .
   a. water to use b. sports to do c. food to enjoy d. a place to live in
10. WB The seawater here is ..... . I can see the little fish.
   a. clear b. polluted c. huge d. national

El-Moasser Exercises

▸ **Key vocabulary**

11. Siwa is a/an ..... in the Western Desert.
   a. valley b. island c. village d. oasis
12. Water ..... come naturally to the surface from under the ground.
   a. strings b. springs c. oases d. parks

▸ **Definitions**

13. The ..... habitats are always cold and are often covered by ice.
   a. desert b. polar c. forest d. coastal
14. A ..... is something that makes you feel it is beautiful or amazing.
   a. wander b. wonder c. jumper d. machine

▸ **Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes**

15. We can make a noun from the word "appear" by adding the suffix "....." .
   a. -ment b. -ance c. -er d. -ly
16. The synonym of the word "strange" is "....." .
   a. usual b. similar c. familiar d. unusual

▸ **Guessing the meaning from the text**

17. This house looks like a plane. It has a strange ..... .
   a. shape b. size c. colour d. name
18. He works for a charity for free. He is a ..... .
   a. leader b. chief c. volunteer d. manager
19. This lake is not man-made. It's ..... .
   a. natural b. new c. physical d. ancient

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

20. The wind has made the rock ..... strange shapes.
   a. of b. off c. into d. for

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

A. Describing a habitat :

وصف بيئة طبيعية :

يمكنك وصف بيئة طبيعية باستخدام الجمل التالية :

1. There are many different habitats around the world.
١. يوجد العديد من البيئات المختلفة حول العالم.
2. A coastal habitat is along the coast of the sea.
٢. تقع البيئة الساحلية على إمتداد ساحل البحر.
3. There are some animals that live in the sea, such as the sea turtle.
٣. هناك بعض الحيوانات تعيش فى البحر مثل السلحفاة البحرية.

B. Asking and answering questions about a natural wonder :

توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن أحد العجائب الطبيعية :

Questions	Answers
1. Where is Al Nayzak Lake ? ١. أين تقع بحيرة النيزك ؟	- It is a three-hour drive from Hurghada. - تبعد ثلاث ساعات بالسيارة من مدينة الغردقة.
2. What is it called by locals ? ٢. بماذا تلقب من قبل المحليين ؟	- The lake is called "the shooting star". - تلقب البحيرة باسم «الشهاب».
3. What does it look like ? ٣. ما شكل البحيرة ؟	- It is cut out of the rock in the shape of an eye. - هى منحوتة فى الصخر على شكل عين.
4. What colour is the water of Al Nayzak Lake ? ٤. ما لون مياه بحيرة النيزك ؟	- It's filled with the bright blue water of the Red Sea. - إنها ممتلئة بالمياه الزرقاء الصافية من مياه البحر الأحمر.
5. Why do people like visiting the lake ? ٥. لماذا يحب الناس زيارة البحيرة ؟	- For diving and swimming. - بغرض الغطس والسباحة.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

A natural wonder in Egypt

عجيبة طبيعية فى مصر :

1. There are some beautiful natural wonders in Egypt, such as the White Desert National Park.
١. يوجد بعض العجائب الطبيعية الجميلة فى مصر مثل محمية الصحراء البيضاء.
2. It contains five oases, with rocks that the wind has made into strange shapes.
٢. تحتوى على خمس واحات بها صخور قامت الرياح بتحويلها إلى أشكال غريبة.
3. It is a wonder as the colours change at different times of day.
٣. تعتبر عجيبة لأن الألوان بها تتغير فى أوقات مختلفة من اليوم.

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابه
Different habitats around the world	**Read and complete :** 1. There are many different ..... around the world. Is that right ? مواطن - بيئات - Yes, it is right. 2. What are ..... habitats ? ساحلى - They are habitats that are next to the coast of the sea.	**Finish the following dialogue :** **Omar and Ali are talking about natural habitats.** **Omar :** Do you know that there are many different habitats around the world ? Ali : (1) ..... . **Omar :** (2) ..... ? Ali : They are next to the coast of the sea. **Omar :** (3) ..... ? Ali : Sea turtles will visit the land for egg laying. **Omar :** Are there grasslands around the world ? Ali : (4) ..... . **Omar :** Where are grasslands found ? Ali : (5) ..... . **Omar :** Between mountains and deserts ! Thanks for your help.	**Write a review on :** **"Different habitats around the world"** .....
An Egyptian natural wonder	1. Which place do you think should be on the list of Egypt's ..... ? العجائب الطبيعية - I would choose Wadi al-Weshwashy. 2. Where's that ? - It's on the ..... to South Sinai. طريق	**A :** Do you know about any natural wonders in Egypt ? B : (1) ..... . **A :** Al Nayzak Lake ! (2) ..... ? B : It's a three-hour drive from Hurghada. **A :** What do local people call it ? B : The lake is called "the shooting star." **A :** (3) ..... ? B : It is cut out of the rock in the shape of an eye. **A :** What colour is the water of Al Nayzak Lake ? B : (4) ..... . **A :** Bright Blue! Have you ever been to the lake ? B : (5)	**"An Egyptian natural wonder"** .....

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

1. The national park ..... (visit) by many people every year. *(Menofia 2023)*
2. These pictures are ..... (take) by my sister. *(The Red Sea 2023)*
3. Football ..... (plays) all over the world. *(Minia 2023)*
4. LM My room ..... (doesn't tidy) by my sister; I usually tidy it myself.
5. SB These areas are ..... (know) as polar habitats.
6. SB These habitats ..... (found) at the top and the bottom of Earth.
7. SB What kind of habitat is the area around the Nile Delta ..... (call) ?
8. WB Fewer magazines ..... (sell) today by newsagents because of the internet.
9. SB Which kinds of habitats ..... (are finding) at Gebel Elba ?
10. WB Hundreds of date palm trees ..... (is) grown here.
11. WB Our beaches are visited ..... (with) thousands of tourists every year.
12. SB Why isn't Gebel Elba ..... (visiting) by more tourists ?

El-Moasser Exercises

13. Al Nayzak Lake ..... (describe) by visitors as one of the best places to dive and swim.
14. In Australia, the start of spring ..... (are) celebrated in September every year.
15. ..... (Do) you helped daily with your homework ?

EL-MOASSER
A week is enough
مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه فى اسبوع واحد فقط

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Ayman is talking to his friend Ramy about "Gebel Elba".

Ayman: Today I have read an interesting article about a national park.

Ramy : What is it called ?

Ayman: (1) ..... .

Ramy : Gebel Elba! (2) ..... ?

Ayman: It takes its name from the mountain in the middle of it.

Ramy : Can you give me some more information about it ?

Ayman: (3) ..... . It's a national park which is surrounded by grassland

Ramy : Is it visited by many people every year ?

Ayman: (4) ..... .

Ramy : (5) ..... ?

Ayman: Because it isn't easy to reach. Its location is remote. *(South Sinia 2023)*

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We should protect our planet. "Protect" is similar in meaning to ..... .
   a. damage b. save c. increase d. discover
   (Damietta 2022)

2. A/An ..... is an area in the desert where you can find water and it's always green. *(Minia 2023)*
   a. forest b. oasis c. coast d. lake

3. To form the adjective of the word "nation", we add the suffix "....." .
   a. –al b. –y c. –able d. –er

4. The synonym of "bright" is "....." . *(The Red Sea 2023)*
   a. dark b. shiny c. dull d. boring

5. WB The ..... is a large natural area of land which is mostly green.
   a. shape b. grassland c. desert d. coast
   (Cairo 2023)

6. This shop only sells magazines. It is a ..... .

a. robot b. newsagent c. builder d. mechanic

3 LM Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

amazing - locates - is located - springs - swimming - local

There are different places that could be on the list of Egypt's natural wonders. One of these is Wadi al-Weshwashy which (1) ..... on the way to South Sinai. There, you can find (2) ..... that form small lakes. It's a wonderful place for (3) ..... . Really, it's an (4) ..... place to visit.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The Kharga Oasis ..... (visited) by many tourists every year. *(Giza 2023)*
2. Letters are delivered ..... (of) the postman.
3. WB Large areas of wetlands ..... (cover) by ice.
4. English ..... (teach) at our school. *(New Valley 2022)*
5. My grandfather's house ..... (surround) by some beautiful fields.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A review of a natural wonder in Egypt" *(Aswan 2023)*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons

3 & 4

SB pages 6 : 8
WB pages 72 & 73

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

fossil (n)	حفرية	preserved (adj)	محفوظ
species (n)	نوع / أنواع - فصائل	length (n)	طول[افقى]
remote (adj)	بعيد - ناء	stables (n)	اسطبلات [للخيول]
treat (ed) (v)	يتعامل - يعامل	carriage (n)	عربة تجرها الخيول
owner (n)	مالك	whale (n)	حوت
deforestation (n)	إزالة الغابات	lighthouse (n)	منارة
depression (n)	منخفض	researcher (n)	باحث

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

stables - deforestation - Species - whales

1. Cutting down all the trees in an area is called ..... .
2. Horses are kept in ..... .
3. ..... are a group of animals or plants of the same kind.

Lesson 3

SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 72

flood (n)	فيضان	repair (ed) (v)	يُصَلِّح
southwest (n)	جنوب غربى	Apollodorus	أبولودورس [مؤرخ يونانى]
latest (adj)	الأحدث	capital (n)	عاصمة
once (adv)	ذات مرة	white rhino	وحيد القرن الأبيض
ingredients (n)	مكونات - عناصر	publish (ed) (v)	ينشر
situation (n)	موقف - وضع	report (n)	تقرير
emperor (n)	إمبراطور	remove (d) (v)	يزيل
builder (n)	عامل بناء	danger (n)	خطر
special (adj)	خاص - مميز	Greek (n / adj)	اللغة اليونانية - يونانى [الجنسية]
statue (n)	تمثال	pipes (n)	أنابيب
expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع	including (adj)	متضمن - شامل

Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 73

pull (ed) (v)	يسحب - يجر	buffalo (n)	جاموسة
park (ed) (v),(n)	يركن / حديقة عامة	work (ed) (v), (n)	يعمل / عمل

Famous cities & places

أماكن ومدن مشهورة

Borneo	بورنيو (جزيرة فى آسيا)	India	دولة الهند
Petra	مدينة بترا (فى الأردن)	Rome	مدينة روما
the Sphinx	أبو الهول (فى الجيزة)	the Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة
Damascus	مدينة دمشق	the Great Wall of China	سور الصين العظيم
Fayum Depression	منخفض الفيوم	Pantheon	البانثيون (معبد فى روما)
UNESCO World Heritage Site	موقع التراث العالمى لمنظمة اليونسكو	Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباى
Taj Mahal	تاج محل (فى الهند)	Wadi al-Hitan "the Valley of the Whales"	وادى الحيتان

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
become	يصبح	became	become
lose	يخسر - يفقد	lost	lost
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
burn	يحرق / يحترق	burned / burnt	burned / burnt
stand	يقف	stood	stood
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

species	a group of animals or plants of the same kind	نوع / سلالة
deforestation	when all the trees in an area are cut down	إزالة الغابات
carriage	something that people travel in, that is pulled by a horse	عربة تجرها الخيول
owner	the owner of an animal is the person who has bought it	مالك
stable	a building where people keep horses	إسطبل (خيول)
treat	if you treat someone well, you are nice to them	يتعامل - يعامل
destroy	damage something so badly that you cannot repair it	يدمر
endangered	put in a dangerous situation	معرض للخطر

length	how long something is	طول
preserved	kept safe from being damaged	محفوظ
remote	very far from somewhere	بعيد - ناءٍ
depression	the land that is below the area around it	منخفض
fossil	the remains of animals or plants that lived in the past	حفرية

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
remote	بعيد - ناءٍ	far/distant	close/nearby	قريب
unkind	قاسى	cruel	kind	طيب
hard	صعب	difficult	easy	سهل
terrible	فظيع - شنيع	very bad - awful	amazing	مدهش
warm	دافئ	quite hot	cool	معتدل البرودة
wet	مبتل	rainy	dry	جاف
surprise	يدهش - يفاجئ	amaze	expect	يتوقع
find out	يكتشف	discover	hide - ignore	يخبئ - يتجاهل
in danger	معرض للخطر	endangered - unsafe	safe - protected	آمن - محمى
famous	مشهور	well-known / popular	unknown unpopular / unfamous	غير معروف غير مشهور
lucky	محظوظ	fortunate	unlucky / unfortunate	غير محظوظ
ancient	قديم - عتيق	very old	modern - new	حديث

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	quickly	بسرعة
un–	تعطى عكس المعنى	unkind unhappy	قاسى حزين - غير سعيد
–y	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	lucky healthy windy rainy	محظوظ صحى عاصف ممطر
–ing	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	amazing including	مدهش متضمن - شامل
–er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	owner	مالك

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 species

نوع - فصيلة (حيوان - نبات)

تشير إلى مجموعة من [النباتات أو الحيوانات] التى تمتلك صفات مشتركة أو نوع واحد وتعامل كجمع أو مفرد : (ومفردها ليس specie)

- There are many **species** of rabbits.

SB Page 6

2 in danger / endanger

* **in danger** — فى خطر
  - Lions are **in danger** of dying out.
* **endanger** — يعرض للخطر / يهدد بالخطر
  - Pollution **endangers** life on Earth.

SB Page 7

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
along the road	على امتداد الطريق	give some advice	يقدم بعض النصائح
work very hard	يعمل بجد للغاية	as a result	كنتيجة لذلك
get wet	يبتل	keep safe	يظل امنًا
Prepositions			
in length	فى الطول	work for	يعمل لصالح / لأجل
hope to	يأمل أن - يتمنى أن	travel by	ينتقل / يسافر بـ [وسيلة مواصلات]
stay out	يظل / يمكث بالخارج	walk on	يمشى على
drive up	يصل إلى [بالعربة]	belong to	يخص / ينتمى إلى
talk for a short time	يتحدث لفترة قصيرة	burn down by	يحترق بجانب / بواسطة
drive away	يقود بعيدًا	take away by	ينقل بعيدًا بواسطة

II Skills

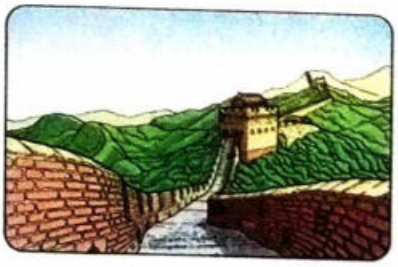
1. Reading and Listening

Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

• on Lesson 3 SB page 7

A list of the new **Seven Wonders of the World**[1] was made in 2007. The city of **Petra**[2] in Jordan was named as one of them. The Taj Mahal in India is also in the list. This beautiful monument was built by Shah Jahan, to



(1) عجائب الدنيا السبع (2) مدينة بترا (فى الأردن)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB & Previous Exams

Definitions

1. ..... is the cutting down of trees in a large area. *(Luxor 2023 / Qalyoubia 2023)*
   a. Deforestation b. Desertification c. Controlling d. Destroying
2. A group of animals or plants of the same kind is ..... .
   a. space b. species c. face d. case
   (Gharbia 2023 / Sohag 2022)
3. WB A ..... is the land that is below the area around it. *(Assiut 2023)*
   a. forest b. depression c. mountain d. tower
4. When something is kept safe from being damaged, it is ..... . *(Qena 2022)*
   a. preserved b. depressed c. damaged d. reserved
5. ..... means to damage something so badly that you cannot repair it.
   a. Expect b. Remove c. Destroy d. Treat

Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes

6. SB The antonym of "hard" is "....." . *(Suez 2023)*
   a. remote b. difficult c. easy d. far
7. SB The synonym of the word "fortunate" is ".....".
   a. lucky b. unlucky c. unfortunate d. unhappy
8. My father is kind. The antonym of "kind" is ".....". *(Kafr El-Sheikh 2022)*
   a. soft b. easy c. cruel d. amazing

Guessing the meaning from the text

9. Many ancient ..... are found in Fayum Depression. These are bones of animals. *(Cairo 2023)*
   a. fossils b. bags c. carriages d. owners
10. The Pharaohs preserved their bodies well. This means they ..... them well. *(Beheira 2022)*
    a. discovered b. sold c. kept d. served

El-Moasser Exercises

Key vocabulary

11. They build a ..... to warn or guide ships.
    a. statue b. stable c. castle d. lighthouse
12. Some of the fossils discovered in Wadi al Hitan measured 21 metres in ..... .
    a. cost b. length c. depth d. taste

Definitions

13. A ..... is something that people travel in, that is pulled by a horse.
    a. car b. carriage c. ferry d. tractor

14. A ..... is a building where horses sleep.
a. stable b. cave c. hut d. flat

▸ **Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes**

15. We use the prefix "....." to get the opposite of "kind".
a. im- b. il- c. en- d. un-

16. Scientists found out many facts about whales . The synonym of "found out" is ..... .
a. invented b. invited c. discovered d. covered

17. Naguib Mahfouz is a famous writer. The antonym of "famous" is ..... .
a. known b. popular c. unknown d. unusual

▸ **Guessing the meaning from the text**

18. All tourists prefer the ancient Egyptian civilisation. "Ancient" means very ..... .
a. old b. expensive c. new d. amazing

19. The ..... of the restaurant is Mr Ali. He bought it last week.
a. customer b. waiter c. cashier d. owner

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

20. Can you ..... me some advice about how we should treat animals ?
a. make b. do c. give d. stay

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▸ **Discussion about working animals :**

١. مناقشة عن الحيوانات العاملة :

Questions	Answers
1. What other animals are used to do work for us ? ١. ما هى الحيوانات الأخرى التى اعتادت أن تقوم بأعمال لأجلنا ؟	- I think buffalos, cows and camels. - أعتقد إنها الجاموس والبقر والجمال.
2. How should you treat animals that work for you ? ٢. كيف ينبغى معاملة الحيوانات التى تقوم بأعمال لأجلكم ؟	- We should treat them kindly. - ينبغى علينا معاملة هذه الحيوانات بعطف.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

Fayum Depression منخفض الفيوم

1. The Fayum Depression is an area of desert southwest of Cairo.
١. منخفض الفيوم هو منطقة صحراوية فى جنوب غرب القاهرة.

2. There are many ancient fossils in the Fayum Depression.
٢. هناك العديد من الحفريات القديمة فى منخفض الفيوم.

3. The most amazing fossils are the whale fossils at Wadi al-Hitan.
٣. تعد حفريات الحيتان من أكثر الحفريات جمالاً فى وادى الحيتان.

4. The scientists were surprised to find out that these whales had legs.
٤. اندهش العلماء عندما اكتشفوا أن هذه الحيتان كانت تمتلك أقدام.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Reviews, Biographies, Short Stories & Dialogues

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ 80 Dialogues 80 Reviews, Biographies & Short Stories
قم بإستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Sentences اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Paragraphs اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابه
Working animals	**Read and complete :** 1. What animals are used to do ..... for us ? عمل Buffalos, ... and camels. أبقار 2. How should we ..... animals that work for us? تعامل - We should treat them kindly.	**Finish the following dialogue :** A : Have you read the story of Black Beauty ? B : No, I haven't. (1) ..... ? A : It's about a working horse. B : (2) ..... ? A : Buffalos, cows and camels are used to work for us. B : How should we treat working animals ? A : (3) ..... . B : Can you lend me the story to read it ? A : (4) ..... . B : (5)	**Write a review on :** **"Working animals"** ....
Fayum Depression	1. Have you ever visited ..... ? منخفض الفيوم - Yes, I have visited it twice. 2. What is the depression ? - It's an area of ..... that is belw the area around it. يابسة / أرض 3. What are the most surprising ..... in Fayum Depression ? حفريات - The whale fossils.	A : Have you ever visited Fayum Depression ? B : (1) ..... . A : (2) ..... ? B : A depression is an area of land that is below the area around it. A : (3) ..... ? B : Yes. There are fossils of crocodiles, turtles and whales. A : What are the most surprising fossils in Fayum Depression ? B : (4) ..... . A : (5) ..... ? B : The fossils of whales were 21 meters in length.	**"Fayum Depression"** ....

III Language

Remember تذكر

The Past Simple : Active & Passive (Without by)
زمن الماضى البسيط فى صيغة المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول

Usage الاستخدام

Use was / were + past participle (the past simple passive) when a past action is more important than who did it, or when we do not know (or it is not important) who did something.

نستخدم صيغة المبنى للمجهول فى زمن الماضى البسيط عندما يكون الحدث الماضى أكثر أهمية من الذى قام بالفعل أو عندما لا نعرف من قام بالفعل [أو ليس ضروريًا].

	Active صيغة المبني للمعلوم	Passive صيغة المبني للمجهول
Affirmative الإثبات	Subject الفاعل + ... التصريف الثاني للفعل ex. - Mr Ahmed ate a sandwich. - Reham watered the flowers.	Subject نائب الفاعل + was / were + p.p. ..... ex. - A sandwich was eaten by Mr Ahmed. - The flowers were watered (by Reham).
Negative النفي	Subject الفاعل + didn't + inf. مصدر الفعل ex. - I didn't wash the car. - The farmer didn't feed the animals.	Subject نائب الفاعل + was / were + not + p.p. ..... ex. - The car wasn't washed (by me). - The animals weren't fed (by the farmer).
Yes / No question السؤال بـ (هل)	Did + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ? ex. - Did Ali buy the newspapers? - Did Yara drink juice?	Was / Were + subject نائب الفاعل + p.p. ..... ? ex. - Were the newspapers bought (by Ali)? - Was juice drunk (by Yara) ?

Wh-question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Q.W. أداة استفهام + did + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

ex. - Where did Esraa find the keys?
- Who broke this window?

Q.W. أداة استفهام + was / were + subject نائب الفاعل + p.p. ...?

ex. - Where were the keys found (by Esraa)?
- Who was this window broken by?

- لاحظ عندما يبدأ السؤال بأداة الاستفهام (Who) نضيف حرف الجر (by) بعد الفعل فى صيغة المبنى للمجهول

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

1. My little brother ..... (take) to hospital yesterday. *(Beheira 2023)*
2. LM When was your younger brother ..... (bore) ?
3. The news ..... (be) watched by Omar yesterday. *(Souhag 2023)*
4. A list of the new seven wonders ..... (is) made in 2007. *(Luxor 2022)*
5. WB These pictures were ..... (painting) by her daughters.
6. That lake ..... (form) hundreds of years ago by a volcano. *(Fayum 2022)*
7. WB We don't know how the stones for the Pyramids ..... (carried) to Giza.
8. SB We don't know when Petra ..... (did) named as one of the new seven wonders of the world.
9. SB Because of last week's floods in India, a lot of houses ..... (destroyed).
10. SB In the last 100 years, we ..... (lose) more than 800 species.
11. WB The Cairo Tower ..... (is) designed by Naoum Shebib in 1956.

El-Moasser Exercises

12. A tree was ..... (plant) by the farmer.
13. The first Olympic Games were ..... (holding) in 776 BC.
14. ..... (Is) the carriage pulled by the horse yesterday ?
15. What unusual material was ..... (using) in the building of the Great Wall of China ?

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Rana and Sama are talking about a story.

Rana : What are you doing ?

Sama : I am reading a story.

Rana : (1) ..... ?

Sama : It is about a rabbit telling the story of his life.

Rana : (2) ..... ?

Sama : No, animals can't talk but this is only a story.

Rana : Did that rabbit live alone ?

Sama : (3) ..... .

Rana : This means he has a family. Did the story end happily for the rabbit ?

Sama : (4) ..... .

Rana : I think it is an exciting story. Can I borrow this story to read it ?

Sama : (5) ..... .

(Gharbia 2023)

2 LM Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

lay - turtles - preserving - rainforests - lie - preserved

Animals live in different habitats. These habitats are well (1) ..... . Grasslands provide habitats for animals like the caracal. The (2) ..... are home to more than half of the world's animals. Sea (3) ..... live in the sea. They come to land to (4) ..... their eggs.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Places on the map seem to be near, but they are really remote. "Remote" means ..... .

(The New Valley 2023)

a. short b. far c. green d. young

2. We use the prefix "....." to make the opposite of "happy".

a. dis– b. un– c. en– d. im–

(The New Valley 2022)

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

3. Mohamed Salah is a popular football player. The synonym of the word "popular" is " ..... ".

a. unknown b. famous c. soft d. hard

4. Omar is nice to Ali. This means he ..... him well.

a. treats b. studies c. ignores d. surprises

5. A/An ..... is something that people travel in, that is pulled by a horse.

a. aeroplane b. ferry c. ship d. carriage

6. "....." means to damage something so badly that you cannot repair it.

a. Enjoy b. Support c. Destroy d. Fry

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A short story you have read recently"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Beni Suef 2022)

Lessons

5 & 6

SB pages 9 & 10
WB pages 74 & 75

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

heading (n)	عنوان رئيسى	personification (n)	تشخيص - تجسيد
confused (adj)	متحير - مرتبك	fur (n)	فراء
tongue - twister (n)	كلمة صعبة النطق	aim (n)	هدف
skill (n)	مهارة	label (led) (v), (n)	يلصق بطاقة - بطاقة معلومات
lifestyle (n)	أسلوب حياة	wild (n/ adj)	البرية - برى
appearance (n)	مظهر خارجى	poem (n)	قصيدة شعرية
roundabout (n)	ممر دائرى - دوران	product (n)	منتج
population (n)	تعداد السكان	active (adj)	نشيط

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

confused - products - appearance - heading

1. You should have a good ..... before going to an interview.
2. Ahmed was ..... when he entered the exam room.
3. Yogurt and cheese are dairy ..... .

Lesson 5

SB pages 9 WB page 74

discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش	expressions (n)	تعبيرات
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	topic (n)	موضوع
shell (n)	صدفة	clarification (n)	توضيح - إيضاح
humans (n)	البشر	repeat (ed) (v)	يكرر - يردد
turning (n)	منعطف	traffic lights (n)	إشارات المرور

Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 75

caracal (n)	حيوان الوشق المصرى [الكاركال]	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
research (ed) (v), (n)	يبحث - بحث	mongoose (n)	النمس
several (adj)	عديد	avoid (ed) (v)	يتجنب
control (led) (v)	يتحكم	loss (n)	فقدان - خسارة

volcano (n)	بركان	tail (n)	ذيل
forest (n)	غابة	alone (adv)	وحيد - منعزل
form (ed) (v)	يُشَكِّل - يُكَوِّن	role (n)	دور
heat (n)	حرارة	invent(ed) (v)	يخترع
hunt (ed) (v)	يصطاد	postman (n)	ساعى البريد
flood water (n)	مياه الفيضان	World Cup (n)	كأس العالم
fires (n)	حرائق	seeds (n)	بذور
introduction (n)	مقدمة	the Mediterranean Sea	البحر المتوسط

Continents, countries & islands

قارات ودول وجزر

Africa	قارة أفريقيا	Hawaii	جزيرة هاواى
Asia	قارة آسيا	Caribbean	جزر الكاريبى
Europe	قارة أوروبا	Poland	دولة بولندا
Japan	دولة اليابان	the Middle East	الشرق الأوسط

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
mean	يعنى - يقصد	meant	meant
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
fight	يتعارك - يتشاجر	fought	fought
bite	يعض	bit	bitten
catch	يصطاد	caught	caught

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

confused	unable to understand something clearly	متحير - مرتبك
caracal	a wild cat with long legs and big ears that lives in Africa and Asia	حيوان الوشق المصرى (الكاركال)
fur	the thick hair that covers the body of an animal	فراء
label	a word or phrase to explain things in a picture, diagram, etc.	ملصق توضيحى
mongoose	a small animal with a long body and tail, which lives in Africa and Asia	حيوان النمس
lifestyle	the way in which a person lives	أسلوب حياة
active	someone who is active can move and do things easily	نشيط

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
active	نشيط	energetic-lively	inactive - lazy	غير نشيط - كسول
thick	سميك	heavy	thin	رفيع - دقيق
ill	مريض	sick / unwell	well	بصحة جيدة
alone	بمفرده	single - solo	accompanied	مصاحب
organise	ينظم - يرتب	arrange	disarrange	يبعثر
suitable	مناسب	appropriate	unsuitable	غير مناسب
deliver	يُسلم - يوصل	carry / bring	take / receive	يأخذ / يستلم
useful	مفيد	good / helpful	useless / unhelpful	غير مفيد
form	يكوّن	make	destroy / damage	يحطم / يدمر

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–able	تُحول الفعل إلى صفة	suitable	مناسب - ملائم
–al	تكوّن الصفة من الاسم	informational	إعلامي - إخباري
un–	يعطى عكس المعنى	unable	غير قادر
–ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	invention	اختراع
–ly	يكون الظرف من الصفة	mainly	بشكل أساسي

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 the + صفة

تستخدم the أمام الصفة لكى تصبح اسم جمع

the young صغار السن - الشباب — **the poor** الفقراء

the old كبار السن — **the rich** الأغنياء

▸ **The young** are the hope of any nation أمة. *SB page 10*

2 lose - loss

* **lose - lost - lost (v)** يخسر - يفقد

▸ Rahma **lost** her bag in the bus.

* **loss (n)** خسارة

▸ It was a great **loss** when he damaged his new mobile. *SB page 10*

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

give directions	يعطى الاتجاهات [للوصول لمكان]	gold-coloured	لونه ذهبى
say that another way	تقول هذا بطريقة أخرى	give an example	يعطى مثال
I see	افهم ما تقصد	give clarification	يوضح - يقدم توضيح
have a role to play	لديه دور يقوم به	ask for direction	يسأل عن الاتجاهات [للوصول لمكان]
as well as	بالإضافة إلى		

Prepositions

grow to about	ينمو حتى حوالى	a group of up to 50	مجموعة تصل إلى ٥٠
get from .... to	يذهب / يصل من .. إلى ...	live for up to	يعيش لمدة تصل إلى
famous for	مشهور بـ	stay for about	يبقى حوالى [فترة زمنية]
during the day	أثناء النهار	under the ground	تحت الأرض

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 9

Taha : I like the way the writer uses **personification**(1) to describe the horses.

Samir : Personification ? I'm sorry, but I'm not sure I understand what you mean by that.

Taha : I mean that she makes the horses sound like people.

Samir : Could you give me an example ?

Taha : Yes, for example, the writer calls the horses 'I' or 'she' not 'it', and she talks about the horses' **feelings**(2). I think the writer is trying to make you feel that you and the horses are not very different **species**(3).

Samir : When you say 'not very different species', do you mean the writer thinks that people and horses are the same ?

Taha : Yes. **Humans**(4) and horses are on the same level. Do you see what I mean ?

Samir : No, I'm still **confused**(5). Could you say that another way ?

Taha : Ok. I feel that personification makes us understand the horses better. We can all feel happy or sad.

Samir : Ah, I see. I understand that now.

(1) تجسيد - تشخيص (2) مشاعر (3) فصائل - أنواع (4) البشر (5) مرتبك - متحير

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

El-Moasser Exercises

Key vocabulary

1. A mongoose has a long body, covered by thick ..... .
   a. skin b. bones c. fur d. leather
2. He was ..... when he met my twin brother. He couldn't recognize me.
   a. active b. confused c. angry d. bored
3. Her ..... is to become a nuclear scientist in the future.
   a. style b. aim c. label d. skill
4. The wolf is a ..... animal you can't keep it like a pet.
   a. friendly b. light c. wild d. quiet
5. This shampoo is the best ..... that the company makes.
   a. poem b. product c. skill d. shell
6. The ..... of Egypt is more than 100 million people.
   a. population b. pollution c. personification d. clarification

Definitions

7. The ..... is a wild cat with long legs and big ears that lives in Africa and Asia.
   a. pig b. caracal c. bear d. eagle
8. A ..... is a word or phrase to explain things in a picture, diagram, etc.
   a. lesson b. lab c. label d. line
9. ..... means the way in which a person lives.
   a. Appearance b. Lifestyle c. Skill d. Research

Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes

10. Mongooses are active during the day and sleep at night. "Active" is opposite in meaning to "..... ".
    a. lazy b. fast c. careless d. strong
11. We can get the noun from the verb "invent" by adding ..... .
    a. -ed b. -ance c. -ion d. -ly
12. This blanket is heavy. It is very ..... .
    a. light b. easy c. thick d. thin
13. She was very sick yesterday. The antonym of "sick" is ..... .
    a. ill b. tired c. weak d. well
14. The prefix "....." can be used to get the opposite of "able".
    a. un- b. ill- c. in- d. ir-
15. We add the suffix "....." to get the adjective from the verb "suit".
    a. -ion b. -ly c. -ing d. -able

▸ Guessing the meaning from the text

16. My uncle always starts his email with "Dear Captain". That's a funny ..... .
    a. definition b. introduction c. conclusion d. summary
17. Volcanoes make an island in the sea. The word "make" here can be replaced by ..... .
    a. form b. find c. put d. have
18. Sport is very useful for your health. The word "useful" means ..... .
    a. bad b. fast c. high d. good

▸ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

19. When Basim gets lost, he asks ..... direction.
    a. about b. for c. to d. from
20. Everyone should ..... a role to play in developing their country.
    a. be b. go c. make d. have

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▸ Expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification :

التعبير عن القصور فى فهم الشىء وطلب الإيضاح :

Asking for clarification : طلب الإيضاح :

1. I'm still confused. Could you say that in another way ?
   ١. أنا مازلت متحيرًا. هل يمكنك أن تقول ذلك بطريقة أخرى ؟
2. Could you give me an example ?
   ٢. هل يمكنك إعطائى مثال ؟
3. When you say .... , do you mean .... ?
   ٣. عندما تقول .... ، هل أنت تقصد / تعنى .... ؟

Confirm understanding : تأكيد الفهم :

1. I'm sorry, but I'm not sure what you mean by that.
   ١. اسف لكنى غير متأكد مما تعنيه بذلك.
2. Ah, I see.
   ٢. آه. لقد فهمت.
3. I understand that now.
   ٣. الآن أنا افهم ما تعنيه.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

Mongoose حيوان النمس

1. There are about 30 species of mongooses around the world.
   ١. يوجد حوالى ثلاثين فصيلة من النمس حول العالم.
2. The mongoose is famous for fighting snakes.
   ٢. النمس مشهور بمحاربة الثعابين.
3. The mongoose lives in forests or under the ground or rocks.
   ٣. يعيش النمس فى الغابات أو تحت الأرض أو الصخور.
4. The mongoose eats some animals such as rats, birds, frogs and lizards.
   ٤. يأكل النمس بعض الحيوانات مثل الفئران والطيور والضفادع والسحالى.

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Adham is telling his father about his calculator that was lost at school.

Father : How are you, Adham ?

Adham : I'm fine.

Father : Adham, you look sad. What's the matter ?

Adham : (1) ..... .

Father : (2) ..... ?

Adham : It was hot, so I went to wash my face. When I came back, I didn't find it.

Father : (3) ..... ?

Adham : Yes, I looked for it under the desk. What should I do, dad ?

Father : (4) ..... . If you don't find it, I'll get you another one.

Adham : (5) ..... .

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

confusing - famous - garden - university - confused - directions

When I visited Mansoura for the first time to join the university, I was (1) ..... . I didn't know how to get to the (2) ..... . I asked someone for (3) ..... . It was far away, so I took a taxi. After that, I lived for four years happily in that (4) ..... city.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "....." means the way in which a person lives.
   a. Lifestyle b. Appearance c. Hobby d. Job
2. These words are ..... . It isn't easy to say and repeat them.
   a. clear b. tongue-twister c. obvious d. easy
3. We found the exam quite hard. The synonym of the word "hard" is ..... .
   a. easy b. light c. difficult d. suitable
4. To get the antonym of the word "active", we use the prefix "....." .
   a. un- b. in- c. im- d. en-

5. The ..... is the thick hair that covers the body of an animal.

(Matrouh 2022)

a. fossil b. fur c. jacket d. beak

6. I organised a meeting between me and my friends. The word "organised" means ..... .

a. revised b. delivered c. carried d. arranged

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. A bag full of money ..... (find) on the road after the accident.
2. Different kinds of food ..... (cook) for the guests last night.
3. The Pyramids are ..... (visiting) by thousands of tourists every year.
4. SB New roads ..... (build) all over Egypt every year.
5. SB Who ..... (break) the glass of this window yesterday ?

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of mongooses"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on unit 7

قيم مستواك | يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختيار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary

coastal	ساحلى
polar bear	دب قطبى
rainforest	غابة مطيرة
caracal	الوشق المصرى (الكاركال)
oases	واحات
surrounded	مُحاط
protect	يحمى
deforestation	إزالة الأشجار
endangered	معرض للخطر
carriage	عربة تجرها الخيول
species	فصائل / أنواع
stable	إسطبل (خيول)
owner	مالك
treat	يعامل - يتعامل
habitat	موطن
population	تعداد السكان
fur	فرو
wonders	عجائب

Language

1. Present Simple Passive
صيغة المبنى للمجهول فى زمن المضارع البسيط

Obj. + am / is / are + p.p. ..... .

ex. - Mona carries the books.

- The books are carried by Mona.

2. Past Simple Passive
صيغة المبنى للمجهول فى زمن الماضى البسيط

Obj. + was / were + p.p. ..... .

ex. - Scientists discovered about 52 new species of plants.

- 52 new species of plants were discovered by scientists.

Speaking

1. Talking about habitats and natural wonders
التحدث عن البيئات الطبيعية للحيوانات والعجائب الطبيعية

A : Where does the orangutan live ?

B : It lives in the rainforests.

A : How much of Egypt is a desert habitat ?

B : About 95 %.

2. Expressing lack of understanding and asking for clarification
التعبير عن القصور فى فهم شىء وطلب الإيضاح

A : Go straight and turn left. It's on the right.

B : I'm still confused. Could you say that another way ?

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Giving the main idea

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [giving the main idea] أو [giving a suitable title] وهنا تحتاج لتحديد الفكرة الرئيسية التي يدور حولها الموضوع.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

It was Omar's 20th birthday. He invited his friends to a restaurant at 7 o'clock in the evening for a birthday dinner. Omar reached the restaurant at 7 o'clock. He looked around for any of his friends, but no one came. So he decided to wait outside. A lot of customers came, but no one of them was Omar's friend. At 7:30, he phoned his friends, but nobody answered. At 8 o'clock, Omar went home. He thought that his friends had forgotten his birthday, so he was sad and disappointed. He opened the front door and walked into the dark house. The living room was closed. "How strange!", he thought as he always left it open. He opened the door. Suddenly, the lights were turned on and all his friends shouted, "Surprise", so they hadn't forgotten. They gave him nice presents. In the end, it was the best birthday ever that made him happy.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The main idea of this passage is " ..... " .

a. bad friends b. presents
c. a restaurant d. a birthday surprise

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى الفقرة.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو (الفكرة الرئيسية) أو (العنوان المناسب) للفقرة.

2 Speaking

Mongooses

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Finish the following dialogue :

Two friends are talking about mongooses.

A : Have you heard about mongooses ?

B : (1) ..... .

A : Great! (2) ..... ?

B : There are about 30 different species of mongooses in the world.

A : Are they famous for fighting snakes ?

B : (3) ..... .

A : Can mongooses kill a snake ?

B : (4) ..... .

A : They're very strong! (5) ..... ?

B : They can live for up to ten years in the wild.

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [حيوان النمس] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Writing

يختبر سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية معرفتك لقدر كاف من المفردات وقدرتك على كتابة جمل تعبر عن الموضوع.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [أنواع مواطن الحيوانات] و [العجائب الطبيعية فى مصر] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic

Types of animals' habitats

Natural wonders in Egypt

Step 1 Review your vocabulary

Write the meaning :

ساحلية	.....
منزل	.....
مواطن	.....
الوشق المصرى	.....
سلاحف البحر	.....
ينابيع	.....
عجائب	.....
طبيعية	.....
سباحة	.....
بدو	.....
مرشد سياحى	.....

Step 2 Sentences

Complete the sentences :

1. The habitat is the natural ..... of an animal or plant.
2. There are many different ..... around the world.
3. ..... habitats are along the coast of the sea.
4. ..... live in the sea and visit land for egg laying.

1. Egypt has many ..... wonders.
2. Wadi al-Weshwashy is one of the most beautiful ..... in Egypt.
3. There are areas of natural water called ..... .
4. It's a wonderful place for ..... .
5. It's mostly visited by the local ..... people who live near there.

Step 3 Paragraph

Write a review on :

"Types of animals' habitats"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Write an email about :

"Natural wonders in Egypt"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Questions collected from previous exams and longman

1. LM Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

wonders – tourists – Citadel – built – wanders – were built

Egypt is rich in its great civilisation. There are some wonderful man-made (1) ..... . The Great Pyramid and the (2) ..... of Qaitbay are two excellent examples. These places (3) ..... a very long time ago. They attract (4) ..... from all over the world.

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The prefix "....." is used to add the meaning "do again". *(Gharbia 2023)*
   a. bi– b. re – c. di– d. in–
2. ..... are the habitats that have large green areas and no mountains. *(Cairo 2023)*
   a. Deserts b. Grasslands c. Polar areas d. Coastal areas
3. After the rain, the streets were wet. The antonym of "wet" is ..... . *(Gharbia 2023)*
   a. dry b. rainy c. warm d. muddy
4. New ideas can be very strange for people. "Strange" here means ..... . *(Beheira 2023)*
   a. boring b. usual c. unusual d. common
5. LM A ..... is a reptile that has a thick hard shell around its body.
   a. polar bear b. dog c. turtle d. lion
6. LM A/An ..... is a fertile spot in a desert where water is found.
   a. delta b. valley c. oasis d. oases
7. LM Gebel Elba is usually green and ..... to many animals and birds.
   a. home b. delta c. valley d. well
8. My father is so kind, the antonym of "kind" is ..... . *(Damietta 2023)*
   a. calm b. clean c. clever d. cruel
9. They live on the east coast. Coast can be an adjective by adding "....." . *(Sharkia 2023)*
   a. –ous b. –al c. –ive d. –ic
10. LM We should protect our environment. "Protect" here is similar in meaning to ..... .
   a. appear b. damage c. avoid d. preserve

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. LM Our house ..... (has been built) in 2005.
2. LM Rami ..... (isn't) punished yesterday; he wasn't mistaken.
3. The Taj Mahal ..... (build) by Shah Jahan. *(Alexandria 2022)*
4. Two chairs ..... (broken) during yesterday's party. *(The New Valley 2023)*
5. A great project ..... (achieve) in Egypt last year. *(Luxor 2023)*
6. A list of modern wonders ..... (write) in 2007. *(Assiut 2023)*
7. The park ..... (clean) every day. *(Assiut 2022)*
8. Squash ..... (doesn't play) by many students. *(Qena 2022)*
9. LM Mobile phones are widely ..... (using) everywhere.

Test on unit 7

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

1 Finish the following dialogue :

قم بحل اختبار تراكمى فى الملحق

"Malak and Noha are talking about a trip to Wadi al-Hitan".

Noha : Have you heard of Wadi al-Hitan ?

Malak : (1) ..... . Many ancient fossils are found there.

Noha : (2) ..... ?

Malak : It is in the Fayoum Depression, southwest of Cairo.

Noha : Do you think it is a good place to visit ?

Malak : (3) ..... .

Noha : There will be a school trip there next mid-year holiday. We could go together.

Malak : How much does it cost ?

Noha : (4) ..... .

Malak : That is not expensive. (5) ..... ?

Noha : No, I haven't told my parents about it yet. I am sure they will agree.

Malak : If our parents agree, I think we can join this school trip. *(Gharbia 2022)*

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

fur - who - famous - safe - which - short

A mongoose has a long body, with (1) ..... legs and a long tail. Their bodies are covered by thick (2) ..... Mongooses can see and hear very well, (3) ..... helps them to find food and avoid danger. Mongooses are (4) ..... for fighting snakes. They are able to kill snakes by biting them. *(Cairo 2023)*

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. .....
3. ..... 4. .....

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

There are some beautiful natural wonders in Egypt, such as the White Desert, National Park and Al-Nayzak Lake. There are also some wonderful man-made wonders, such as the Great Pyramid and the Citadel of Qaitbay in Alexandria.

Egypt also has some wonders that aren't visited by many tourists like Gabel Elba. This is because it is difficult to reach. Another wonder that is difficult to reach is the Lost City because **it** is now under the Mediterranean Sea near Alexandria. When the Lost City was discovered, Frank Goddio saw lots of very old statues, temples and monuments there.

Another wonder is the Great Sand Sea in the south of Egypt. This is a part of the Western Desert where you can find lots of big sand dunes. Some unusual glass is also found in the Great Sand Sea. Egypt's natural and man-made wonders are among the most beautiful wonders in the world.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is ..... .
   a. the Egyptian seas b. the Egyptian monuments
   c. the Egyptian wonders d. the Egyptian people
2. The Great Pyramid is a ..... wonder.
   a. man-made b. modern c. natural d. new
3. Some unusual glass is found in ..... .
   a. the Great Pyramid b. the Great Sand Sea
   c. the Nayzak Lake d. the Citadel

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?

   .....

5. Summarize the wonders which are mentioned in the text. (At least 4 wonders).

   .....

6. Have you visited any of these wonders before ?

   .....

(Giza 2023)

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. LM ..... are the preserved remains of plants and animals whose bodies were buried in sand and mud, under seas, lakes and rivers.
   a. Killers b. People c. Fossils d. Archaeologists
2. "....." means unable to understand something clearly.
   a. Awake b. Clever c. Confused d. Active

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

3. SB ..... is the synonym of the word "strange". *(Qalyoubia 2023)*
   a. Familiar b. Usual c. Similar d. Unusual
4. We add the suffix ..... to change the verb "appear" into a noun.
   a. -tion b. Usual c. -ance d. -able
   (North Sinai 2023)
5. He doesn't like to share others. He enjoys being ..... .
   a. social b. society c. alone d. with others
6. Ice covers the land in polar habitats. The word "habitat" is the same as ..... . *(Alexandria 2022)*
   a. school b. building c. factory d. home

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. English language ..... (speak) all over the world. *(Qalyoubia 2023)*
2. The room ..... (clean) by the servant yesterday. *(Minia 2022)*
3. Egypt ..... (visits) by more than 14 million tourists every year.
   (North Sinai 2023)
4. Who was the Taj Mahal ..... (build) by ?
5. ..... (Does) the housework done by her yesterday ?

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A review of types of habitats" *(Beni Suef 2022)*

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 7 for Al-Azhar students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Omar is talking with Ahmed about a book he is reading about deforestation.

Ahmed : Hello, Omar. What are you doing now ?

Omar : (1) ..... .

Ahmed : (2) ..... ?

Omar : Deforestation means that there are fewer trees in rainforests.

Ahmed : Is it dangerous for the environment ?

Omar : (3) ..... . It damages the natural habitat of many animals.

Ahmed : How terrible! Scientists should solve this problem.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Three schools ..... in our town last year. *(Menofia Zone 2023)*
   a. are built b. was built c. were built d. is built
2. The Egyptian museums ..... by many tourists every day. *(Sohag Zone 2023)*
   a. visit b. are visited c. are visiting d. visiting
3. The fossils were ..... well for further study. This means they were kept for a long time. *(Beheira Zone 2023)*
   a. discovered b. preserved c. sold d. chosen
4. A ..... is the natural home of an animal or a plant. *(Alexandria Zone 2023)*
   a. habitat b. coast c. rock d. rainforest

3 Write a paragraph of SIX sentences on :

"The importance of rainforests "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:**

Sara and Mona are talking about Egypt's natural wonders.

Mona : Good morning, Sara.

Sara : Good morning, Mona. Can I ask you some questions ?

Mona : (1) ..... . What do you want to ask about ?

a. No, you can't b. I'm sorry. I'm busy
c. Yes, of course d. I'm not sure

Sara : Which place do you think should be on the list of Egypt's natural wonders ?

Mona : (2) ..... .

a. Al Nayzak Lake
b. The Sphinx
c. The Egyptian Museum
d. The Giza Pyramids

Sara : Al Nayzak Lake ! (3) ..... .

a. Why is it ? b. Where is it ?
c. How is it ? d. When is it ?

Mona : It's near Marsa Alam in the south of Hurghada. It is called the shooting star by locals.

Sara : (4) ..... .

a. How many people go there ?
b. Do you play there ?
c. Which kind of birds live there ?
d. Why is it called the shooting star ?

Mona : Because it is believed that a piece of star fell into it.

Sara : What activities can visitors do there ?

Mona : (5) ..... .

a. They can visit the temples.
b. They can dive and swim.
c. They can watch movies.
d. They can build hotels.

* **Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :**

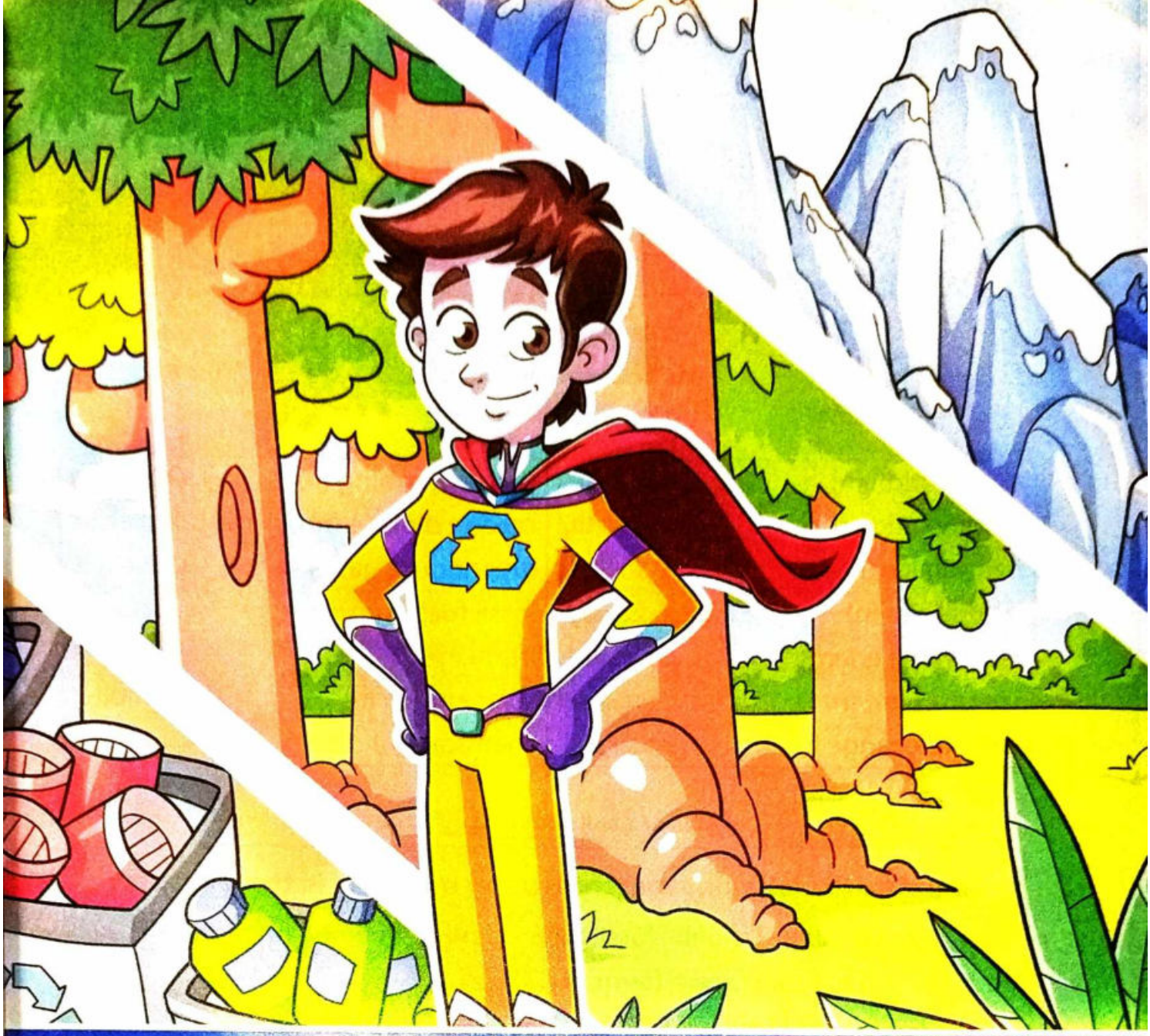
6. The story was ..... **(write)** by Naguib Mahfouz.
a. writes b. written
c. to write d. wrote

7. Flowers ..... **(be)** watered by the gardener every morning.
a. are b. is
c. was d. were

8. The thief ..... **(caught)** by the police.
a. catches b. catch
c. catching d. was caught

9. Photos ..... **(take)** by the girls yesterday.
a. was taken b. are takes
c. were taken d. are taken

10. The car ..... **(be)** washed by my dad every day.
a. was b. is
c. are d. were



Unit 8 Protecting our planet

SB pages 12:21 WB pages 77-[illegible]

Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  An article about climate change; a text about a school project; blogs about a recycling project and weaving; a text about seagrass
- **Writing :**
  A plan for a recycling project; a speech about how to keep air clean; a short report about a habit
- **Listening :**
  A radio report about an environmental problem; a discussion about printer cartridges; identifying word stress; a speech about helping the environment
- **Speaking :**
  Discussing environmental problems; giving a speech
- **Language :**
  Verb + to or - ing
- **Life Skills :**
  Problem solving and decision making

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 12 : 15
WB pages 77 & 78

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

air pollution (n)	تلوث الهواء	global warming (n)	الإحتباس الحرارى
deforestation (n)	إزالة الغابات	carbon dioxide (n)	ثانى أكسيد الكربون
melting ice (n)	ذوبان الثلوج	greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحرارى
landfill site (n)	موقع مكب النفايات	fossil fuels (n)	الوقود الحفرى
renewable energy (n)	طاقة متجددة	methane (n)	غاز الميثان
government (n)	الحكومة	solar energy (n)	الطاقة الشمسية
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى	chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

renewable - landfill - fossil fuels - climate change - pollution

1. Oil and natural gas are forms of ..... .
2. Factories and cars can cause air ..... .
3. The sun is a source of ..... energy.
4. Rubbish must be put in safe ..... sites.

Lesson 1

SB pages 12 & 13 WB page 77

planet (n)	كوكب	fire (d) (v), (n)	يحرق / حريق
oxygen (n)	غاز الاكسجين	volunteer (ed) (v), (n)	يتطوع - متطوع
serious (adj)	خطير / هام	collect (ed) (v)	يجمع
seagrass (n)	الأعشاب البحرية	coral reefs (n)	شعاب مرجانية
the Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون المطيرة	metal (n) , (adj)	معدن / معدنى
Antarctic (n)	القارة القطبية الجنوبية	waste (d) (v), (n)	يضيع / يهدر - نفايات
Arctic (n)	المنطقة القطبية الشمالية	pollute (d) (v)	يلوث
climate (n)	المناخ	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير
recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل

Lesson 2

SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 78

cause (d) (v), (n)	يسبب / سبب	greenhouse (n)	صوبة [بيت زجاجى]
flood (n)	فيضان	wind power (n)	طاقة الرياح
drought (n)	جفاف	farming (n)	الزراعة
forest fires (n)	حرائق الغابات	industry (n)	الصناعة
oil (n)	بترول - نفط	surprise (d) (v)	يُفاجئ / يدهش
transport (n)	النقل / المواصلات	increase (d) (v)	يزداد - يزيد
graph (n)	الرسم البيانى	sunny (adj)	مشمس
electricity (n)	كهرباء	wave (n)	موجة
gas (n)	غاز	solar (adj)	شمسى
equipment (n)	معدات	produce (d) (v)	ينتج / يولد

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
keep	يبقى - يظل - يحفظ	kept	kept

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

air pollution (n)	damage caused to the air by chemicals and waste	تلوث الهواء
landfill site (n)	• a place where people leave rubbish on the land • a place where rubbish is taken, often to be buried under the ground	موقع مكب النفايات
melting ice (n)	a problem in the Arctic and Antarctic because of global warming	ذوبان الثلوج
deforestation (n)	when all the trees in an area are cut down	إزالة الغابات
warmer seas	something that can kill coral reefs	إحترار البحار [ارتفاع درجة حرارة البحار]
keep (v)	to continue doing or do again and again	يبقى / يظل
absorb (ed) (v)	to take in liquid or gases through a surface	يمتص
fossil fuels (n)	natural materials such as petrol and oil that you can burn for energy	الوقود الحفرى
methane (n)	• a greenhouse gas that is made from landfill sites • a natural gas often produced by animals and dead plants	غاز الميثان

renewable energy (n)	• clean energy from the sun or wind • natural energy that doesn't disappear or burn when you use it	طاقة متجددة
solar energy (n)	the energy we get from the sun	الطاقة الشمسية
farming (n)	the business of growing crops and looking after animals for food	الزراعة
avoid (v)	stay away from someone or something deliberately بتعمد	يتجنب / يمتنع
carbon dioxide (n)	a gas which we breathe out and which is produced by burning fossil fuels	غاز ثانى أكسيد الكربون
greenhouse gas (n)	a gas in the air such as carbon dioxide which can cause global warming	غاز الاحتباس الحرارى
climate change	how the Earth's weather changes	التغير المناخى
slow down	reduce how fast something goes	يبطئ

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

get	worse	يزداد سوء	**make**	a gas	ينبعث منه غاز
	hotter	يزداد سخونة		a loud noise	يصدر صوتًا عاليًا
cause	climate change	يسبب التغير المناخى	**play**	the piano	يعزف على البيانو
create	greenhouse gases	ينتج غازات الاحتباس الحرارى	**become**	warmer	يصبح أكثر دفئًا
			pass	exams	ينجح فى الامتحانات

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — **مترادفات ومتضادات**

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym /opposite المضاد	
pass	يمر / يجتاز بنجاح	succeed in	fail	يفشل / يرسب
keep	يستمر فى	continue	stop	يتوقف
breathe in	يستنشق	inhale	breathe out /exhale	يزفر [يُخرج الزفير]
absorb	يمتص	take in - soak up	emit	يبعث - يُصدر
avoid	يمتنع - يتجنب	stop	allow / face	يسمح / يواجه
problem	مشكلة	trouble	solution	حل
increase	يزداد	raise	decrease	ينقص - يقل
slow down	يبطىء	reduce	speed up	يُسرع
serious	خطير / جاد	dangerous	safe / unserious	غير خطير / آمن

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
non–	تكون عكس الكلمة	non-renewable غير متجدد
re–	يقوم بأداء الفعل مرة ثانية	recycle يعيد تدوير
–al	تكون الصفة من الاسم	environmental بيئى electrical كهربى
–ing	تكون اسم من فعل	farming الزراعة
–ion	تكون اسم من فعل	pollution تلوث
–able	تكون صفة من فعل	renewable متجدد

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 drought - draught

* drought — جفاف
  - Less rain causes **drought.**
* draught = blast — تيار هوائى - رياح عاتية
  - Many houses were damaged by the draught last night. *SB page 14*

2 flood - fluid

* flood (n) — فيضان
  - Much rain causes **floods.**
* fluid (n) — سائل
  - Water, oil and milk are all **fluids.** *SB page 14*

3 cause - reason

* cause — سبب (يتبعها حرف الجر of)
  - The **cause of** the fire is not clear.
* reason — سبب - مبرر (يتبعها حرف الجر for)
  - What are the **reasons for** your absence ? *SB page 14*

4 keep (v) kept - kept — يحفظ - يستمر

- Basim **keeps** his clothes in a wardrobe. — يحفظ
- Rahma **kept** studying for a long time yesterday. — يستمر

* [لاحظ استخدام فعل مضاف إليه (ing) بعد الفعل keep] عندما يستخدم بمعنى يستمر

WB page 78 - SB page 15

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

work much harder	يبذل جهد أكبر	keep the air clean by ...	يحافظ على نظافة / نقاء الهواء بواسطة .....
save water	يوفر المياه		

Prepositions

look through	ينظر من خلال	absorb ... from	يمتص ... من
pay for	يدفع مقابل	in the same way	بنفس الطريقة
good for	مفيد لـ	slow down	يُبطىء
cut down trees	يقطع الأشجار	move to	ينتقل إلى
along the sides of	على امتداد جوانب ...	at any time	فى أى وقت
stay in the air	يظل / يبقى فى الهواء	It's bad to	إنه من السيئ أن ...

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 13

In the cities of Cairo, Giza and Fayoum, there is a project that is teaching people about **climate change**(1) and how to help the environment by **recycling rubbish**(2). Over 400 women **volunteers**(3) visit houses in these cities every week. The volunteers ask people to put their rubbish into three different bins: for plastic, paper and metal. When the volunteers come back a week later, they **pay**(4) the families money for the rubbish they have collected. Then they **take away**(5) the rubbish for recycling.

"If families **collect**(6) their paper,plastic and metal, we will pay them for it", says Dalia. "Then we can take away the rubbish and recycle it. It's a great **solution**(7) to a big problem, because the family get some money and we help the environment".

(1) التغير المناخى	(2) إعادة تدوير القمامة	(3) متطوعين	(4) يدفع مال
(5) ينقل	(6) يجمع	(7) حل	

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

Definitions

1. The verb "avoid" means to ..... from doing something. *(Suez 2023)*
   a. keep way b. keep away c. stay away d. stay a way
2. SB ..... is a greenhouse gas that is made from landfill sites.
   a. Oxygen b. Methane c. Carbon d. Hydrogen
3. The energy we get from the sun is called ..... . *(Cairo 2022)*
   a. fossil fuel b. solar energy c. carbon dioxide d. methane
4. WB ..... energy is clean energy from the sun, water, or wind.
   a. Polluting b. Polluted c. Non-renewable d. Renewable
5. LM ..... makes air, water, soil etc. dangerously dirty and not suitable for people to use.
   a. Cultivation b. Deforestation c. Pollution d. Population

Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes

6. We add the prefix "....." to the word "cycle" to mean use something again. *(Souhag 2023)*
   a. im- b. un- c. re- d. dis-
7. My cotton jacket absorbs water from rain. "Absorbs" here is like ..... .
   a. takes in b. turns off c. throws away d. puts into
   (Menofia 2022)
8. We can get an adjective from the verb "renew" by adding the suffix "....." .
   a. -ness b. -able c. -tion d. -y
   (Damietta 2023 / Qena 2023)

Guessing the meaning from the text

9. SB They tried to solve the problem. They tried to find a ..... .
   a. solution b. mistake c. voyage d. wave

El-Moasser Exercises

Key vocabulary

10. ..... happens when all the trees in an area are cut down.
    a. Farming b. Deforestation c. Climate d. Melting ice
11. Landfill ..... are places where some people throw rubbish.
    a. sets b. sites c. seats d. sales

▸ Definitions

12. ..... is a problem in the Arctic and Antarctic because of global warming. It causes floods.
    a. Air pollution b. Landfill c. Melting ice d. Deforestation
13. To ..... means to take in liquid or gases through a surface.
    a. melt b. keep c. absorb d. form

▸ Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes

14. You should avoid making bad friends. The synonym of the word "avoid" is ..... .
    a. keep b. stop c. pass d. recycle
15. To make the noun from the verb "farm", we add the suffix "..... ".
    a. -able b. -ing c. -all d. -ous
16. To give the opposite meaning of the word "renewable", we add the prefix "..... ".
    a. dis- b. un- c. non- d. im-

▸ Guessing the meaning from the text

17. Be careful, slow down, please. "Slow down" is an antonym for "..... "
    a. make up b. find out c. speed up d. come out
18. Drugs have become a serious problem in our community. The word "serious" means ..... .
    a. good b. dangerous c. attractive d. natural

▸ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

19. Slow ..... , you're driving too fast.
    a. down b. up c. off d. at
20. You can visit us ..... anytime you like.
    a. in b. at c. on d. from

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▸ 1. Asking and answering questions about environmental problems :

١. توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن مشاكل البيئة :

Questions	Answers
1. Why do you think forest fires are increasing ? ١. لماذا تعتقد أن حرائق الغابات تزداد ؟	- Because our planet is getting hotter. - لأن كوكبنا يزداد سخونة.
2. How does deforestation create greenhouse gases ? ٢. كيف تتسبب إزالة الغابات فى إنبعاث غازات الاحتباس الحرارى ؟	- When we cut down the trees, the carbon dioxide stays in the air. - عندما نزيل الأشجار ، يظل غاز ثانى أكسيد الكربون فى الهواء.

3. Why is recycling good for the environment ? ٣. لماذا يعتبر إعادة التدوير مفيد للبيئة ؟	- This will help slow down climate change. - هذا سيساعد على تقليل سرعة حدوث التغير المناخى.
4. What will happen if we keep the oceans getting warmer ? ٤. ماذا سوف يحدث لو استمرت درجة حرارة مياه المحيطات فى الازدياد ؟	- Some coral reefs will die. - سوف تموت بعض الشعاب المرجانية.

2. Recycling rubbish : إعادة تدوير المخلفات :

Questions	Answers
1. Do you think that the recycling project in Giza, Cairo and Fayoum is a good idea ? Why ? ١. هل تعتقد أن مشروع إعادة تدوير الأشياء فى محافظات الجيزة والقاهرة والفيوم فكرة جيدة ؟ ولماذا ؟	- Yes, I think so as it reduces pollution and saves the environment. - نعم اعتقد ذلك لأنه يقلل من التلوث ويحافظ على البيئة.
2. What does your family do with waste plastic, paper and metal ? ٢. ماذا تفعل عائلتك بالمخلفات البلاستيكية والورقية والمعدنية ؟	- My family recycles them to make useful things. - تقوم عائلتى بإعادة تصنيع هذه الأشياء للحصول على أشياء مفيدة منها.
3. What will happen if we don't recycle rubbish ? ٣. ماذا سوف يحدث لو لم نقوم بإعادة تدوير المخلفات ؟	- I think that 'll cause much pollution and damage the environment. - اعتقد أن ذلك سوف يتسبب فى حدوث كثير من التلوث ويدمر البيئة.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

Climate change التغير المناخى

1. Our planet is getting hotter and our weather is changing.
١. كوكبنا يزداد حرارة والطقس يتغير باستمرار.

2. Climate change is caused by greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide.
٢. تتسبب غازات الاحتباس الحرارى مثل ثانى أكسيد الكربون فى حدوث التغير المناخى.

3. Deforestation also produces greenhouse gases.
٣. تنتج إزالة الغابات أيضًا غازات الاحتباس الحرارى.

4. We need to use cleaner renewable energy such as solar energy and wind power.
٤. نحتاج إلى استخدام طاقة متجددة نظيفة مثل الطاقة الشمسية وقوة الرياح.

5. Trees absorb carbon dioxide from the air. ٥. تمتص الاشجار ثانى أكسيد الكربون من الهواء.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Reviews, Biographies, Short Stories & Dialogues

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ

قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات	Step 2 Sentences اختبر مدى اتقانك للجمل التالية	Step 3 Paragraphs اختبر مدى اتقانك لكتابه فقره
Environmental problems	**Read and complete :** 1. How can we stop air pollution ? - By reducing the use of ..... . وقود حفرى 2. What does the word "environmentally friendly" mean ? - It means that it doesn't ..... pollution. يسبب	**Finish the following dialogue :** ***Ahmed is asking Nagwa about an environmental problem.*** **Ahmed** : What do you think of that factory ? Nagwa : (1) ..... . It releases a lot of pollution. **Ahmed** : (2) ..... ? Nagwa : Because it uses fossil fuel. **Ahmed** : How can it stop producing pollution ? Nagwa : (3) ..... . **Ahmed** : By using solar power! (4) ..... ? Nagwa : As solar energy is environmentally friendly. **Ahmed** : Thanks for this information. Nagwa : (5)	**Write a review on :** **"Environmental problems"** ....
The importance of recycling	1. What do you think about .....? اعادة التدوير - I think it is important for our life. 2. Why is recycling important for our life ? - Recycling will decrease pollution and ..... the environment. يحمى	***Adel is talking to Amir who is reading an article about pollution.*** Adel : What are you reading, Amir ? **Amir :** (1) ..... . Adel : What is this article about ? **Amir :** (2) ..... . Adel : (3) ..... ? **Amir :** We can stop pollution by planting more trees. Adel : (4) ..... ? **Amir :** Because trees absorb carbon dioxide and keep the air clean. Adel : (5) ..... . **Amir :** I agree with you. Recycling our rubbish can also solve this problem.	**"The importance of recycling"** ....

III Language

Remember تذكر

The first conditional clause with "If" الحالة الشرطية الأولى لـ [If]

Formation التكوين

If / When + present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , subject (الفاعل) + will ['ll] / will not [won't] + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

ex. - If Ali studies hard, he will pass his test.

عندما تأتى [if] فى منتصف الجملة لا نضع [,] بين الجملتين.

Subject (الفاعل) + will ['ll] / will not [won't] + inf. (مصدر الفعل) if / when present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. - Mona will catch the bus if she is quick.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(A) Yes/No question : [أ] السؤال بـ "هل" :

Will + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) + if / when + present simple tense... (زمن المضارع البسيط) ?

ex. - Will you stay inside if it's hot tomorrow ?
- Yes, I will. - No, I will not (won't).

(B) Wh-question : [ب] السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word (كلمة استفهام) + will + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) + if / when + present simple tense... (زمن المضارع البسيط) ?

ex. **A :** What will you do if it is windy tomorrow ?
B : We won't go to the beach.

Usage الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about things in the future which we think will probably happen.

تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لـ [If] للتحدث عن أشياء نعتقد أنها من المحتمل أن تحدث فى المستقبل.

ex. - If Ahmed comes early, he will meet his uncle.
- If it is windy tomorrow, they won't go to the beach.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

1. If it ..... (rain) heavily, we will use umbrellas. *(Menoufia 2023)*
2. If I have more time, I ..... (would) read more books. *(The Red Sea 2023)*
3. If the train is late, I ..... (phone) you. *(Fayoum 2022)*
4. SB What will happen if we ..... (not recycle) rubbish ?
5. SB Our environment ..... (be) cleaner if we recycle our rubbish.
6. WB What ..... (would) you do if you don't understand the homework ?
7. WB How will Tarek feel if he ..... (go) to bed very late tonight ?
8. WB Will Dina ..... (speaking) good English if her parents move to Canada ?
9. SB We'll save water if we only ..... (took) short showers.
10. LM What ..... (you buy) if you go to the supermarket ?

El-Moasser Exercises

11. Where will you ..... (lived) if you get a good job ?
12. He ..... (do) better if he practises every day.
13. If I go to the shops, I'll ..... (buys) a new game.
14. What ..... (you do) if you don't catch the plane ?
15. If my dad ..... (got) home early, I will be happy.

Verbs + infinitive / – ing form

1 Verbs + to + inf.

agree	يوافق	fail	يفشل فى	plan	يخطط
arrange	يرتب	help	يساعد في	promise	يعد
ask	يسأل / يطلب	hope	يأمل	refuse	يرفض
choose	يختار	intend	ينوى	threaten	يهدد
decide	يقرر	need	يحتاج	want	يريد
expect	يتوقع	learn	يتعلم	wish	يتمنى
encourage	يشجع	manage	يتمكن		
invite	يدعو	offer	يعرض		

ex. - My neighbour agrees to water my plants when we are away on holiday.

• لاحـظ الآتـى :

١. بعض الأفعال السابقة قد يأتى بعدها المفعول أولًا ثم (to + inf.) :

- I wanted Omar to work hard.

٢. فى حالة النفي يمكن أن تُستخدم (not to) بعد الأفعال السابقة.

- Ahmed decided not to use my tools.

2 Verbs + (inf. + ing)

avoid	يتجنب	finish	ينهى	practise	يمارس
consider	يفكر فى	imagine	يتخيل	recommend	يوصي بـ
deny	ينكر	include	يشمل / يتضمن	suggest	يقترح
dislike	يكره	keep	يظل / يستمر في	admit	يقر/يعترف
enjoy	يستمتع	mind	يمانع		

- You should avoid going out late at night.

• فى حالة النفي يمكن أن تُستخدم (not + inf. + ing) بعد الأفعال السابقة :

- He suggested not going to the park.

3 Verb + (inf. + ing) / (to + inf.)

١. الأفعال التالية يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) دون فرق فى المعني:

begin / start	يبدأ	hate	يكره	love	يحب
continue	يستمر	like	يحب	prefer	يفضل

ex. - We continued to run / running until we got home.

- ولكن لاحظ أنه إذا استخدمنا (would) قبل الأفعال love / prefer / like يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) :

ex. - I'd prefer to finish my work early today.

- لاحظ أن (starting / beginning) يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) فقط :

- The rain is starting to fall.

٢. الأفعال التالية يأتى بعدها (to + inf.) أو (inf. + ing) مع وجود فرق واضح فى المعني:

remember, forget, stop, try + to + inf. / (inf. + ing)

1 remember

• remember + (to + inf.) — يتذكر أن يفعل

ex. - Remember to bring your homework tomorrow.

• remember + (inf. + ing) — يتذكر أنه فعل

ex. - I remember waking up in the middle of the night.

2 forget

- **forget + (to + inf.)** ينسى أن يفعل [هنا الشيء لم يتم القيام به]
  ex. - She forgot to buy her grandfather's newspaper, so he was angry.
- **forget + (inf. + ing)** ينسى أنه فعل [فعل الشيء لكنه نسى ذلك]
  ex. - I forgot phoning the manager, so I phoned him again.

3 stop

- **stop + (to + inf.)** يتوقف [لكى يفعل شيء آخر]
  ex. - On her way home, Dina stopped to talk to her friend Warda.
- **stop + (inf. + ing)** يتوقف عن فعل شيء[بشكل دائم أو مؤقت]
  ex. - Dina and Warda have stopped talking to each other.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB, WB & Previous Exams

1. My brother asks me to stop ..... (run) on the grass. *(Gharbia 2023)*
2. The government plans ..... (plant) a lot of trees. *(Qena 2023)*
3. If we keep ..... (burn) fossil fuels, climate change will get worse. *(Kafr El-Sheikh 2022)*
4. We should avoid ..... (pollute) the environment. *(Demietta 2023 / New Valley 2022)*
5. Mr Ali wants ..... (start) a recycling project. *(South Sinai 2022)*
6. SB We need ..... (using) cleaner renewable energy.
7. WB Do you enjoy ..... (played) the piano ?
8. SB You can choose ..... (recycling) your plastic bottles.
9. WB My family has decided ..... (going) to Jordan next year.

El-Moasser Exercises

10. Doing sports helps you ..... (keeping) fit.
11. I'd love ..... (attending) your birthday party.
12. I can't imagine ..... (to live) in the city. I don't like noisy places.
13. Would you mind ..... (give) me a hand ?
14. On my way home, I stopped ..... (buying) some flowers to my mum.

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Ehab and Ahmed are talking about the environment.

Ehab : Hello, Ahmed. What are you doing ?

Ahmed : Hello, Ehab. (1) ..... .

Ehab : What is this article about ?

Ahmed : (2) ..... .

Ehab : Our environment is being polluted severely. (3) ..... ?

Ahmed : We can plant more trees to prevent that.

Ehab : (4) ..... ?

Ahmed : We can use less plastic.

Ehab : (5) ..... !

Ahmed : Actually, this will help save the environment. *(Alexandria 2023)*

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "....." is damage caused to the air by chemicals and waste. *(Assiut 2022)*
   a. Deforestation b. Air pollution c. Melting ice d. Weaving
2. She promised her parents not to stop practising. The antonym of "stop" is ..... .
   a. prevent b. quit c. avoid d. continue
3. We use the suffix "....." to get the adjective of "environment".
   a. –al b. –ity c. –able d. –y

   (Kafr El-Sheikh 2022)
4. SB To "..... down" is to reduce how fast something goes.
   a. move b. slow c. stop d. melt
5. LM Forest fires are increasing because our planet is getting ..... .
   a. deeper b. taller c. colder d. hotter
6. Plants often ..... pollution in the air, making it cleaner for us.
   a. produce b. protect c. increase d. absorb

   (Sharkia 2023)

3 LM Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

will live - effect - affect - recycle - solve - are living

Climate change is a very serious problem. So, we should all cooperate to (1) ..... it. We should (2) ..... rubbish. Many TV shows are produced to inform people about the (3) ..... of this danger. If we face this problem well, we (4) ..... in a clean environment.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. People must stop ..... (throw) chemicals in water.
2. We enjoy ..... (play) football at the weekend. *(Assiut 2022)*
3. They decided ..... (clean) their street every Friday.
4. If it ..... (rained), I won't go to the park.
5. She ..... (would) miss the bus if she doesn't leave now.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A review of how to protect our planet"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons

3 & 4

SB pages 16 : 18
WB pages 79 & 80

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

fabric (n)	قماش	loom (n)	نول
ink (n)	حبر	thread (n)	خيط
weaving (n)	النسيج - حرفة النسيج	tradition (n)	حرفة تقليدية - عادة
weaver (n)	حائك / نسّاج	cartridge (n)	الحبارة [الخاصة بالطابعة]

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

Fabric - loom - tradition - cartridge - weaving

1. Some girls learn about the art of ..... at schools.
2. The ..... of the printer was empty, so I couldn't print my worksheets.
3. ..... is another word for cloth.
4. A ..... is an old machine that is used for weaving.

Lesson 3

SB pages 16 & 17 WB page 79

water pollution (n)	تلوث المياه	headteacher (n)	مدير المدرسة
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	broken (adj)	مكسور
recycling project (n)	مشروع إعادة تدوير	latest (adj)	الأحدث
recycling boxes	صناديق إعادة تدوير القمامة	materials (n)	مواد خام
blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية	printer (n)	طابعة

Lesson 4

SB page 18 WB page 80

bricks (n)	قوالب الطوب	surprised (adj)	مندهش
carpet (n)	سجادة	top (n)	غطاء
field (n)	ملعب / حقل	traditional art (n)	الفن التقليدى
instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك	wool (n)	صوف
jewellery (n)	مجوهرات	the World Cup	كأس العالم
lovely (adj)	جميل	factory (n)	مصنع
reform (ed) (v/n)	يصلح - إصلاح	Russia	دولة روسيا
way (n)	طريقة	fishing nets	شباك الصيد

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
let	يسمح / يدع	let	let
begin	يبدأ	began	begun

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

fabric	cloth or material which can be used to make clothes, bags, etc.	قماش
ink	a liquid used in pens or printers for writing, drawing, etc.	حبر
loom	a machine used for weaving	النول
thread	a long piece of cotton, silk, etc. which people can use to sew or make clothes	خيط
weaver	a person who makes cloth by weaving	حائك / نسّاج
weaving	the art of making cloth by crossing threads using a special machine	حرفة النسيج
printer cartridge	a piece of plastic which contains and supplies ink for a printer	حبارة

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make	a plan	يعد خطة	**start**	a project	يبدأ مشروع
do	research	يقوم بإجراء بحث			

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym /opposite المضاد	
below	أسفل	under - down	above	فوق
connected	متصل	linked - joined	disconnected	غير متصل
wrong	خطأ	incorrect	right	صواب
broken	منكسر (غير سليم)	smashed - damaged	unbroken / undamaged	غير منكسر (سليم)
traditional	تقليدى	classical / old - fashioned	modern/new	حديث / عصرى
lovely	جميل	beautiful	ugly	قبيح
horrible	فظيع - رهيب	terrible - awful	great - wonderful	رائع - عظيم

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–al	تحول الإسم إلى صفة	traditional	تقليدى
–er	تحول الفعل إلى إسم الفاعل	weaver printer	حائك / نسّاج طابعة
–ed	تكون الصفة من الفعل	connected surprised	متصل - مرتبط مندهش
–ful	تكون الصفة من الاسم	colourful	زاهى الألوان
–ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	discussion	مناقشة

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 let - allow

* let + (مفعول به) + (inf. المصدر) — يسمح
  - My father **let** us go to the cinema.
* allow + (مفعول به) + (to + inf. المصدر) — يسمح
  - Mr Gohari **allows** us to play football.

SB page 17

2 throw ... away / throw ... into ...

* throw ... away — يتخلص من
  - He **threw** his old shoes **away**.
* throw ... into ... — يرمى ... فى ...
  - He **threw** some bits of bread **into** the lake to feed the fish.

SB page 17 / WB page 79

3 make + مفعول + into ... — يحول ... إلى ...

- They **made** their old bags **into** new ones.

SB page 18

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

keep ... clean	يحافظ على [مكان] نظيفًا ...	find a way	يجد طريقة
plastic football fields	ملاعب النجيل الصناعى	(be) sold in shops	تباع فى المحلات التجارية

Prepositions

agree with	يتفق مع	better for	أفضل لـ
wrong with	خطأ / عيب فى	according to	وفقًا لـ

get into = enter	يدخل	at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة
bad for	ضار بـ	work on	يعمل على / بشأن
connected to	متصل بـ	do something about	يقوم بفعل شئ عن
ask for help	يطلب المساعدة	make ... into	يحول ... إلى .....

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 16

Dalida : I want to **print**[1] an article from the internet, but the printer is broken.

Sherifa : Really ? What's wrong, Dalida ? Let me look. No, the printer isn't broken. It needs a new printer **cartridge**[2].

Dalida : Of course. You're right, Sherifa. I think there's a new one in the **cupboard**[3].

Sherifa : What are you going to do with the old one ?

Dalida : I'll throw it away. I always throw them away.

Sherifa : You can't throw it away!

Dalida : Why not ?

Sherifa : That is very bad for the environment. **Ink**[4] from the printer cartridge can get into rivers and the sea. The ink kills fish and other sea animals. It's really **terrible**[5]. You must recycle it.

Dalida : Oh, no. I didn't know that. That sounds horrible.

Sherifa : Look! There's an **address**[6] on the box. If we send the printer cartridge to that address, they will recycle it.

Dalida : OK. Let's do that. What happens to all the printer cartridges at school ?

Sherifa : I don't know. I think they're thrown away.

Dalida : Well, why don't we start a **recycling project**[7] ?

Sherifa : That's a great idea.

(1) يطبع | (2) حبارة | (3) دولاب | (4) الحبر | (5) فظيع - شنيع | (6) عنوان | (7) مشروع إعادة تدوير

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

▸ **Definitions**

1. ..... is the art of making cloth by crossing threads using a special machine. *(Fayoum 2023)*
   a. Farming b. Weaving c. Sailing d. Baking
2. SB ..... means cloth or material which can be used to make clothes, bags, etc.
   a. Fabric b. Papyrus c. Oil d. Lens
3. WB A ..... is a person who makes cloth by weaving.
   a. diver b. thief c. weaver d. passenger
4. WB The ..... is a long piece of cotton, silk, etc which people can use to sew clothes.
   a. thread b. ink c. needle d. reed

▸ **Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes**

5. The antonym of "connect" is ..... . *(Matrouh 2022)*
   a. join b. disconnect c. link d. gather
6. LM What a horrible movie ! "Horrible" has the same meaning as "..... ".
   a. terrific b. awful c. long d. bored
7. We add " ..... " to form the adjective of the word "tradition".
   a. -al b. -ous c. -tion d. -ment
   (Alexandria 2022 / Beheira 2023)
8. SB The suffix " ..... " forms the noun from the verb "discuss".
   a. -ion b. -er c. -ment d. -ful
9. The opposite of the word "traditional" is ..... . *(Qena 2023)*
   a. expensive b. modern c. modal d. remote

▸ **Guessing the meaning from the text**

10. WB We can use some materials again. This means we can ..... them.
    a. damage b. destroy c. recycle d. waste
11. LM The vase is broken. Who threw it to the ground ? "Broken" here is opposite in meaning to "..... " .
    a. quiet b. unsafe c. dangerous d. undamaged

12. LM The ink from printers isn't safe to throw into water. It's very ..... for the environment.
a. healthy b. tired c. bad d. good

El-Moasser Exercises

Key vocabulary

13. Weaving is an important Egyptian ..... .
a. jewellery b. road c. tradition d. speech

14. We should replace the ..... ink in the printer regularly.
a. cart b. cartridge c. carriage d. count

Definitions

15. ..... is a liquid used in pens or printers for writing.
a. Oil b. Loom c. Link d. Ink

16. A ..... is a machine used for weaving.
a. wheel b. loom c. plane d. truck

Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes

17. We can form the adjective of the word "connect" by adding the suffix "..... ".
a. -ment b. -ion c. -ed d. -al

18. The synonym of the word "broken" is "..... ".
a. correct b. incorrect c. damaged d. amazing

Guessing the meaning from the text

19. A plastic football field was used in the 2018 World Cup. The word "field" means ..... .
a. competitor b. computer c. sports playground d. land

20. The printer is connected to the computer. The word "connected" means ..... together.
a. transported b. linked c. related d. phoned

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

21. Don't let people ..... at you, Yasser.
a. laughs b. laughed c. to laugh d. laugh

Speaking & Writing Corner

Reviews, Biographies, Short Stories & Dialogues الحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ

قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues 80 Reviews, Biographies & Short Stories

A school recycling project

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. When did your school ..... start ? مشروع إعادة تدوير الأشياء
   - Last week.
2. Is recycling important for the ..... ? البيئة
   - Yes, it is.
3. What would recycling reduce ?
   - It would reduce the ..... and pollution. النفايات
4. What would your classmates ..... ? يعيد تدوير
   - Old handbags, cans, plastic bottles and so on.
5. How can we reduce air pollution ?
   - By ..... a lot of trees. زراعة

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Finish the following dialogue :

They are talking about the importance of recycling for the environment.

A : Can I ask you some questions, Sameh ?

B : (1) ..... .

A : Is recycling important for the environment ?

B : (2) ..... .

A : (3) ..... ?

B : It would reduce the waste and pollution.

A : (4) ..... ?

B : We can recycle old handbags and cans.

A : How can we reduce air pollution ?

B : (5) ..... .

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك المهارة للكتابة

Write a review on :

"A school recycling project"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Hamza is talking to Mr Ayman about renewable and non-renewable energy.

Hamza : Good morning, Mr Ayman. Could you explain something for me?

Mr Ayman : Good morning, Hamza. (1) ..... .

Hamza : (2) ..... ?

Mr Ayman : Renewable energy is a kind of energy that is easily replaced.

Hamza : Can you give me an example of renewable energy ?

Mr Ayman : (3) ..... .

Hamza : (4) ..... ?

Mr Ayman : No. Oil isn't an example of renewable energy .

Hamza : Which is better for the environment renewable or non-renewable energy ?

Mr Ayman : (5) ..... .

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

will - weaving - hobby - loom - would - carpets

My grandmother is very active. Her favourite hobby is (1) ..... . She has an old (2) ..... which she uses to weave many beautiful carpets. I always ask her to teach me that nice (3) ..... and I think she (4) ..... teach me how to do it soon.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. LM To " ..... " something is to turn it into something that can be used again.
   a. invent b. cut c. recycle d. throw
2. That happened a short time ago. It's the ..... news.
   a. free b. old c. latest d. usual
3. A/An ..... is a person who makes clothes by weaving.
   a. engineer b. weaver c. pilot d. astronaut

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

4. Your new dress is beautiful. The synonym of the word " beautiful" is "..... ".

a. bad b. horrible c. terrible d. lovely

5. We add the suffix "....." to get the adjective from the word "colour".

a. –ing b. –ful c. –ness d. –ment

6. I want new pen. There is no ..... in this pen .

a. ink b. cartridge c. blog d. information

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. We plan ..... (spend) the weekend in the village. *(South Sinai 2023)*
2. LM Did you finish ..... (do) your homework ?
3. WB If you keep eating sweets, you ..... (have) bad teeth.
4. WB Ahmed ..... (not come) to school tomorrow if he feels ill.
5. SB I decided ..... (buy) a water bottle that I can reuse from the shop.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of a recycling project"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons

5 & 6

SB pages 19 & 20
WB pages 81 & 82

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

ocean (n)	محيط	seagrass (n)	عشب البحر
rainforest (n)	غابة إستوائية / مطيرة	washing up	غسيل الأطباق
wetland (n)	مستنقع - منطقة رطبة	coral reefs (n)	شعاب مرجانية
herbs (n)	أعشاب	speech (n)	خطاب - حديث
health (n)	صحة	conclusion(n)	خاتمة

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

Ocean - ink - health - speech - coral reefs

1. Smoking is bad for your ..... .
2. Tourists enjoy seeing fantastic ..... in the Red Sea.
3. The ..... of the president الرئيس was exciting and useful.
4. The Atlantic ..... is full of marine life.

Lesson 5

SB page 19 WB page 81

conclude(d)(v)	يختم - يستنتج	tips (n)	نصائح
everyone (pron)	كل شخص	respect (ed)(v)	يحترم
introduce(d)(v)	يقدم	spider plants(n)	النباتات المتسلقة
invite (d) (v)	يدعو	present(ed)(v)	يقدم - يعرض
transport (n)	النقل - المواصلات	subject (n)	موضوع

Lesson 6

SB page 20 WB page 82

along(adv)	على امتداد	time(n)	مرة - وقت
reason(n)	سبب	diver(n)	غواص
contrast(n)	تناقض	remind(ed)(v)	يُذكّر
however(conj)	مع ذلك	habitat(n)	موطن
including(prep)	بما فى ذلك	factual(adj)	حقيقى / واقعى
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	section (n)	جزء - قسم
baker's (n)	مخبز	temperature	درجة حرارة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs — تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
leave	يغادر	left	left
smell	يشم	smelt	smelt
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
ride	يمتطى / يستقل	rode	ridden

Study these definitions — ادرس هذه التعريفات

seagrass	a plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast	العشب البحرى
ocean	a very large area of sea on the Earth's surface	محيط

Collocations — متلازمات لفظية

make	a speech	يعد خطبة	**give**	a project	يبدأ مشروع
	sure	يتأكد		a speech	يلقى خطبة

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym /opposite المضاد	
naturally	بشكل طبيعى	normally	unnaturally	بشكل غير طبيعى
attractive	جذاب / جميل	beautiful	unattractive/ugly	غير جذاب / قبيح
colourful	ملون - زاهى الألوان	bright	plain / pale	سادة / شاحب
disappear	يختفى	vanish	appear	يظهر
safe	آمن	protected	dangerous endangered	خطير معرض للخطر
begin	يبدأ	start	finish	ينتهى
suitable	مناسب - ملائم	convenient	unsuitable	غير مناسب / غير ملائم
familiar	مألوف	common - popular	unfamiliar unusual	غير مألوف غير معتاد
careful	حريص	cautious	careless	مهمل

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
dis–	تعطى عكس المعنى	disappear	يختفى
re–	تعطى معنى تكرار الفعل مرة ثانية	reuse	يعيد إستخدام
–ous	تكون الصفة من الاسم	dangerous	خطير
–ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	naturally	بشكل طبيعى
–ive	تكون الصفة من الفعل	attractive	جذاب
–er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	speaker diver	متحدث غواص
–ful	تكون الصفة من الاسم	careful	حريص

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 start / begin / finish by + (inf. + ing) — يبدأ / ينتهى بـ ...

- I'd like to **start by saying** hello.
- I'd like to **finish by saying** life is not easy.
- I'd like to **begin by studying** math lessons.

SB page 19 - WB page 81

2 That's why + جملة = So — لذلك

- Shady was ill. **That's why / So** he was absent yesterday.

SB page 20 - WB page 82

3 Nevertheless — ومع ذلك

- Salma was tired. **Nevertheless**, she kept on working.

SB page 20 - WB page 82

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
give reasons to / for	يعطى مبررات لـ	save energy	يوفر طاقة
To conclude	الخلاصة أن	save water	يوفر المياه
World Wetland Day	اليوم العالمى للأراضى الرطبة	leave a room	يغادر غرفة
Prepositions			
about 90% of	حوالى ٩٠٪ من	in the last 100 years	فى المائة عام الأخيرة
walk down the road	يسير على الطريق	to begin with	أول ما أبدأ به
at the end	فى النهاية	careful of / about	حذر من
be dangerous for	يكون خطر على	on the right	فى جهة اليمين

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB & Previous Exams

1. WB A/An ..... is a very large area of sea on the Earth's surface.
   a. lake b. pond c. ocean d. river

Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes

2. We add the suffix "....." to change the noun danger into an adjective. *(Luxor 2023)*
   a. -able b. -ive c. -ous d. -ment
3. The prefix ..... gives the opposite of "appear". *(Alexandria 2023)*
   a. un- b. im- c. dis- d. il-
4. SB ..... absorbs Carbon dioxide quickly.
   a. Seagrass b. Global warming
   c. Coral reefs d. Plastic waste

Guessing the meaning from the text

5. WB Mum always tells me not to forget my homework. She ..... me of doing it.
   a. remembers b. reminds c. forgets d. says
6. SB She writes funny sentences at the end of the email. I like her funny ..... .
   a. introduction b. start c. conclusion d. beginning
7. SB Most butterflies have many colours. This means they are ..... .
   a. plain b. colourless c. regular d. colourful
8. WB Suddenly, all the cats ran away. This means they ..... .
   a. reminded b. appeared c. showed d. disappeared

El-Moasser Exercises

Key vocabulary

9. Some ..... have strong smell like mint نعناع.
   a. corals b. palm trees c. hills d. herbs
10. Today, I am going to give a ..... about protecting our planet.
    a. conversation b. speech c. beach d. reason
11. Mum cooks the food and I do the ..... up.
    a. watching b. washing c. drawing d. drying

Definitions

12. The ..... is a plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast.
    a. seawater b. sea view c. seagrass d. seashell

Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes

13. The suffix " ..... " changes the verb "attract" into an adjective.
    a. -able b. -ive c. -y d. -er

14. The word "protected " has the same meaning as the word " ..... " .
a. dangerous b. bored c. safe d. relaxed

15. The antonym of the word "begin" is " ..... " .
a. start b. finish c. attract d. appear

16. To make the noun from the word "speak", we add the suffix " ..... " .
a. -ist b. -er c. -ment d. -ness

17. The synonym of the word "suitable" is " ..... " .
a. helpful b. respectable c. convenient d. content

Guessing the meaning from the text

18. This jewellery is beautiful. The word "beautiful" here means " ..... " .
a. silly b. attractive c. unimportant d. useless

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

19. Give me a reason ..... making this mistake.
a. for b. of c. on d. with

20. The headteacher started his speech ..... greeting us.
a. by b. of c. off d. about

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

Giving a speech :

القاء حديث :

1. Today, I'm going to talk about	١. اليوم سأكون بصدد الحديث عن .....
2. I'd like to start by saying	٢. أود أن أبدء بقول .....
3. To begin with, ...	٣. أول ما بدء به هو أن .....
4. In the next part of my speech, I'd like to	٤. فى الجزء التالى من حديثى أود أن .....
5. I'd like to finish by saying	٥. أود أن أنهى حديثى بقول .....

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

Seagrass عشب البحر

1. Seagrass is found in the sea along the coast of many countries.
١. يوجد عشب البحر على طول الساحل فى كثير من الدول.

2. It is food for many sea animals.
٢. إنه طعام للكثير من الحيوانات البحرية.

3. Seagrass helps keep the sea healthy and it can help stop climate change.
٣. إنه يساعد فى الحفاظ على سلامة مياه البحر ويساعد فى توقف التغير المناخى.

4. Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than rainforests.
٤. عشب البحر يمتص ثانى أكسيد الكربون أسرع ٣٥ مرة من الغابات المطيرة.

III Language

Remember تذكر

Expressing reasons & contrast التعبير عن الأسباب والتناقض

1 Expressing reason التعبير عن السبب

because لأن / بسبب

Subject فاعل + verb فعل because + subject فاعل + verb فعل

ex. - Sea animals live in seagrass because it is a safe place.

This is because هذا بسبب ....

Subject فاعل + verb فعل ..... . This is because subject فاعل + verb فعل

ex. - She won the competition. This is because she trained hard.

That is why لذلك / ولهذا السبب ....

جملة كاملة. That is why subject فاعل + verb فعل

ex. - I woke up late today. That is why I didn't catch the bus.

2 Expressing contrast التعبير عن التناقض

However ومع ذلك ....

Subject فاعل + verb فعل ..... . However, subject فاعل + verb فعل

ex. - I don't have much time. However , I do voluntary work.

Nevertheless ولكن / ومع ذلك / غير أن ....

Subject فاعل + verb فعل ..... . Nevertheless, subject فاعل + verb فعل

ex. - The plants will still be quite small. Nevertheless , they will grow into 20,000 square metres of seagrass.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB, WB & Previous Exams

1. WB Wetlands are important for the environment. ..... (That's why), we are losing a lot of it every year.
2. SB Baby fish and sea animals live in seagrass ..... (so) it is a safe place.
3. WB Coral reefs do not like changes in temperature. That is ..... (because) climate change can kill them.
4. WB Plastic is bad for the environment. ..... (Because), it is easy to recycle.

El-Moasser Exercises

5. Sally can't speak well. ..... (So) she has a sore throat.
6. Ali is quite poor. ..... (Because), he has expensive clothes.
7. Nancy is successful ..... (that's why) she studies hard.
8. Helmy is angry. ..... (That's because) he doesn't speak to us.
9. Fady lost the game. ..... (Because), he is sad.
10. Dalia got the job. ..... (That's why) she had done well in the interview.
11. The competition was tough. ..... (So), our team did well in all matches.
12. Rahma has got high marks. ..... (Because) she is smiling.
13. Rahma is smiling. ..... (That's why) she has got high marks.
14. Basim didn't train well. ..... (Because), he won the game.
15. The car didn't have enough petrol. ..... (Because) it stopped working.

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Nermin is phoning Reham to apologize for not coming to her birthday party yesterday.

Nermin : Hello, Reham. Happy birthday to you !

Reham : Hello, Nermin. (1) ..... .

Nermin : I'm sorry. I couldn't come to your birthday party.

Reham : (2) ..... ?

Nermin : Because my father was ill and we took him to the doctor.

Reham : What bad news! (3) ..... ?

Nermin : He has a fever and he is coughing.

Reham : I'm sorry to hear that. How is he now ?

Nermin : (4) ..... . Thank you.

Reham : (5) ..... .

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

ride – turn – save – will – has – pollution

People should be careful at their homes. They should (1) ..... energy. They should (2) ..... off their devices and lamps after using them. Instead of taking a bus, they can (3) ..... bikes and this (4) ..... make them healthy, too.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. LM A/An ..... is much bigger than a sea.

   a. canal b. ocean c. waterfall d. river

2. WB ..... is a plant which lives in the sea, usually near the coast.

   a. Sea animal b. Seaside c. Seagrass d. Glass

3. We add the suffix "....." to get the adverb from the adjective "wind".
   a. –ly b. –ive c. –ful d. –y
4. He didn't tell us why he was angry. He gave us no ..... .
   a. reason b. season c. money d. pollution
5. The new dresses are all colourful. The antonym of the word "colourful" is ..... .
   a. bright b. shiny c. plain d. light
6. LM He ran fast. However, he missed the train. "However" her could give the meaning of ".....".
   a. so b. but c. because d. that is why

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Halim sang well. ..... (However) all people in Egypt liked his songs.
2. Movie stars are usually rich. ..... (That's why), they don't enjoy their personal life.
3. The boy was wrong. ..... (Because), his father didn't punish him.
4. Hany didn't go to work ..... (so) he was injured.
5. Mo Salah plays well for Liverpool. ..... (Because) he gets many awards.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A review of how to stop pollution"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Review on unit 8

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary

protect	يحمى
environmental problems	مشاكل بيئية
serious	خطير
air pollution	تلوث الهواء
deforestation	إزالة الغابات
coral reefs	الشعب المرجانية
climate change	التغير المناخى
carbon dioxide	ثانى أكسيد الكربون
floods	فيضانات
drought	جفاف
greenhouse gases	غازات الاحتباس الحرارى
landfill sites	مواقع دفن النفايات
renewable energy	الطاقة المتجددة
weaving	النسيج - حرفة النسيج
weavers	النساجون
global warming	الاحتباس الحرارى
fabric	قماش
herbs	أعشاب
spider plants	نباتات عنكبوتية

Language

1- If / When + present simple + will + inf.

تستخدم (If / When) فى الحالة الأولى للتعبير عن احتمال فى المستقبل

ex: - Our environment will be cleaner if we recycle our rubbish.
- If you study hard, you will get high marks.

2- verbs + (to + inf. / - ing)

ex: - Salma decided to help poor people.
- Sara needs to study her lessons.
- I'm looking forward to seeing you.
- We must start recycling more rubbish.
- Ali likes to recycle / recycling.

Speaking

* Discussing environmental problems

مناقشة المشاكل البيئية

- What will happen if we don't recycle our rubbish ?
- **It will cause air pollution.**
- Do you think that the recycling project in Cairo is a good idea ? Why/Why not ?
- **Yes, I think it is a good idea because it helps clean and protect the environment.**
- What makes the most greenhouse gases ?
Electricity and power.
- How can we help keep our air, water and land clean ?
- **We can recycle more of our waste.**

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Summarizing a text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [التلخيص للنص سواء النص كاملًا أو احدي فقرات النص].

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

Egypt is a big Arab country. It is located in the north east of Africa. Egypt has a population of about 104 million people. They are famous for being kind and friendly. Egypt also has a very fine weather and a very long and great history. Its fine weather and its beautiful ancient monuments attract millions of tourists from all over the world. The Great Pyramid of Giza is one of the most popular monument in the world. We all should be proud of Egypt.

Summarize the paragraph in one sentence.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تلخيص الفقرة أو النص حيث يوجد الكثير من التفاصيل والأحداث فلا أستطيع تلخيص كل الفقرة في سطر واحد.

مفتاح الحل عند الإجابة عن سؤال تلخيص فقرة/نص تقرأ الفقرة بشكل كامل لمعرفة الموضوع العام ثم نلخص أهم النقاط في الموضوع بشكل مبسط لا داعي لذكر كل التفاصيل في التلخيص.

2 Speaking

Recycling

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Finish the following dialogue :

Mona is talking to her friend Dina about recycling.

Dina : Hello, Mona. You look worried. Why ?

Mona : (1) ..... .

Dina : (2) ..... ?

Mona : I'm doing a project about recycling because it is very important for the environment.

Dina : (3) ..... ?

Mona : I'd like to start by saying that everyone in our class has a role.

Dina : That's great. What things can you recycle ?

Mona : (4) ..... .

Dina : What can we use bags for ?

Mona : (5) ..... .

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [إعادة التدوير] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Writing

يختبر سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية معرفتك لقدر كاف من المفردات وقدرتك على كتابة جمل تعبر عن الموضوع.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [تغير المناخ] و [النسيج فى مصر] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraph
Climate Change	**Write the meaning :** ..... جفاف ..... الوقود الحفرى ..... كوكب ..... إزالة الغابات ..... تغير المناخ ..... الطاقة الشمسية	**Complete the sentences :** 1. Our ..... is getting hotter and our weather is changing. 2. There are more floods, ... and forest fires than anytime in history. 3. ..... is caused by greenhouse gases like carbon dioxide. 4. There is carbon dioxide when we burn ..... . 5. ..... produces greenhouse gases.	**Write a review on :** *"Climate Change"* ....
Weaving in Egypt	..... نساجون ..... القماش ..... النسيج ..... آلة النول ..... تقليدى ..... يصنع	1. ..... is an important tradition in Egypt. 2. There aren't many ..... weavers in Egypt today. 3. A weaver uses a machine called a ..... . 4. This machine crosses threads under and over each other to make ..... . 5. ..... can make very beautiful things.	**Write an email about :** *"Weaving in Egypt"* ....

Questions collected from previous exams and longman

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list : *(Sharkia 2022)*

absorb - made - plant - take - planet - makes

Life is not possible without plants. Plants are the beauty of our (1)..... . They are useful gifts of nature. When a plant grows, it (2)..... the area around it cleaner and beautiful. Plants produce oxygen and (3)..... carbon dioxide. It is a fact that people who live near plants are healthier and happier. We should (4)..... care of plants.

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. ..... is cutting down all the trees in area.
   a. Air pollution b. Deforestation
   c. Weaving d. Farming *(Qalyoubia 2023)*
2. The prefix " ..... " gives the opposite of "appear". *(Alexandria 2023)*
   a. un– b. im– c. dis– d. il–
3. Trees absorb ..... dioxide from the air. *(Giza 2023)*
   a. liquid b. carbon c. gas d. oxygen
4. The prefix " ..... " is used to add the meaning "do again". *(Gharbia 2023)*
   a. bi– b. re– c. di– d. in–
5. Plants often ..... pollution in the air, making it cleaner for us. *(Sharkia 2023)*
   a. produce b. protect c. increase d. absorb
6. We add " ..... " to form the adjective of the word "tradition". *(Beheira 2023)*
   a. –ible b. –able c. –al d. –ful
7. The floods broke down some coastal hotels in Thailand. The words "broke down" here mean ..... . *(Minia 2023)*
   a. destroyed b. designed c. built d. made
8. The ink in my printer is low. I have to change the ..... . *(Sohag 2023)*
   a. cartridge b. brace c. battery d. fabric
9. To turn the word "colour" into an adjective, we add the suffix " ..... " . *(Motrooh 2023)*
   a. –ful b. –ment c. –er d. –tion
10. LM " ..... " is a gas that comes from rubbish in landfill sites.
   a. Methane b. Oxygen c. Air d. Oil

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. My family plan ..... (spend) the weekend in Alexandria. *(Assiut 2023)*
2. We should avoid ..... (eat) unhealthy food. *(Suez 2023)*
3. If you call me, I ..... (would) go to the party with you tonight. *(Beni Suef 2023)*
4. LM Adel wants ..... (buy) a new mobile phone.
5. LM If we ..... (not stop) using oil, we will have more pollution.

Test on unit 8

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

قم بحل اختبار تراكمى فى الملحق

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Nada and Soha are talking about solar energy.

Nada : What's your opinion about solar energy ?

Soha : (1) ..... .

Nada : (2) ..... ?

Soha : Yes, I agree. Energy from the sun is better.

Nada : (3) ..... ?

Soha : We can get it from the solar panels.

Nada : Can we use them in our houses ?

Soha : (4) ..... .

Nada : Do these panels produce pollution ?

Soha : (5) ..... .

Nada : That would be great. *(Luxor 2023)*

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

change - made - gases - droughts - make - energy

Our planet is hotter and our weather is changing. There are more floods, (1) ..... and forest fires than any time in history. One of the reasons for that is climate (2) ..... which is caused by greenhouse (3) ..... such as carbon dioxide. These are (4) ..... when we burn fossil fuels. *(Dakahlia 2023)*

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. .....
3. ..... 4. .....

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Keeping the environment clean is important for everyone who lives on the Earth. Man has invented a lot of useful things that save all people but at the same time, they are harmful to the environment. Cars are

useful because they carry us from place to place but **they** are harmful to the environment because they give out the burning fuel which causes pollution to the air, man and animals. Factories make things to people and to the country as they help increase the country money. But there are some factories that throw their waste and rubbish in water and this kills huge numbers of fish, too. So, we should plant more trees and stop cutting them down because they are a source of life as they **absorb** carbon dioxide and keep the air clean.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Keeping the environment ..... is important for everyone.
   a. dirty b. polluted c. clean d. harmful
2. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to .....
   a. cars b. factories c. trees d. plants
3. The underlined word "**absorb**" here means ..... .
   a. throw away b. take off c. take in d. put into

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   .....
5. Why do you think cars are harmful to the environment ?
   .....
6. Where do some factories throw their waste and rubbish ?
   .....

(Suez 2023)

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. LM Forest fires are increasing. The word "increasing" means to become ..... in amount or size.
   a. smaller b. happier c. larger d. nicer
2. LM A printer ..... is a small container of ink for use in a printer.
   a. cartridge b. carriage c. glass d. cup
3. We form the noun from the word"pollute", by adding the suffix "..... ".
   a. –ment b. –sion c. –al d. –ion

(Minia 2022)

4. SB " ..... " is clean energy from the sun or wind.
   a. Fossil fuel b. Solar energy
   c. Electricity d. Renewable energy

5. She cannot buy that ..... mobile. She doesn't have enough money.
   a. free b. cheap c. expensive d. weak

6. SB Nowadays, we use modern ways of farming. The antonym of the word of "modern" is " ..... ".
   a. expensive b. for c. few d. ancient

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. LM Do you think ..... (recycle) is good for the environment ?
2. Eyad ..... (not buy) the car if he doesn't have enough money *(Qalyoubia 2022)*
3. The manager decided ..... (reward) the employees for their hard work.
4. LM Our teacher makes us ..... (to repeat) the exercise if he finds mistakes.
5. SB You need ..... (improve) your English if you want to get a good job.

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A review of traditional arts in Egypt"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 8 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Tamer and Khalid are talking about sports.

Tamer : What's your favourite sport, Khalid ?

Khalid : (1) ..... .

Tamer : (2) ..... ?

Khalid : I play it once a week in the club. (3) ..... ?

Tamer : I prefer football. It is a very exciting sport.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. ..... is the place where the rubbish is kept. *(Menofia Zone 2023)*
   a. Landfill site b. Deforestation c. Recycling d. Airport

2. Plants ..... carbon dioxide from the air. *(Sohag Zone 2023)*
   a. absorb b. release c. send d. heat

3. You should avoid ..... on that wall because it is dangerous.
   a. to sit b. sit c. sitting d. sat
   (Beheira Zone 2023)

4. What do I need ..... from the shops, Mum ? *(Gharbia Zone 2023)*
   a. buy b. to buy c. buying d. bought

3 Write a paragraph of SIX sentences on :

"How to stop pollution "

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

* **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d to complete the following dialogue:**

Rehab is reading an article about global warming.

Azza : What are you reading ?

Rehab : (1) ..... .

a. I am playing football
b. I am watching TV
c. I am reading an article
d. I am cooking fish

Azza : What is the article about ?

Rehab : It is about global warming.

Azza : (2) ..... ?

a. What does global warming mean
b. What is GPS
c. How did he travel
d. Where do you live

Rehab : It means the increase of temperature.

Azza : Can we solve this problem ?

Rehab : (3) ..... .

a. Yes, we can b. No, he can't
c. No, I haven't d. No, I didn't

Azza : (4) ..... ?

a. How can we solve it
b. Where do you plant trees
c. How are you
d. Are you a dentist

Rehab : We can solve it by planting more trees.

Azza : (5) ..... .

a. I went to the zoo
b. I agree with you
c. She was at school
d. He played football

* **Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a , b , c or d :**

6. If it is hot tomorrow, we ..... **(would)** go to the beach.
   a. will b. couldn't c. could d. wouldn't

7. The car didn't have enough petrol. ..... **(Because)** it stopped working.
   a. Nevertheless b. so
   c. That's why d. However

8. What do I need ..... **(buying)** a new car ?
   a. buy b. to buying
   c. buy to d. to buy

9. That man is poor. ..... **(That's why)**, he is happy.
   a. So b. Nevertheless
   c. Because d. This is because

10. What ..... **(you do)** if you don't catch the train ?
   a. would you do b. will you do
   c. could yo do d. couldn't you do

Unit 9 Build a greener world

Objectives

- Reading
- Writing
- Listening
- Speaking
- Language
- Life Skills

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 22 : 25
WB pages 84 & 85

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

sustainable (adj)	مستدام - صديق للبيئة	seedling (n)	نبتة - شجيرة صغيرة
products (n)	منتجات	bamboo (n)	الخيزران [البامبو]
mangrove trees (n)	أشجار المانجروف [شجر استوائى]	shopping bag (n)	حقيبة التسوق
		battery (n)	بطارية
rising (adj)	متزايد	light bulb (n)	مصباح إضاءة
sea level (n)	مستوى سطح البحر	climate change (n)	تغير المناخ
seawater (n)	مياه البحر	carbon footprint (n)	بصمة كربونية
crops (n)	محاصيل زراعية	energy-saving (adj)	موفر للطاقة
flood (n)	فيضان	reusable (adj)	يمكن إعادة إستخدامه
rechargeable (adj)	قابل لإعادة الشحن	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تدوير / تصنيع [الأشياء]

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

energy-saving - crops - Mangrove trees - sustainable - sea level

1. ..... grow in seawater along the coast.
2. We should use ..... lamps to save electricity.
3. Melting ice increases ..... .
4. Oil and natural gas aren't ..... forms of energy.

Lesson 1

SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 84

paper (n), (adj)	ورق - ورقى	electricity (n)	الكهرباء
plastic (n), (adj)	بلاستيك - بلّاستيكى	water bottle (n)	زجاجة مياه
toothbrush (n)	فرشاة اسنان	coffee shop (n)	مقهى
electric (adj)	كهربائى	plug (ged) in (v)	يوصل الفيشة [بالكهرباء]
environment (n)	البيئة	charge (d) (v)	يشحن [بالكهرباء]
petrol (n)	بترول - بنزين	hieroglyphics (n)	اللغة الهيروغليفية

Lesson 2

SB pages 24 & 25 WB page 85

affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على	webpage (n)	صفحة على الانترنت
community (n)	مجتمع	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
salt (n)	ملح	however (conj)	ومع ذلك
forest (n)	غابة	solve (d) (v)	يحل - يجد حلا
environmental (adj)	بيئى	land (n)	ارض - يابسة
nature (n)	الطبيعة	field (n)	حقل
shop window (n)	واجهة المحل [فاترينا]	team (n)	فريق
storm (n)	عاصفة	coast (n)	ساحل
situation (n)	موقف	sea animal (n)	حيوان بحرى
wind (n)	رياح	protect (ed) (v)	يحمى

Countries & cities

بلاد ومدن

Greece	دولة اليونان	Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة
Canada	دولة كندا		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
go	يذهب	went	gone
send	يرسل	sent	sent

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

bamboo cup	a cup made from a tall, strong grass	كوب بامبو [مصنوع من الخيزران]
energy-saving light bulb	a glass object that uses less electricity than usual to give light	مصباح إضاءة موفر للطاقة
reusable	able to be used again	يُمكن إعادة استخدامه
rechargeable battery	something that gives power to a machine, toy, car, etc. and which you can continue to add energy to, so they continue to work	بطارية قابلة لإعادة الشحن
light bulb	a glass object that you put in lights, which changes electricity into light	مصباح إضاءة
sustainable	causing little or no damage to the environment	مُستدام - صديق للبيئة
crops	plants that we grow on farms	محاصيل

mangrove tree	a small tree with roots above the ground, which grows in or near the coast or rivers شجرة المانجروف (القرم)
seedling	a small plant which has started to grow from a seed شتلة - نبتة
rising sea levels	when the sea becomes higher because climate change melts the ice at the Poles ارتفاع مستوى البحر

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة	**pass**	the test	يجتاز الاختبار
do	a job	يقوم بأداء وظيفة			

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
plug in	يوصل بالكهرباء	connect	plug out	يفصل من الكهرباء
higher	أكثر	more	lower / less	أقل
little	صغير السن	young	old	كبير السن - عجوز
provide	يزود - يمد بـ	give / supply	take	يأخذ
sustainable	مستدام	maintainable / renewable / continual	unsustainable non-renewable	غير مستدام غير متجدد
give up	يقلع عن	stop	continue	يستمر

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
un–	تعطى عكس المعنى	unusual	غير عادى
re–	تعطى معنى إعادة فعل الشىء	reusable rechargeable	يمكن إعادة استخدامه قابل لإعادة الشحن
–able	تعطى معنى القدرة أو الإمكانية تعطى الصفة من الفعل	rechargeable sustainable	يمكن إعادة شحنه مستدام

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 paper – a paper / papers

* paper (n) — ورق (اسم لايعد)
  - Using digital tools makes me use less **paper**.
* a paper – papers — جريدة - جرائد
  - I used to buy a **paper** every day.
  - Al Ahram and Al Akhbar are national **papers**.

SB page 22

2 Compound nouns — الأسماء المركبة

هى عبارة عن أسماء مكونة من كلمتين وتكون كالآتى :

* **noun + noun**
  - sea level مستوى سطح البحر
  - seawater مياه البحر
  - rainforest غابة مطيرة
* **noun + verb**
  - rainfall سقوط المطر
  - haircut قصة شعر
* **noun + preposition**
  - passerby عابر سبيل
* **adjective + noun**
  - greenhouse بيت زجاجى للزرع [صوبة]
  - software برمجة حاسوب
* **verb + preposition**
  - lookout مراقبة
  - takeoff إقلاع [طائرة]
* **verb + noun**
  - password كلمة السر
  - playground ملعب

SB page 24

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
energy - saving light bulbs	لمبات موفرة للطاقة	getting higher	يزداد / يرتفع
live more a sustainable life	يعيش حياة أكثر استدامة [صديقة للبيئة]	save water	يوفر الماء
		form of writing	طريقة كتابة
Prepositions			
on the Red Sea coast	على ساحل البحر الأحمر	on holiday	فى إجازة
turn off	يطفئ [جهاز]	made from	مصنوع من
come onto farms	يغمر المزارع	along the coast	بامتداد / بطول الساحل
provide .... for	يوفر ..... لـ	caused by	تحدث بسبب

the **crops**(6) and farmers can't **grow**(7) anything for many years. So, people **lose**(8) their farms and their homes.

However, in hot countries like Egypt, **mangrove trees**(9) grow in the sea along the coast. Mangrove forests protect farms and **communities**(10) from strong **winds**(11) and **storms**(12). They **provide**(13) homes for plants, fish and sea animals. If there were more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.

Now in Egypt, people are growing thousands of mangrove **seedlings**(14) to plant along the Red Sea coast. The problems caused by rising sea levels could get worse if they didn't plant new mangrove forests. So, they are going to plant 300,000 seedlings every year. When they grow into mangrove forests, they will protect the coast from rising sea levels.

(6) محاصيل
(7) يزرع
(8) يفقد
(9) شجر المانجروف
(10) مجتمعات
(11) رياح
(12) عواصف
(13) يمد / يوفر
(14) شتلات - نبتات صغيرة

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

Definitions

1. A ..... is a tall plant which we can use to make cups and chairs.
   a. mangrove b. seagrass c. bamboo d. seedling
   (Souhag 2023)
2. WB ..... means able to be used again.
   a. Reduced b. Rechargeable c. Reusable d. Replaced
3. LM A ..... is a small plant which has started to grow from a seed.
   a. tree b. seedling c. bush d. jungle

Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes

4. To get the adjective of "sustain" you add the suffix "....." . *(Suez 2023)*
   a. -able b. -al c. -ment d. -tion
5. Rewrite your composition. The prefix "re" means to do it .....
   a. next b. again c. first d. last
   (South Sinai 2022)
6. Something which is sustainable is ..... *(South Sinai 2023)*
   a. electric b. temporary c. renewable d. modern
7. SB The synonym of the word "provide" is ..... .
   a. import b. report c. give d. ignore

Guessing the meaning from the text

8. WB We can't continue to use petrol for cars because it is ..... .
   a. surrounded b. simple
   c. sustainable d. unsustainable

9. The plants we grow on farms are called ..... . (Damietta 20
   a. ingredients b. crops c. fossil fuels d. grassland

El-Moasser Exercises

Key vocabulary

10. The ..... is a large amount of water covered an area.
    a. fog b. flood c. storm d. wind

11. ..... your glass, paper and plastic products to reduce pollution and save energy.
    a. Burn b. Recycle c. Throw d. Charge

12. This tower is 30 meters above the sea ..... .
    a. sand b. level c. seed d. weed

Definitions

13. ..... tree is a small tree with roots above the ground, which grows in or near the coast.
    a. Mango b. Mangrove c. Palm d. Coral

Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes

14. Please, plug in the TV. The word "plug in" can be replaced by ..... .
    a. borrow b. waste c. connect d. find

15. The antonym of the word "higher" is ..... .
    a. nicer b. lower c. heavier d. lighter

16. We add the prefix "....." to get the antonym of the word "usual".
    a. re– b. im– c. un– d. ir–

17. The suffix "....." can be used to get the adjective from the word "environment".
    a. -al b. -y c. -ed d. -ing

Guessing the meaning from the text

18. We need electricity to use the machine. It's ..... .
    a. reusable b. rising c. electric d. sustainable

19. Sunglasses protect your eyes from sun and wind. This means they ..... you
    a. save b. damage c. design d. reuse

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

20. Most accidents are caused ..... carelessness.
    a. at b. of c. with d. by

Speaking & Writing Corner

Reviews, Biographies, Short Stories & Dialogues للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ

فهم واستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة

80 Dialogues 80 Reviews, Biographies & Short Stories

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابه
How to keep our environment clean	**Read and complete :** 1. What could you stop using or buying that is bad for the ..... ? بيئة - We could stop using plastic shopping bags. 2. Why shoud we ..... using cars ? يقلل - To make our environment clean.	**Finish the following dialogue :** A : Hi Ali! What can we do to protect our environment ? B : Hi, Sameh. (1) ..... . A : Less plastic ! (2) ..... ? B : We should use reusable shopping bags. A : (3) ..... ! B : (4) ..... ? A : Yes, we use energy-saving light bulbs. B : Good ! You should also reduce using cars. A : Why ? B : (5)	**Write a review on :** "How to keep our environment clean" ....
Climate change and its bad effects	1. Does climate change mean that many countries have more .....? فيضانات - Yes, it does. 2. How can ..... help in protecting the environment ? شجر المانجروف - They protect farms from strong wind and ..... . عواصف	A : Can I ask you some questions ? B : (1) ..... . A : Does climate change mean that many countries have more floods ? B : (2) ..... . A : (3) ..... ? B : Because of rising sea levels. A : (4) ..... ? B : No, plants can't live in saltwater. A : How can mangrove trees help in protecting the environment ? B : (5)	"Climate change and its bad effects" ....

III Language

Remember تذكر

1 "used to" for regular past habits and routines :

تستخدم [used to] للتعبير عن العادات والأعمال الروتينية فى الماضى

Usage الاستخدام

– You can use **(used to)** to talk about a repeated action in the past that has now changed.

تستخدم **(used to)** للتعبير عن حدث تكرر فى الماضى ولكنه تغير الآن.

ex. - When I was young, I used to play in the street.

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + used to + inf. مصدر الفعل.... إعتاد أن

ex. - My father used to work in a bank, but now he works in an international company.
- We used to live in a village, but now we live in the city.
- He used to be lazy, but now he isn't.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + didn't + use to + inf. .... مصدر الفعل لم يعتاد أن

ex. - I didn't use to like salad when I was young, but I love it now.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(A) Yes/No question : [أ] السؤال بـ "هل" :

Did + subject الفاعل + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل....?

ex. - Did your mother use to read you stories when you were young ?

- وللإجابة المختصرة :

- Yes, she did.
- No, she didn't.

(B) Wh-question : [ب] السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة استفهام + did + subject الفاعل + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل....?

ex. - Where did you use to live before you moved to this city ?

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

1. Heba ..... (used to) like cheese, but she does now. *(North Sinai 2022)*
2. LM Our grandparents used ..... (to living) in a small village.
3. LM Did you ..... (used) to walk to work, dad ?
4. I ..... (use) to walk to school when I was a child. *(Luxor 2022)*
5. He always ..... (using) to be afraid of the dark when he was young. *(Sharkia 2022)*
6. We ..... (not use to) play computer games, but we do now. *(Cairo 2022)*
7. SB In the past, people didn't ..... (used to) use energy-saving light bulbs.
8. SB We used to ..... (wasting) water, but now we try to save it.
9. SB I ..... (don't) use to have an electric toothbrush, but now I've got one.
10. SB Mum ..... (use to) get plastic bags at the supermarket, but now she gets paper ones.
11. SB Dad didn't use to ..... (turned) off his computer at night, but he does now.
12. WB My grandparents didn't ..... (used) to send emails. They wrote letters.

El-Moasser Exercises

13. That building used to ..... (being) a factory.
14. What ..... (do) you use to learn at primary school ?
15. Dr Sameh used ..... (for) help to give people new hearts.
16. He used to ..... (sings) nice songs.

2 The second conditional with would, might or could :

حالة (If) الشرطية الثانية باستخدام would / might / could :

Usage الاستخدام

- We use If + past simple + would + inf. (the second conditional) to talk about situations that are possible, but probably won't happen.

تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الثانية للتعبير عن المواقف المحتملة ولكن ربما لن تحدث.

١ يتم تكوين الحالة الشرطية الثانية كالتالى:

جملة جواب الشرط (الجملة الرئيسية)	جملة الشرط (الجملة الثانوية)	أداة الشرط
subject + would / could / might + inf. المصدر ...	subject + past simple, ماضى بسيط (التصريف الثانى للفعل)	If / لو إذا

ex. If Esraa worked hard at school, she would get high marks.

٢ يمكن أن نبدأ بالجملة الرئيسية (جملة جواب الشرط) كالتالى :

جملة جواب الشرط (الجملة الرئيسية)	أداة الشرط	جملة الشرط (الجملة الثانوية)
Subject + would / could / might + inf. المصدر ...	if / لو إذا	subject + past simple ماضى بسيط (التصريف الثانى للفعل)

ex. Esraa would get high marks if she worked hard at school.

٣ يمكن استخدام (might) بدلاً من (would) للتعبير عن عدم التأكد (الاحتمالية) ولاحظ أن :

would + perhaps / possibly / probably + inf. = might + inf.

ex. - If I had enough money, I would perhaps buy a new car. (might)
- If I had enough money, I might buy a new car.

٤ يمكن استخدام (could) بدلاً من (would be able to) للتعبير عن القدرة أو الإمكانية ولاحظ أن :

would be able to + inf. = could + inf.

ex. - If Menna came first, she would be able to join the school trip for free. (could)
- If Menna came first, she could join the school trip for free.

٥ يمكن استخدام (could) بدلاً من (would) للتعبير عن الاحتمالية ولاحظ أن :

would + perhaps + inf. = could + inf.

ex. - Pollution would perhaps increase if we didn't recycle more rubbish. (could)

ex. - Pollution could increase if we didn't recycle more rubbish.

٦ استخدام (might not) يدل على عدم الاحتمال ولاحظ أن :

wouldn't possibly + inf. = might not + inf.

ex. - If you went to the bakery, it wouldn't possibly be very busy. (might)

- If you went to the bakery, it might not be very busy.

تستخدم قاعدة (If) فى الحالة الثانية عند اعطاء نصيحة كما فى الصيغة التالية :

* **If I were you, I would(n't) + inf.** مصدر الفعل

ex. - **If I were** you, I **would go** to Alexandria.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

1. If I ..... (have) more time, I would read more books. *(Suez 2023)*
2. If he shut the door, the thieves ..... (not break) into the house. *(Luxor 2023)*
3. If I he studied well, he ..... (get) better marks. *(Gharbia 2023)*
4. LM If he ..... (wouldn't) stop smoking, he would have health problems.
5. LM What ..... (did) you do if you lost your mobile in the park ?
6. If we ..... (have) more time, we would visit the museum. *(New Valley 2022)*
7. If we lived in Alexandria, we ..... (go) to the beach every weekend.
8. If I ..... (be) in trouble, would you help me ? *(Qena 2022)*
9. WB If there ..... (are) more mangrove trees along the coast, there would be fewer floods.
10. WB If we had more money, we ..... (can) buy that new car. *(North Sinai 2022)*
11. SB If we ..... (live) in Hurghada, we would go to the beach.
12. SB She ..... (not be) an environmental scientist if she didn't love nature.
13. WB What ..... (will) you do if you got a job in a different city ?
14. WB Tarek would pass the test if he ..... (studies) harder.

El-Moasser Exercises

15. The volleyball team would win the match if they ..... (have) better players.
16. If I ..... (am) you, I'd travel to any European country to study.

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Ashraf is talking to his classmate Fady about saving electricity.

Ashraf : Good morning, Fady.

Fady : Good morning, Ashraf.

Ashraf : Fady, what do you think of our lesson today ?

Fady : (1) ..... . What should we do to save electricity ?

Ashraf : (2) ..... .

Fady : I always turn off the lights before leaving any place. (3) ..... ?

Ashraf : We can also depend on the sunlight during the day and don't use electricity. (4) ..... ?

Fady : I suggest turning off the devices that we don't need.

Ashraf : (5) ..... .

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

would have - reusable - protect - will have - pollute - less

I want to do something to protect our environment. If we share in keeping the environment clean, we (1) ..... a healthy life. We should use (2) ..... plastic. We can buy (3) ..... shopping bags. Also, we can use bamboo coffee cups. Bamboo is sustainable and doesn't (4) ..... the environment.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. A ..... is a glass object that you put in lights, which changes electricity into light.
   a. bamboo cup b. waterwheel c. light bulb d. sea level

2. LM We should have sustainable development. "Sustainable" here means "..... ".
   a. known b. short c. limited d. continual

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

3. LM The rise in prices is a problem in most countries all over the world. "Rise" is a synonym for "……".

a. decrease b. number c. increase d. amount

4. You should give up smoking. The antonym of "give up" is …… .

a. increase b. decrease c. connect d. continue

5. WB …… are plants that we grow on farms.

a. Groups b. Blogs c. Crops d. Tools

6. LM Wind turbines help us get electricity, which is a/an …… source of energy.

a. renewable b. non-renewable

c. polluting d. impossible

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. LM My father …… (don't) use to get up late when he was young.
2. LM Would she …… (enjoys) her time if she were with us ?
3. My grandparents …… (use) to live on a farm when they were young. *(Suez 2023)*
4. If he came to the club, I …… (play) with him. *(Suez 2023)*
5. LM If Hatim …… (not be) busy, he would go out with his friends.

5 Write One HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A review of climate change"

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

……

Lessons

3 & 4

SB pages 26 : 28
WB pages 86 & 87

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

produce (d) (v)	ينتج - يخرج	earthquake(n)	زلزال
solar energy (n)	طاقة شمسية	air conditioning (n)	تكييف الهواء
solar panels (n)	ألواح طاقة شمسية	green (adj)	يتعلق بحماية البيئة
greenhouse (n)	بيت زجاجى لزراعة النباتات	ski (ed) (v)	يتزلج - يتزحلق
wind turbines (n)	توربينات الرياح	power(n)	قوة / سُلطة
water wheel (n)	ساقية [مياه]	remote control (n)	جهاز التحكم عن بعد

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

produce - earthquake - air conditioning - green - greenhouse

1. The weather is hot. Please, turn on the ..... .
2. The sun is a source of ..... energy.
3. We use a ..... to grow plants.
4. The ..... destroyed the city.

Lesson 3

SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 86

village (n)	قرية	parts (n)	أجزاء
frightened (adj)	خائف	fossil fuel (n)	الوقود الحفرى
surprised (adj)	مندهش	landfill (n)	مكب النفايات
accident (n)	حادث	site (n)	موقع - مكان
absorb (ed) (v)	يمتص	Denmark	دولة الدنمارك
pollution (n)	تلوث	ton (n)	طن [١٠٠٠ كيلو جرام]
plan(n)	خطة	message (n)	مغزى - رسالة
summary (n)	ملخص	worker(n)	عامل
totally(adv)	بالكامل - تمامًا	ability(n)	القدرة
factory (n)	مصنع	superhero(n)	بطل خارق
promise(d) (v)	يوعد	reduce(d) (v)	يقلل - يحد من

Lesson 4

SB page 28 WB page 87

especially (adv)	خاصة - بصورة خاصة	the country (n)	الريف
web post	منشور على الإنترنت	heating (n)	تدفئة
fridge (n)	ثلاجة	diagram (n)	رسم توضيحى
screen (n)	شاشة	oven (n)	فرن
own (ed) (v), (adj)	يملك - خاصته / ملكه	electric car	سيارة كهربائية

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
bring	يحضر	brought	brought

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

air conditioning	a machine that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm	تكييف الهواء
promise	say you will do something	يوعد
power	special ability to do something	قوة/طاقة
produce	make or create	ينتج
solar energy	energy from the sun	طاقة شمسية
renewable energy	natural energy that does not disappear or burn when you use it	طاقة متجددة
remote control	a machine that you can control from far away	جهاز التحكم عن بعد
simple	easy to understand	بسيط

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

produce	pollution	يسبب تلوث	**make**	electricity	يولد الكهرباء
	energy	ينتج طاقة	**save**	electricity	يوفر الكهرباء
have	a plan	لديه خطة	**cause**	problems	يسبب مشاكل

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
frightened	خائف	afraid / scared	brave	شجاع
easy	سهل - بسيط	simple	complicated – complex	مُعقّد

make	يصنع - يُولدّ (الكهرباء)	produce/create	consume	يستهلك
inexpensive	رخيص (الثمن)	cheap	expensive	غالى (الثمن)
destroy	يدمر - يتلف	damage	repair - fix - mend	يصلح
agree	يوافق	accept	disagree refuse	لا يوافق يرفض
enormous	ضخم	huge	tiny	ضئيل (الحجم)

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–er	تكوّن الاسم من الفعل	worker	عامل
–able	تعطى الصفة من الفعل	sustainable	مستدام
–tion	تحول من فعل إلى اسم	organisation	منظمة - مؤسسة
in–	تعطى عكس المعنى	inexpensive	رخيص (الثمن)
dis–	تعطى عكس المعنى	disagree	لا يوافق

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 live - life - living - alive - lively

* **live (v)** — يعيش
  - My sister **lives** in Benha.
* **live (adj)** — مباشر
  - The match is **live** now. It has started.
* **life (n)** — حياة
  - The poor live a difficult **life**.
* **living (n)** — المعيشة
  - He is working hard to improve his **living**.
* **alive (adj)** — حى - على قيد الحياة
  - The snake is still **alive**. It isn't dead.
* **lively (adj)** — حيوى
  - Salim has a **lively** mind. He thinks actively.

SB page 26

2 stop

* **stop to + inf.** — يتوقف لكى يفعل شئ (توقف مؤقت)
  - On the way, the driver **stopped** to have a sandwich.
* **stop + (inf. + ing)** — يتوقف أو يقلع عن فعل شئ (توقف نهائى)
  - He **stopped** smoking because he had a lung disease.

SB page 28

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

use renewable energy	يستخدم طاقة متجددة	become clean	يصبح نظيفًا
do well	يقوم بأداء جيد	green electricity	الكهرباء النظيفة (صديقة للبيئة)
get it right	يفهم بشكل صحيح	use the most electricity	يستهلك معظم الكهرباء
keep your house cool	تحافظ على اعتدال البرودة فى منزلك	go shopping	يذهب للتسوق
less often	أقل اعتيادًا		

Prepositions

find an answer to	يجد إجابة لـ	easy to understand	سهل الفهم
ski down	يتزلج لأسفل	worried about	قلق بشأن
turn on	يشغل (جهاز)	move around	يتجول
get used to	يعتاد على	form of transport	وسيلة مواصلات

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 26

The Iron Woman[1]

One day, a girl called Lucy was **surprised**[2] to see the Iron Woman. She was **enormous**[3], with big red eyes. Lucy was **frightened**[4], but she found that the woman wanted Lucy to help her. Lucy's father worked at a factory and the Iron Woman asked her where the factory was. **Pollution**[5] from the factory was killing all the fish in the river, so she wanted to **destroy**[6] it.

The Iron Woman had special **powers**[7] so that she was able to make all the factory workers become fish. The workers all had to live in the river and started to understand how difficult life was for the fish.

(1) المرأة الحديدية | (2) مندهش | (3) ضخم | (4) خائف | (5) تلوث | (6) يدمر | (7) قُوَى

• on Lesson 4 WB page 87

Injy : Hana, have you seen this **diagram**(1) of what uses most **electricity**(2) in the home?

Hana : No, I haven't. What does it say, Injy ?

Injy : It says that **air conditioning**(3) and **heating**(4) use the most electricity. In fact, these use **nearly**(5) 50% of the home's electricity.

Hana : That's a lot! What uses the second most ?

Injy : Hot water. That uses about 15% of the home's electricity.

Hana : What about things in the kitchen? Don't they use much electricity?

Injy : They don't use very much. The fridge and the **oven**(6) both use about 4%.

Hana : That's interesting. And what about the TV and computers?

Injy : Televisions use about 3% and computers about 1%.

Hana : OK. So if I wanted to **save**(7) electricity, I would use less air conditioning and heating ?

Injy : **That's right**(8). Oh, and turn off the lights, too. They use about 12% of the house's electricity.

(1) رسم بيانى | (2) الكهرباء | (3) تكييف هواء | (4) المدفأة | (5) تقريبًا | (6) الفرن | (7) يوفر | (8) هذا صحيح

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

▸ **Definitions**

1. LM A ..... control is a device that helps you control and deal with a television, for example.
   a. full b. near c. far d. remote
2. WB ..... energy is natural energy that doesn't disappear or burn when you use it.
   a. Renewable b. Fossil c. Non-renewable d. Polluting

▸ **Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes**

3. It's an easy lesson. I'll explain it to you. "Easy" is the synonym of ..... .
   a. complicated b. complex c. cheap d. simple
   (South Sinai 2023)
4. I saw an enormous elephant. The word "enormous" means ..... .
   a. tiny b. easy c. huge d. small
   (Menia 2023)
5. Another word for "make" or "create" is ..... . *(Fayoum 2023)*
   a. present b. promise c. protect d. produce

6. My parents often agree with me on the suggestions that waste time. What is the missing prefix ? *(Menofia 2022)*
   a. dis– b. im– c. un– d. in–

▶ **Guessing the meaning from the text**

7. WB If you to do something, you will definitely do it.
   a. produce b. remove c. promise d. rise
8. WB This factory doesn't produce any pollution, it is a ..... project.
   a. private b. polluted c. green d. remote
9. SB He is clever at fixing cars. The word "fixing" means ..... .
   a. stealing b. selling c. repairing d. buying
10. SB We can use wind ..... to produce energy. *(Aswan 2023)*
    a. types b. wheels c. paints d. turbines

El-Moasser Exercises

▶ **Key vocabulary**

11. In sunny places, they can get electricity from ..... energy.
    a. soil b. solar c. solid d. sail
12. A/An ..... is a natural disaster that causes many problems and damage.
    a. solar system b. greenhouse c. water wheel d. earthquake

▶ **Definitions**

13. An ..... is a machine that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm.
    a. air heating b. air filter
    c. air conditioning d. air bag
14. "..... " is a special ability to do something.
    a. Space b. Pollution c. Power d. Heating

▶ **Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes**

15. We add the suffix ..... to form the noun from the verb "organise".
    a. –ment b. –ed c. –tion d. –ness
16. The prefix "..... " can be used to form the opposite of "expensive".
    a. re– b. in– c. im– d. un–
17. The antonym of the word "frightened" is ..... .
    a. afraid b. cheap c. far d. brave

▶ **Guessing the meaning from the text**

18. The Iron Man owns special powers to help people. The word "own" means " ..... " .
    a. reduce b. bring c. have d. promise
19. Grandpa was ..... because he didn't expect to see us today.
    a. surprised b. frightened c. known d. remote

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

20. He spends his weekend moving ..... the city.
a. out b. around c. before d. after

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Discussion about the importance of factories : مناقشة عن أهمية المصانع :

Questions	Answers
1. Why are factories important ? ١. لماذا المصانع مهمة ؟	- As they save many jobs for workers and produce many products. - لأنها تقوم بتوفير العديد من الوظائف للعمال وتقوم بإنتاج الكثير من المنتجات.
2. Do all the factories produce a lot of pollution ? ٢. هل تتسبب كل المصانع فى إحداث الكثير من التلوث ؟	- Yes, I think so. - نعم، اعتقد ذلك. - No, I don't think so. - لا، أنا لا اعتقد ذلك.
3. What would you do if a factory in your area produced a lot of pollution ? ٣. ماذا سوف تفعل لو تسبب مصنع فى منطقتك فى إحداث الكثير من التلوث ؟	- We'd find ways to prevent pollution caused by these factories. - سوف نقوم بإيجاد طرق لمنع التلوث الناتج من هذه المصانع.

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

The Iron Woman قصة المرأة الحديدية

1. "The Iron Woman" is a story written by Ted Hughes.
١. كتب قصة المرأة الحديدية الكاتب تيد هيوز.
2. This story tells us about a girl called Lucy. ٢. تخبرنا هذه القصة عن فتاة تدعى لوسى.
3. Lucy was surprised to see the Iron Woman. ٣. اندهشت لوسى عندما رأت المرأة الحديدية.
4. The Iron Woman was enormous, with red eyes.
٤. كانت المرأة الحديدية عملاقة وذات أعين حمراء.
5. Lucy could help the Iron Woman. ٥. استطاعت لوسى مساعدة المرأة الحديدية.
6. The Iron Woman had special powers. ٦. كانت المرأة الحديدية تمتلك قوى خاصة.

III Language

The second conditional with would, might or could

قد سبق شرحه فى الدرسين (١ ، ٢)

Speaking & Writing Corner

Reviews, Biographies, Short Stories & Dialogues

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ

قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة

80 Dialogues | 80 Reviews, Biographies & Short Stories

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابه
A story you have read	**Read and complete :** 1. What is the story about ? - It's about the Iron Woman who made the factory ..... become fish. عمال 2. Why did the Iron Woman want to ..... the factory ? يدمر - Because ..... from the factory was killing all the fish in the river. تلوث	**Finish the following dialogue :** A : Did you begin your summer holiday ? B : (1) ..... . A : (2) ..... ? B : I spend my time reading stories. A : What story have you read recently ? B : (3) ..... . A : The Iron Woman ! (4) ..... ? B : It is about the Iron Woman who made the factory workers become fish. A : Why ? B : Because pollution from the factory killed the fish in the river. A : Oh, it was a lesson for them. B : (5)	**Write a review on :** **"A story you have read"** ....
How can we help the environment ?	1. Do all the factories ..... pollution ? ينتج - يصدر - No. I don't think so. 2. What would you do if a factory in your area produced pollution ? - I'd think of a ..... to stop this. طريقة - أسلوب	A : What do you think the most dangerous problem for the environment ? B : (1) ..... . A : What makes the most pollution ? B : (2) ..... . A : Do all the factories produce pollution ? B : (3) ..... . A : (4) ..... ? B : I would think of a way to stop pollution if a factory in my area produced pollution. A : (5) ..... ? B : If factories use renewable energy, they won't produce pollution.	**"How can we help our environment ?"** ....

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Sami and Hani are talking about spending the mid-year holiday.

Sami : Hi ! Where will you spend the mid-year holiday ?

Hani : In Aswan. (1) ..... ?

Sami : Well, the weather is fine in Aswan. Who will you go with ?

Hani : (2) ..... .

Sami : (3) ..... ?

Hani : We will stay at my uncle's house.

Sami : How long will you stay there ?

Hani : (4) ..... .

Sami : Have a nice trip!

Hani : (5) ..... .

2 WB Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

doesn't – produces – gases – didn't – electricity – sites

A large factory in Denmark has an inexpensive way of producing renewable energy. It burns rubbish ! If the factory (1) ..... burn the rubbish, it would go to landfill sites. By burning the rubbish, the factory (2) ..... enough electricity for 150,000 homes. If the factory burned fossil fuels to make this (3) ..... , it would produce a lot more greenhouse (4) ..... .

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "....." means special ability to do something.
   a. Power b. Hate c. Illness d. Darkness
2. To get the antonym of the adjective "expensive", we add the prefix "....." .
   a. in– b. il– c. dis– d. un–
3. WB The problem seems complicated. It isn't "....." at all.
   a. complex b. difficult c. simple d. hard

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

4. This factory belongs to her. She ..... it.
   a. destroys b. sails c. owns d. sings

5. SB To ..... is to say you will do something.
   a. promise b. produce c. protect d. preview

6. LM We should use rechargeable batteries. "Rechargeable" means that we can charge them ..... .
   a. again and again b. once
   c. first d. at the beginning

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. LM If less energy ..... (was using), we wouldn't have this high pollution.
2. If he ..... (not hate) flying, he would travel by plane. *(Assiut 2023)*
3. If you ate more sweets, you ..... (have) bad teeth. *(Luxor 2022)*
4. WB What would happen if they ..... (don't) burn the rubbish ?
5. If you started learning a new language, which one ..... (will) you choose ?

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of what you do to help the environment"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lessons

5 & 6

SB pages 29 & 30
WB pages 88 & 89

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية	region (n)	منطقة
solar farm (n)	محطة توليد طاقة شمسية	desertification (n)	التصحر
interrupt (ed) (v)	يقاطع أثناء الكلام	drought (n)	جفاف
power station (n)	محطة توليد الطاقة	create (d) (v)	يصنع - يبدع
initiative (n)	مبادرة	landscape (n)	منظر طبيعى

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

create - interrupt - region - Desertification - Drought

1. ..... happens when green lands become desert.
2. Please, don't ..... me while I'm talking.
3. ..... is the main cause of desertification.
4. This area shown on the map is called the Sahel ..... .

Lesson 5

SB page 29 WB page 88

farmland (n)	الأرض الزراعية	oil (n)	البترول
idea (n)	فكرة	permission (n)	إذن - تصريح
hill (n)	تل	personally (adv)	بصفة شخصية - شخصيًا
reporter (n)	مراسل صحفى	source (n)	مصدر

Directions

الاتجاهات

north	شمال	east	شرق
south	جنوب	west	غرب

Lesson 6

SB page 30 WB page 89

reason (n)	سبب	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث
report (n)	تقريرّ	farm (ed) (v), (n)	يحرث - يعمل بالزراعة/مزرعة
Benban Solar Park	مزرعة بنبان للطاقة الشمسية (فى أسوان)	Cleve Hill Solar Farm	مزرعة كليف هيل الشمسية
improve (d) (v)	يحسن - يطور	Sahara Desert	الصحراء الكبرى

farming (n)	الزراعة	special (adj)	خاص - مميز
organiser (n)	منظم	research (ed) (v) , (n)	يبحث - بحث
whole (adj)	كامل - تام	quite (adv)	إلى حد ما / تمامًا
living thing	كائن حى	African Union	الاتحاد الافريقى
Great Green Wall initiative	مبادرة الجدار الأخضر العظيم	record (ed) (v)	يسجل - يدون
		bar chart (n)	شريط الرسم البيانى
president (n)	رئيس	fishing (n)	الصيد

Countries and cities

بلاد ومدن

Sahel region	منطقة الساحل	Aswan	مدينة أسوان
UK	المملكة المتحدة	Sudan	دولة السودان
Dubai	دبى	South Sudan	دولة جنوب السودان

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
shine	يلمع - يضىء	shone	shone
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

give	electricity	يولد الكهرباء	cause	fire	يسبب حريق
	jobs	يوفر فرص عمل		pollution	يسبب تلوث
create	jobs	يوجد فرص عمل	do	a survey	يجرى دراسة إستطلاعية
	problems	يسبب مشاكل			

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

create	make or produce	ينتج
desertification	• when an area becomes a desert • changing an area into desert	التصحر
region	an area of a country	منطقة
initiative	something to improve a difficult situation	مبادرة
solar farm	an area with many solar panels that provides electricity	محطة توليد طاقة شمسية
landscape	a view showing an area of land	منظر طبيعى
interrupt	if you interrupt someone, you speak to stop someone else from speaking	يقاطع اثناء الكلام

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
beautiful	جميل	pretty-lovely	ugly	قبيح
advantages	مزايا	pros	disadvantages-cons	عيوب
dangerous	خطير	serious – unsafe	safe	آمن
introduction	مقدمة	preface	conclusion	خاتمة
outside	بالخارج	outdoors	inside	بالداخل
totally	كليًا - تمامًا	fully - completely	partially	جزئيًا
possible	ممكن - محتمل	probable	impossible	مستحيل
include	يشمل	contain	exclude	يستثنى
reduce	يقلل	decrease	increase	يزيد

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
dis–	تعطى عكس المعنى	disagree	لا يوافق
		disadvantages	مساوئ - عيوب
–ing	تعطى الصفة من الفعل	living	حى - مفعم بالحياة
		growing	متزايد
	تعطى إسم من الفعل	fishing	الصيد
		farming	الزراعة

General Notes on Reading & Listening

- **everyone** — كل فرد

تعامل معاملة الإسم المفرد ويستخدم الضمير they أو (He / She) بدلًا منها فى الجمل التى تتبعها.

- **Everyone** who lives in this region is quite happy. They love their region.

SB page 30

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

television interview	مقابلة تليفزيونية	Can I say something ?	هل يمكننى قول شئ؟
I don't agree = I disagree	لا أوافق	You're right.	أنت محق.
personally, I think	شخصيًا أنا أعتقد	solve the problem	يحل المشكلة
I totally disagree	لا أوافق كليًا	(be) called	يدعى - يسمى

Prepositions

discuss in a group / pairs	يناقش فى مجموعة / فى ثنائيات	set up	يشيد - ينشئ
		for the whole world	للعالم بأكمله
ask to speak	يطلب التحدث	write up	يكتب بالتفصيل
ask for permission	يطلب الأذن	problems for	مشاكل لـ
instead of	بدلًا من	in my opinion	فى رأيى - من وجهة نظرى
by 2050	بحلول عام ٢٠٥٠	south of	جنوب .....
compare ..... with	يقارن .... بـ	produce money for	يجلب المال لـ
for a holiday	لقضاء الإجازة	show on a map	يوضح / يعرض على الخريطة

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 29

Reporter : So, Mrs Jones. Tell us why your **community**(1) decided to build a solar park on this **farmland**(2). This area is popular for **tourism**(3) and people come here to enjoy **the countryside**(4) and the beautiful **views**(5) of trees and hills. Many people would say the solar park is ugly. They don't want to see lots and lots of ugly solar panels in the countryside.

Mrs Jones : I don't agree. **Personally**(6), I think that the solar panels are beautiful. We need to create clean energy that doesn't pollute the environment. Solar panels produce clean, renewable energy. In my opinion, we need to stop burning **fossil fuels**(7) which create greenhouse gases and cause climate change.

(1) مجتمع | (2) أرض زراعية | (3) السياحة | (4) الريف | (5) مناظر طبيعية | (6) بصفة شخصية | (7) وقود حفرى

• on Lesson 7 SB page 31

There are many green **initiatives**[1] across the world which are helping to protect the environment. There are projects to build solar farms to create **green energy**[2]. There are projects to plant **seedlings**[3] and trees to give us cleaner air. At home, people are choosing to use **rechargeable batteries**[4] and energy-saving light bulbs. Some people are buying more products made of bamboo, which is sustainable and doesn't cause pollution. Some people are even using **air conditioning**[5] less often because it uses so much energy. What can you do to help protect the environment ?

(1) مبادرات (2) الطاقة النظيفة (3) شتلات (4) بطاريات قابلة للإعادة الشحن (5) تكييف الهواء

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

Definitions

1. WB A/An ..... is an area of a country.
   a. region b. idea c. review d. chart
2. WB A/An ..... is something to improve a difficult situation. *(Sharkia 2023)*
   a. fight b. war c. initiative d. tour
3. WB To ..... means to make or produce.
   a. hack b. joke c. create d. destroy

Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes

4. WB To get the noun from the verb "farm", we add the suffix ..... .
   a. –ed b. –ing c. –ly d. –tion
   (The Red Sea 2023)
5. LM These batteries aren't dangerous; they're quite ..... .
   a. unsafe b. small c. safe d. big
6. LM What are the advantages of solar energy ? "Advantage" here has the opposite meaning of "..... ".
   a. disconnection b. dishonesty
   c. disability d. disadvantage

Guessing the meaning from the text

7. I didn't expect that gift, it is so ..... . Thank you. *(Dakahlia 2022)*
   a. special b. popular c. normal d. ugly

El-Moasser Exercises

Key vocabulary

8. Egypt is full of beautiful ....., people enjoy them very much.
   a. landscapes b. landfills c. disasters d. pollution
9. Power ..... are factories to generate electricity.
   a. stations b. farmlands c. reports d. researches
10. They had a/an ..... with my favourite writer on TV yesterday.
    a. view b. review c. interview d. preview

Definitions

11. A solar ..... is an area with many solar panels that provide electricity.
    a. farm b. energy c. power d. pool
12. ..... is changing an area into desert.
    a. Earthquake b. Desertification c. Deforestation d. Flood

Synonyms, Antonyms, Suffixes & Prefixes

13. She looks beautiful in her new dress. The opposite of the word "beautiful" is ..... .
    a. pretty b. interested c. sad d. ugly
14. The antonym of the word "totally" is ..... .
    a. partially b. probably c. generally d. perfectly
15. To get the adjective from the verb "grow", we add the suffix ..... .
    a. –ed b. –ing c. –ly d. –tion

Guessing the meaning from the text

16. When you write down something, this means that you ..... it.
    a. delete b. record c. decide d. interrupt
17. He always ..... me, I can't talk while he is talking.
    a. creates b. gives c. interrupts d. plans
18. He does his best to make his project better. He tries to ..... it.
    a. destroy b. improve c. agree d. refuse

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

19. They are ..... a survey on wildlife in Africa.
    a. making b. doing c. giving d. playing
20. ..... my opinion, money makes life go on.
    a. On b. At c. In d. From

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Hamza invites his cousin Seif to his birthday party.

Hamza : Hi, Seif. I'd like to invite you to my birthday party.

Seif : Wonderful ! How old will you be ?

Hamza : (1) ..... .

Seif : Great ! (2) ..... ?

Hamza : It will be next Sunday evening. (3) ..... ?

Seif : Certainly, I will come. What present would you like to have for your birthday ?

Hamza : (4) ..... .

Seif : Who will come with you ?

Hamza : (5) ..... .

Seif : That sounds great !

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

opinion – Personally – think – use – disagree – used

Some people like living in big cities and other people don't like it. (1) ..... , I think that living in big cities is very difficult now. In my (2) ..... , living in the country is much quieter, cleaner and healthier. Our grandparents (3) ..... to live in villages. What do you (4) ..... about that ?

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB If you ..... someone, you speak to stop them from speaking.
   a. refuse b. include c. interrupt d. reduce
2. The ticket includes breakfast on the train. The synonym of the word "include" is ..... .
   a. improve b. contain c. reduce d. grow

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

Giving and responding to opinions :

إعطاء الآراء والرد عليها :

Questions	Answers
1. What do you think about my plan ? ١. ما رأيك في خطتي ؟	- In my opinion, it's a clever plan. - I think it's a clever plan. - في رأيي، إنها خطة رائعة.
2. Do you agree with me ? ٢. هل توافقني الرأي ؟	- Yes, I totally agree with you. - نعم، أوافقك الرأي تمامًا.
3. What is the main cause of desertification ? ٣. ما هو السبب الرئيسي للتصحر ؟	- I think climate change is the main cause of desertification. - اعتقد أن تغير المناخ هو السبب الرئيسي للتصحر.

Pop Quiz on Speaking

• **Complete the following dialogue :**

A discussion about building a power station outside the town.

A : Hi ! What do you think of the plan to build a power station outside the town ?
B : (1) ..... .
A : (2) ..... ?
B : Because it will give us more electricity and jobs.
A : For me, I don't agree that it's a good thing.
B : Why don't you agree ?
A : (3) ..... .
B : Burns fossil fuels ! (4) ..... ?
A : We should only use renewable energy.
B : (5) ..... .

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

The Great Green Wall initiative :

مبادرة الجدار الأخضر العظيم :

Desertification التصحر

1. Desertification happens when green land becomes desert.
١. يحدث التصحر عندما تتحول الأرض الخضراء إلى صحراء.
2. Climate changes create more droughts every year.
٢. تسبب التغيرات المناخية مزيدًا من الجفاف كل عام.
3. The Great Green Wall initiative will plant millions of trees across Africa.
٣. ستقوم مبادرة الجدار الأخضر بزراعة ملايين الأشجار عبر قارة افريقيا.
4. It will create jobs for 10 million people. ٤. سوف توفر هذه المبادرة حوالى ١٠ ملايين فرصة عمل.
5. It will improve the lives of everyone. ٥. سوف تحسن حياة كل فرد.

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

3. The prefix "..... " gives the opposite of "agree". *(Qena 2022)*
   a. dis– b. im– c. il– d. mono–

4. ..... means a view showing an area of land.
   a. Landscape b. Initiative c. Opinion d. Rock

5. LM What do you think of the new plan ? "What do you think of ?" is similar in meaning to "..... ?"
   a. What do you like about b. What's your opinion about
   c. Why do you prefer d. Why don't you like

6. LM We try to reduce pollution. This means we try to make it ..... .
   a. less b. fewer c. few d. more

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. LM If I ..... (have) enough time, I'd visit you.
2. LM Would you help me if I ..... (am) in trouble ?
3. If you came early, you ..... (meet) your uncle.
4. If I ..... (am) you, I would join the football team.
5. The students ..... (will) be happy if they won the competition.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of the Great Green Wall Initiative"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on unit 9

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary

sustainable products	منتجات مستدامة
light bulb	مصباح كهربى
toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان
climate change	تغير مناخى
environment	البيئة
crops	محاصيل
protect	يحمى
floods	فيضانات
seedling	نبتة
produce	ينتج
remote	بعيد
inexpensive	رخيص
community	مجتمع
wind turbines	توربينات الهواء
renewable energy	طاقة متجددة
solar panels	الواح طاقة شمسية
remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد
desertification	التصحر
region	منطقة

Language

1. Used to + (inf)

ex. - People used to ride camels in the past.

- People didn't use to use energy - saving light bulbs.

2. Second Conditional (If)

If past simple , would ('d) + inf. .

ex. - If we lived in Hurghada, we'd go to the beach.

- If the weather wasn't windy, the wind turbine wouldn't work.

- What would you do if you were ill ?

Speaking

1. Discussing how to live more sustainably

A : What could you do to stop using things that are bad for the environment ?

B : We could use less plastic.

2. Giving and responding to opinions

A : What do you think of solar energy ?

B : I think it's sustainable and more renewable.

A : What is your opinion about my new car ?

B : In my opinion, it's a smart car.

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Making predictions

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [التنبؤ بما سيحدث فى النص] وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيدًا.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

A poor traveller stopped under a tree to eat. He opened his bag and enjoyed eating the rice he had brought with him. A few metres away, there was a small fish shop. In the shop, a woman was cooking fish and selling it to those who could pay. The woman was watching the poor man carefully and when he finished his food and started to leave, she shouted, "You haven't paid me for the fish". "But I haven't had any fish," he said."The sweet smell of my fish made your food more enjoyable," the woman said. They went to the police station. A gentle policeman listened carefully to their problem. The policeman asked the poor traveller to hold ten pounds in his hand. Then, he asked the woman to only touch the money. The policeman told her that the price of smelling a fish dish is only the touch of the money.

- Do you think the traveller will go to this city again ?

.....

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى التنبؤ بأحداث قادمة فى النص أو القصة المطروحة. كيف يمكنك بناء تنبؤ لم يتم ذكره فى النص أو القصة.

مفتاح الحل سؤال التنبؤ بأحداث قادمة هو أحد مهارات القراءة، يتم الإجابة عليه بعد قراءة النص كاملًا، لاحظ أنه يتم عمل التنبؤ بناء على الأحداث

2 Speaking

Talking about deforestation

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Finish the following dialogue :

Ramy and Yasser are talking about deforestation.

Ramy : Hello, Yasser. What are you doing now ?
Yasser : Hello, Ramy. (1) ..... .
Ramy : (2) ..... ?
Yasser : Deforestation means that there are fewer trees in rainforests.
Ramy : Is it dangerous for the environment ?
Yasser : (3) ..... . It damages the natural habitat of many animals.
Ramy : How terrible ! Scientists should solve this problem.
Yasser : (4) ..... ?
Ramy : We shouldn't cut down more rainforests.
Yasser : What else can we do to solve the problem ?
Ramy : (5) ..... .

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [إزالة الغابات] وقد تجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عليها.

3 Writing

يختبر سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية معرفتك لقدر كاف من المفردات وقدرتك على كتابة جمل تعبر عن الموضوع.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [أشجار المانجروف] و [مبادرة الجدار الأخضر العظيم] وقد تجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية وكيفية استخدامها فى تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraph
Mangrove trees	**Write the meaning :** ..... يحمى ..... فيضانات ..... محاصيل ..... اشجار المانجروف ..... تمد - تزود	**Fill in using vocabulary :** 1. Climate change can cause ..... because of rising sea levels. 2. When seawater comes onto farms, the salt in the water kills ..... . 3. ..... grow in the sea along the coast. 4. Mangrove trees ..... farms and communities from strong winds and storms. 5. They ..... homes for plants, fish and sea animals.	**Write a review on.** *"Mangrove trees"* ....
The Great Green Wall Initiative	..... أنشئت ..... التصحر ..... مبادرة ..... شتلات ..... كائن حى	1. The Great Green Wall is an ..... for solving the problem of desertification. 2. It was ..... in 2007 by the African Union. 3. ..... happens when the greenland becomes desert. 4. This initiative will plant millions of trees, ... and plants. 5. It will be the biggest ..... in the world.	*"The Great Green Wall Initiative"* .... تدريب تلقائى على مهارة الكتابة

Questions collected from previous exams and longman

1. LM Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

neglect – follow – was – reuseable – advice – weren't

My neighbour is very careless. If he (1)..... careful, he wouldn't throw plastic bags into the river. I always advise him to (2)..... the rules for keeping the environment clean. I also ask him to use (3)..... bags when he goes shopping. Now, he follows my (4)..... and his behaviour has improved.

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. This huge desert starts on the western side of the River Nile. The word "huge" can be replaced by ..... . *(Cairo 2022)*
   a. tiny b. small c. enormous d. ugly
2. The word "destroy" is the synonym of the word "....." . *(Sharkia 2022)*
   a. build b. damage c. paint d. protect
3. LM ..... increase because of the rising sea levels.
   a. Floods b. Winds c. Rains d. Boats
4. LM The government builds most factories in the desert because they produce pollution. "Produce" is similar in meaning to "....." .
   a. does b. kill c. prevent d. cause
5. Trees breathe in carbon dioxide and breathe out oxygen, so they are ..... for us. *(Damietta 2023)*
   a. bad b. harmful c. useful d. useless
6. The answer to this question is ..... . We all got it right ! *(Fayoum 2022)*
   a. remote b. hard c. simple d. far
7. We form the noun from "pollute" by adding the suffix "....." . *(Minia 2022)*
   a. -ment b. -ness c. -ion d. -ity
8. The prefix "....." gives the opposite of "agree". *(Qena 2022)*
   a. dis- b. im- c. il- d. mono-
9. The word "make" can give a similar meaning to the word "....." . *(Qena 2022)*
   a. give b. advise c. produce d. take
10. We can't continue to use petrol for cars because it is not ..... . *(Sohag 2022)*
    a. sustainable b. sustainment
    c. sustain d. sustainer

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. LM Gaber used to play football when he was a student, but nowadays he ..... (do).
2. LM There would be less pollution if we ..... (plant) more trees.
3. Ali ..... (not use) to like cheese, but now he loves it. *(Luxor 2023)*
4. I didn't use ..... (playing) chess when I was young. *(Souhag 2023)*
5. If I had more time, I ..... (will) read more books. *(Damietta 2023)*
6. We ..... (use) to get our shopping in plastic bags. Now, we don't. *(Damietta 2023)*
7. In the past, people ..... (use to) send letters, now they send emails. *(Menoufia 2023)*

Test on unit 9

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

1 Finish the following dialogue :

قم بحل اختبار تراكمى فى الملحق

Adel is talking to Amir who is reading an article about pollution.

Adel : What are you reading, Amir ?

Amir : (1) ..... .

Adel : What is this article about ?

Amir : (2) ..... .

Adel : (3) ..... ?

Amir : We can stop pollution by planting more trees.

Adel : (4) ..... ?

Amir : Because trees absorb carbon dioxide and keep the air clean.

Adel : (5) ..... .

Amir : I agree with you. Recycling our rubbish can also solve this problem.

(Beheira 2022)

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

2 LM Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

sustainable – having – unsafe – have – batteries – environment

My brother likes mobile phones very much. He used to (1) ..... the latest mobiles. But, now he no longer uses them because they aren't (2) ..... . He prefers to use rechargeable (3) ..... for the TV remote control. Thus, he can share in protecting the (4) ..... .

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. .....
3. ..... 4. .....

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Nothing can live without energy. People, animals and plants need energy to live and machines need energy to work. Most of the energy we use still comes from fossil fuels like coal, oil and gas. We call these non-renewable forms of energy because they are limited and expensive. The use of fuels increases the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere and pollutes the environment.

Now water and wind are used to produce electricity. They are

inexpensive, clean and do not pollute the environment. We call them renewable forms of energy. But energy from the sun is probably the best form of renewable energy. Life on earth depends on the sun. Without the sun, plants wouldn't be able to make food. Animals wouldn't have food. The earth would be cold and uninhabited.

That is why there is a great interest in solar energy. It is important for us to save energy in our homes and workplaces in order to stop using up non-renewable sources of energy.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is "..... ".
   a. fossil fuels b. carbon dioxide
   c. Energy d. Non-renewable enegry
2. The amount of carbon dioxide rises in the atmosphere when we use energy from the ..... .
   a. water b. fossil fuels c. wind d. sun
3. ..... are two sources of non-renewable energy.
   a. Plants and animals b. Water and wind
   c. Sun and gas d. Coal and oil

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Infer why the sun, the wind and the water are friends to the environment.
   .....
5. In two sentences summarize the first paragraph in your own words.
   .....
6. It is necessary to use the solar energy. Give reasons.
   .....

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We can form the adverb of the word "personal", by adding the suffix "..... ".
   a. –sion b. –ment c. –ly d. –y
2. LM An elephant is an animal of enormous size. "Enormous" has the same meaning as very ..... .
   a. fast b. small c. big d. slow
3. LM A ..... environment is a place where there is very little or no pollution.
   a. darker b. bigger c. greener d. smaller

4. LM I want to have an air conditioner that uses less electricity. "Less" is an antonym for "……".
   a. much b. more c. many d. little
5. LM A/An …… is a machine that keeps a room's temperature normal.
   a. fin b. oven c. air conditioner d. fridge.
6. To "……" means to make or produce.
   a. hate b. blame c. damage d. create

The Answers :

1. …… 2. …… 3. ……
4. …… 5. …… 6. ……

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. LM Did you use …… (to travelling) by train when you were at university ?
2. We didn't use to use energy - saving light bulbs, but we …… (did) now.

(Ismailia 2022)

3. How would you behave if you …… (lose) your mobile in a restaurant ?
4. We would have fewer storms if climate change …… (stop).

(Alexandria 2022)

5. People didn't …… (using) communicate on social media 30 years ago.

The Answers :

1. …… 2. …… 3. ……
4. …… 5. ……

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of how to protect our environment"

……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……
……

(Suez 2022)

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 9 for Al-Azhar students

إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Hassan and Salma are talking about climate change.

Hassan : Hi, Salma. How are things ?

Salma : Fine, thank you.

Hassan : What did your science teacher talk about today ?

Salma : (1) ..... .

Hassan : (2) ..... ?

Salma : Climate change means that some changes will affect the environment and our lives badly .

Hassan : What can we do to face this problem ?

Salma : (3) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Shady ..... if he read the e-mail. *(Menofia Zone 2023)*
   a. replies b. will reply c. replied d. would reply
2. If we ..... more time, we would visit our cousins in the village. *(Beheira Zone 2023)*
   a. had b. have c. having d. has
3. We can't continue to use petrol for cars because it is not ..... . *(Sharkia Zone 2023)*
   a. sustainable b. reusable c. greener d. bamboo
4. ..... your glass, paper and plastic products to conserve energy. *(Beni Suef Zone 2023)*
   a. Burn b. Recycle c. Throw d. Charge

3 Write a paragraph of SIX sentences on :

"Desertification"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue:**

Khaled has read the story of the Iron Woman.

Youssif : Have you read the "Iron Woman" ?

Khaled : (1) .....

a. No, I haven't. b. Yes, I have.
c. Yes, I do. d. No, I don't.

Youssif : (2) .....

a. Where was the Iron Woman ?
b. Why was the Iron Woman ?
c. When was the Iron Woman ?
d. How was the Iron Woman ?

Khaled : She was enormous with big red eyes.

Youssif : (3) .....

a. Why did she come to the factory ?
b. Where did she sleep ?
c. How did she come to the factory ?
d. How old was she ?

Khaled : She came to the factory to destroy it.

Youssif : Did she really destroy it ?

Khaled : (4) .....

a. No, she doesn't. b. No, she isn't.
c. No, she hasn't. d. No, she didn't.

Youssif : What is the moral of the story ?

Khaled : (5) ..... .

a. We should steal money.
b. We should destroy the environment.
c. We should protect the environment.
d. We should kill animals.

* **Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :**

6. If I ..... **(be)** rich, I would help the poor.
   a. am b. have c. had d. were
7. She used to be lazy, but now she ..... **(is)**.
   a. didn't b. wasn't c. isn't d. aren't
8. I used ..... **(go)** to school with my cousin when I was a child.
   a. goes b. going c. to go d. went
9. Where ..... **(do)** she use to spend her summer holiday ?
   a. to do b. did c. does d. doing
10. If they went early, they ..... **(may)** find available tickets for the show.
   a. will b. might c. can d. have

● If you got ● ممتاز ● جيد جدا ● جيد ● غير جيد, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.
قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى

السؤال الأول فى الورقة الامتحانية :

1. Finish the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Hani are talking about a school project.

Ahmed : Hello, Hani.
Hani : Hello, Ahmed. What are you doing ?
Ahmed : (1) ..... .
Hani : (2) ..... ?
Ahmed : It's about "the bamboo".
Hani : (3) ..... ?
Ahmed : Because my teacher asked me to do this project.
Hani : What do you think of this plant ?
Ahmed : (4) ..... .
Hani : I agree with you. It's a very useful plant.
Ahmed : Do you need any help ?
Hani : (5) ..... .

(Beheira 2023)

السؤال الثانى فى الورقة الامتحانية :

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

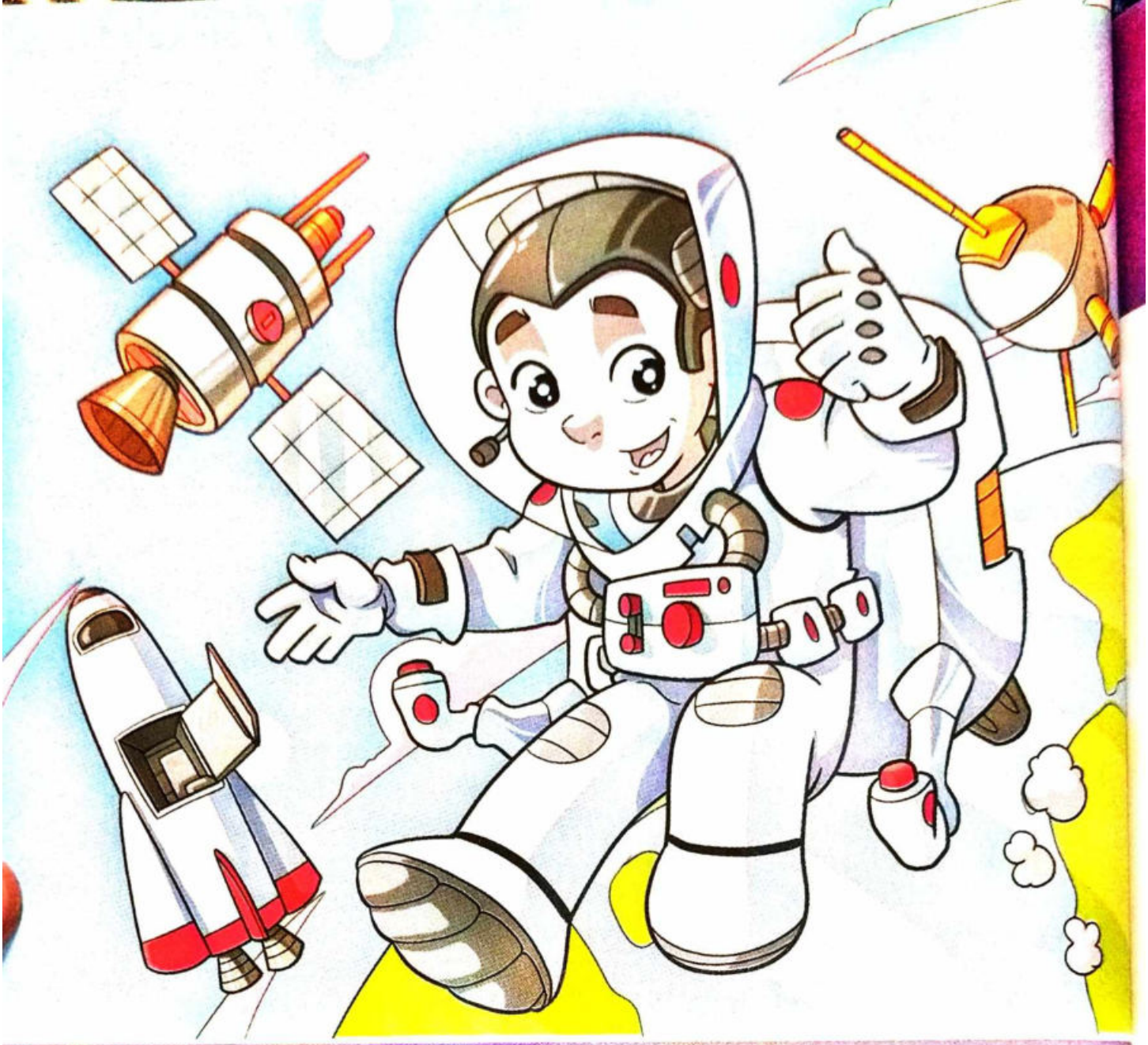
traditional – weaver – crops – learn – learned – fabric

There are a lot of (1) ..... arts in Egypt. I (2) ..... about the traditional art of weaving at school today. A (3) ..... uses a machine called a loom. It crosses threads under and over each other to make (4) ..... . *(Luxor 2023)*

السؤال الرابع فى الورقة الامتحانية :

3. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. LM Alexandria is a big ..... city on the Mediterranean Sea.
   a. deserted b. farm c. coastal d. desert
2. LM The earthquake destroyed a lot of buildings in Turkey and Syria. "Destroy" here has the opposite meaning of ..... .
   a. protect b. appear c. move d. remove
3. If something is ..... , it costs much money.
   a. cheap b. easy c. expensive d. difficult
   (Red Sea 2023)
4. The suffix " ..... " can turn the word "environment" into an adjective *(The New Valley 2023)*
   a. –al b. –ly c. –ily d. –ing
5. A/An ..... is a very high hill.
   a. oasis b. mountain c. coast d. valley
6. ..... is a group of animals or plants of the same kind. *(Giza 2022)*
   a. Space b. Species c. Spice d. Peace



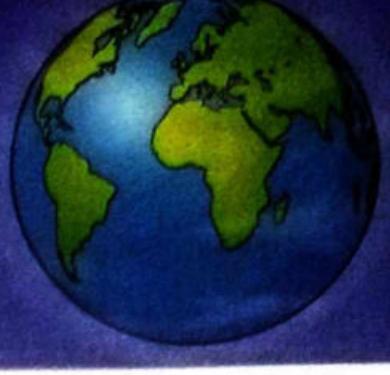
Unit 10 To space and back

- Reading
- Writing
- Listening
- Speaking
- Language
- Life Skills

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 34 : 37
WB pages 93 & 94



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

space station (n)	محطة فضائية	lens – lenses (n)	عدسة - عدسات
telescope (n)	تليسكوب - منظار	solar system (n)	نظام شمسى
gravity (n)	الجاذبية الأرضية	spacecraft (n)	مركبة فضاء
orbit (ed) (v), (n)	يدور حول - مسار	astronomer (n)	عالم فلكى
researcher (n)	باحث / دارس	satellite (n)	قمر صناعى
flood (ed) (v), (n)	يفيض - يغمر بالمياه / فيضان	astronaut (n)	رائد فضاء

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

telescope - astronaut - satellite - flood

1. The ..... is the person who travels into space.
2. A/ An ..... is a machine that goes around the Earth.
3. We use the ..... to look at the stars at night.

Lesson 1

SB pages 34 & 35 WB page 93

timeline (n)	تسلسل زمنى	American (adj)	أمريكى [الجنسية]
event (n)	حدث / مناسبة هامة	organise (d) (v)	ينظم
Mars (n)	كوكب المريخ	competition (n)	مسابقة
Dubai (n)	مدينة دبى	lecturer (n)	محاضر
prepare (d) (v)	يعد - يجهز	space (n)	الفضاء
jet (n)	طائرة نفاثة - تيار هواء	graduate (d) (v)	يتخرج [من جامعة / معهد]
machine (n)	آلة	teaching assistant (n)	مدرس مساعد
force (n)	قوة	Finland (n)	دولة فنلندا
attract (ed) (v)	يجذب	equipment (n)	معدات
retire (d) (v)	يتقاعد	sign (n)	علامة - لافتة

Lesson 2

SB pages 36 & 37 WB page 94

Islamic (adj)	إسلامى	author (n)	كاتبٌ - مؤلف
discover (ed) (v)	يكتشف	death (n)	موت - وفاة
discovery (n)	إكتشاف	alive (adj)	حىّ - على قيد الحياة
publish (ed) (v)	ينشر	flat (adj)	مسطح
age (n)	عصر - سِنّ	round (adj)	دائرى / مستدير
invent (ed) (v)	يخترع	century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
inventor (n)	مخترع	amount (n)	كمية

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought	thought
sweep	يكنس	swept	swept

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

astronaut	a person who travels into space	رائد فضاء
astronomer	a person who studies the stars and planets	عالم فلكى
gravity	a force which attracts things or people to the centre of the Earth	الجاذبية الأرضية
satellite	a machine in space that goes around the Earth to send or collect information	قمر صناعى
researcher	a person who studies something carefully	باحث / دارس
space station	a large spacecraft where people live and work	محطة فضاء
telescope	a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away	تلسكوب
lens	a piece of glass used in cameras or on glasses, that can make things look bigger or smaller	عدسة
orbit	to move around a star or planet	يدور فى مدار
solar system	all the planets and their moons which go around the sun	النظام الشمسى / المجموعة الشمسية

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

give	a specific time	يحدد موعد معين	**enter**	a competition	يشارك فى المسابقة
take	a taxi	يستقل سيارة أجرة	**start**	a competition	يقيم منافسة / مسابقة
come	second	يأتى فى المركز الثانى			
make	a discovery	يكتشف	**have**	a weekend	يقضى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
improve يُحسن / يتحسن	make it better	spoil / damage يفسد / يتلف
accurate دقيق	exact	inaccurate غير دقيق
correct صحيح	right / true	incorrect / false خاطئ
specific مُعيّن / مُحدّد	particular/certain	non-specific غير محدد / غير معين
recently حديثًا / مؤخرًا	lately	previously - anciently سابقًا - قديمًا
far away بعيد - ناء	remote - distant	close - nearby قريب
alive حيّ	living	dead ميت
popular شائع / منتشر	common/well-known	unpopular غير شائع

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ion	تكوّن الاسم من الفعل	collection مجموعة
-ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	successfully بنجاح
-ian	تكون الصفة من الاسم	Italian إيطالى [الجنسية]
-or	تكون الاسم من الفعل	inventor مخترع

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 astronaut - astronomer - astrologer

* **astronaut** **رائد فضاء** [شخص يسافر للفضاء فى مهمة]
  - There are four **astronauts** on the spacecraft.
* **astronomer** **عالم فلك** [شخص يدرس علم الفلك]
  - An **astronomer** is the person who studies stars scientifically.
* **astrologer** **منجم**
  - Some **astrologers** create websites to publish their predictions.

SB page 35 - WB page 94

2 Subject + verb ..... so that + sub. + can/could + inf. لكى

- He **studies** hard **so that** he **can** succeed.
- He **studied** hard **so that** he **could** succeed.

SB page 34

3 trip - journey

* **trip** رحلة قصيرة
  - How was your **trip** to the museum yesterday ?
* **journey** رحلة طويلة
  - The **journey** to Luxor will take five days.

SB page 35

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
as well as (n./inf. + ing)	بالإضافة إلى	orbit the sun	يدور حول الشمس
with their own eyes	بعيونهم المجردة	have a lot to do	لديه الكثير للقيام به
a piece of equipment	إحدى المعدات	The centre of the Earth	مركز الأرض
prize-winning	الفائز بجائزة	find a solution	يجد حل
Prepositions			
dream of	يحلم بـ	let in	يسمح بالدخول
go around	يدور حول	on Mars	على كوكب المريخ
travel / go into space	يسافر فى الفضاء	walk on the moon	يمشى على سطح القمر
prepare for	يعد لـ	in ancient times	فى العصور القديمة
by looking at	من خلال النظر فى	work on (a project)	يعمل على [مشروع]
by the end of	قبل إنتهاء ...	graduate in	يتخرج فى
learn more about	يتعلم الكثير عن	(be) interested in	
in the 15th century	فى القرن الخامس عشر	revise for	يراجع لأجل

Rami : Hmm ... Well Galileo improved the **design**(10) of the telescope, but he didn't invent it. So the answer is B, Hans Lippershey.

Kamal: That's right. Hans Lippershey lived in the **Netherlands**(11) in the 16th century. He wasn't an astronomer – he made glasses. He discovered that he could use more than one **lens**(12) to make objects look bigger ... So, Galileo didn't invent the telescope, but he was the first person to use it to study space. Question 4. How many people had walked on the moon by the end of the 20th century ? A: 2 or B: 12 ?

Rami : Hmm, I'm sure it's more than two, so I think B is the right answer – 12 people.

Kamal: That's right ! Twelve people had walked on the moon by the end of the 20th century. No more people have walked on the moon this century, so the number is still the same.

Rami : So I got 2 out of 4 – the same as you ! That was really interesting ! I think I learnt a lot.

(10) تصميم | (11) دولة هولندا | (12) عدسة

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

Definitions

1. The ..... is a force which attracts things or people to the centre of the earth. *(Ismailia 2023)*
   a. gravity b. space c. satellite d. jet
2. Someone who studies the stars and planets is called an .....
   a. astronaut b. astronomer c. astronomy d. asteroid
   (Kafr El Sheikh 2022)
3. WB A ..... is a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away. *(Fayoum 2023 / Qalyoubia 2023)*
   a. satellite b. space station c. telescope d. lens
4. A person who travels into space is called a/an ..... *(Suez 2023 / Luxor 2022)*
   a. pilot b. astronaut c. astronomer d. scientist

Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes

5. Places on the map seem to be near, but they are really ..... . *(Menofia 2022)*
   a. remote b. close c. tiny d. sad
6. We add the prefix ..... to get the opposite of the word "popular".
   a. in- b. un- c. im- d. dis-
   (Fayoum 2023 / Alexandria 2022)

7. SB The suffix ..... gives the noun from "collect".
   a. -ion b. -ly c. -ily d. -ian
8. LM Galileo didn't invent the telescope, but he improved it. This means that he ..... .
   a. made it worse b. replaced it completely
   c. made it better d. discovered how it worked

▸ **Guessing the meaning from the text**

9. Mr Kamal retired last year because of old age. The verb "retired" means that he ..... . *(Qena 2022)*
   a. died b. stopped studying
   c. stopped working d. travelled
10. The moon moves around the earth. The verb "moves" here means ..... .
   a. stops b. controls c. orbits d. preserves
   (Suez 2023 / Gharbia 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises

▸ **Key vocabulary**

11. The best cameras have a very good ..... that lets in the correct amount of light.
   a. view b. sound c. lens d. picture
12. Our ..... system includes the sun and eight planets.
   a. rainy b. solar c. cloudy d. model

▸ **Definitions**

13. A/An ..... is a person who studies something carefully.
   a. player b. actor c. painter d. researcher
14. The space ..... is a large spacecraft where people live and work.
   a. robot b. telescope c. satellite d. station

▸ **Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes**

15. You can make an adverb from the adjective "successful" by adding the suffix "..... ".
   a. -al b. -ly c. -er d. -y
16. We add the suffix "..... " to get the adjective from the word "Italy".
   a. -er b. -ment c. -ian d. -ing
17. I haven't been to the club recently. The word "recently" can be replaced by the word "..... ".
   a. early b. lately c. well d. hard

▸ **Guessing the meaning from the text**

18. The manager has arranged everything before the meeting. This means that everything is "..... ".
   a. damaged b. prepared c. broken d. lost

19. In 1608, the telescope was invented. That means that it was ..... .
a. moved b. encouraged c. designed d. showed

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

20. Let's go on a boat ..... on the Nile for an hour.
a. trip b. picnic c. flight d. project

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▸Asking and answering questions about life experiences.

توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن التجارب الحياتية.

Questions	Answers
1. Have you ever used a telescope ? ١. هل سبق لك استخدام التلسكوب من قبل؟	- Yes, I used a telescope on the science trip last year. - نعم، لقد قمت باستخدامه فى الرحلة العلمية العام الماضى.
2. What have you been dreaming of since you were young ? ٢. ما هو حلمك منذ أن كنت طفلاً ؟	- I have been dreaming of being an engineer. - أحلم أن أصبح مهندسًا.
3. Has anyone of your friends tried an unusual sport ? ٣. هل قام أحد أصدقاؤك بتجربة رياضة مختلفة؟	- Yes, my friend Ali has tried to climb a mountain. - نعم، قام صديقى «على» بتجربة رياضة تسلق الجبال.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

A biography of Ayman Ragab السيرة الذاتية لأيمن رجب

1. Ayman Ragab is an Egyptian scientist.
١. أيمن رجب عالم مصرى.
2. He has always been interested in space science.
٢. كان دائمًا مهتم بعلم الفضاء.
3. In 2019, he entered NASA's competition and came second.
٣. فى عام ٢٠١٩ ، اشترك فى مسابقة وكالة ناسا وحصل على المركز الثانى.
4. He is from a village near Luxor.
٤. هو من قرية تقع بالقرب من مدينة الأقصر.
5. He graduated in Engineering from Aswan University.
٥. تخرج من كلية الهندسة جامعة اسوان.
6. He has worked as a teaching assistant at Aswan University.
٦. عمل فى وظيفة مدرس مساعد فى جامعة أسوان.
7. Now, he works as a researcher for a university in Finland.
٧. يعمل دكتور أيمن فى وظيفة باحث فى جامعة بدولة فنلندا الان.

Speaking & Writing Corner

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ Reviews, Biographies, Short Stories & Dialogues
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues 80 Reviews, Biographies & Short Stories

Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابه
Read and complete : 1. What has Ayman Ragab always been interested in ? - He has always been interested in ..... . علم الفضاء 2. Where did he ..... from ? يتخرج - He graduated from Aswan University. 3. What does he do now ? - He works as a ..... for a university in Finland. باحث	**Finish the following dialogue :** A : Hi, Aya ! Can I ask you some questions ? B : Hi, Ola ! (1) ..... . A : (2) ..... ? B : Ayman Ragab is an Egyptian scientist who has been interested in space science. A : (3) ..... ? B : He is from a village in Luxor. A : What did he graduate in ? B : (4) ..... . A : Engineering ! Where does he work now ? B : (5)	**Write a biography on :** "Ayman Ragab, the Egyptian scientist" ....

احرص على اقتناء
كتب EL-MOASSER في اللغة الإنجليزية
امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق

III Language

Remember تذكر

The Present Perfect Tense زمن المضارع التام

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+	has	+	p.p. التصريف الثالث
I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	+	have	+	p.p. التصريف الثالث

ex. - I have found a pen. - She has studied hard.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+	has not (hasn't)	+	p.p. التصريف الثالث
I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	+	have not (haven't)	+	p.p. التصريف الثالث

ex. - We have not (haven't) finished studying English yet.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(A) Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

Have / Has	+	subject الفاعل	+	p.p. التصريف الثالث	.....	?

ex. - Have you ever eaten Chinese food ?
* Yes, I have. * No, I haven't.
- Has she cooked fish yet ?
* Yes, she has. * No, she hasn't.

(B) Wh - question : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة إستفهام :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام	+	have / has	+	subject الفاعل	+	p.p. التصريف الثالث	..... ?

ex. - What have you brought ? * I have brought my bag.
- Where has Ali gone ? * He has gone to Paris.

Usage الاستخدام

We use the present perfect to talk about experiences in the past without giving a specific time.

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم فى الماضى بدون تحديد وقت حدوثه [أى أن الوقت لا يكون من المهم ذكره].

ex. - My favourite writer has written a new book.

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام عند ذكر عدد مرات الفعل أو الكم وذلك فى وجود كلمات مثل

two / three ..... / many / a few / several / a lot of

ex. - I have drunk two cups of coffee.

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث بدأ فى الماضى ومازال مستمرًا حتى الآن.

ex. - I have lived in Aswan since 2007.

يستخدم زمن المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث تم فى الماضى وله أثر فى الحاضر.

ex. - My hands are dirty. I have mended my bike.

لاحظ أن عند تحديد وقت وقوع الحدث فى الماضى نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط.

ex. - Tamer has sent me an email. He wrote it yesterday.

Key words كلمات دالة

غالبًا ما يأتى المضارع التام مع هذه الكلمات :

just	حالاً/توًا	never	أبدًا	yet	حتى الآن	for	لمدة
already	بالفعل	ever	من قبل	since	منذ		

The Present Perfect Continuous Tense زمن المضارع التام المستمر

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + have ('ve) / has ('s) + been + (inf. + ing) ... .

ex. - I have been reading a new book since June.
- She has been travelling for a week.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + haven't / hasn't + been + (inf. + ing) ... .

ex. - I haven't been working.
- Mum hasn't been cleaning the house.

3

Interrogative
صيغة الاستفهام

(A) Yes/No question : **(أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :**

Have / Has + subject الفاعل + been + [inf. + ing] .... ?

ex. - Have you been visiting England this month ?
* Yes, I have. * No, I haven't.

(B) Wh - question : **(ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة إستفهام :**

Question word + have / has + subject الفاعل + been + [inf. + ing] .... ?

ex. - How long has he been reading this book ?
* He has been reading this book for a week.

Usage الاستخدام

The Present Perfect Continuous Tense is used :

1. **To talk about something that started in the past and is still happening now.**
١ للتحدث عن شيء ما بدأ فى زمن الماضى ومازال مستمرًا حتى الوقت الحالى.

ex. - Nora has been dreaming of going into space all her life.
- I have been waiting for the bus for a long time now.

2. **To talk about actions that started in the past and have present results.**
٢ للتحدث عن أحداث بدأت فى الماضى ولها أثر فى الوقت الحاضر.

ex. - It has been raining all day, so the garden is very wet.

Time words

كلمات وتعبيرات زمنية تستخدم مع زمن المضارع التام المستمر

for	لمدة	(a long time / very long / the last / the past / مدة + now .....)
since	منذ	(2000 / Monday / April / yesterday / 6 o'clock .....)
all	طوال	(morning – evening – day .....)
still	ما يزال	

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

1. Have you ..... (never) driven a car ? *(Aswan 2023)*

2. I ..... (visit) this restaurant three times this week. I like it. *(Beheira 2023)*
3. LM My grandfather has never ..... (drove) a car.
4. Mona ..... (do) her homework for two hours. She hasn't finished yet.
(Fayoum 2023 / Ismailia 2023 / Dakahlia 2022)
5. What have you been ..... (do) at school this week ? *(Beheira 2022)*
6. SB Have you ever ..... (using) a telescope ?
7. SB What have you been ..... (dream) of since you were young ?
8. WB "I ..... (not be) to this restaurant before. Is it good ?" – Yes, it is.
9. WB Ahmed ..... (read) three books this week. He loves reading !
10. WB Younis ..... (read) a new story for an hour, he is still reading it.

El-Moasser Exercises

11. Salma has been studying in El Farouk school ..... (for) 2013.
12. Haytham has ..... (create) an app already.
13. Nada has ..... (win already) a gold medal.
14. Mrs Mona has ..... (be) teaching English since 2001.
15. I've been ..... (do) this hobby since last year.
16. They have been living here ..... (since) a year.

The Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضى التام

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject الفاعل + had ('d) + p.p. التصريف الثالث

ex. - He had done his homework before he watched TV.
- They had their lunch after they had studied English.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + hadn't + p.p. التصريف الثالث

ex. - I hadn't watched TV before I finished my homework.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(A) Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

Had + subject (الفاعل) + p.p. (التصريف الثالث) ?

ex. - Had you finished everything by five ?
- Had she studied English well before her last exam ?

(B) Wh - question : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة إستفهام :

Question word (كلمة الاستفهام) + had + subject (الفاعل) + p.p. (التصريف الثالث) ?

ex. - What had they bought before travelling ?
- Where had you been before going to the cinema ?

Usage الاستخدام

1 We use the past perfect to talk about something that happened before another event in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضى التام للتحدث عن حدثين تم أحدهما قبل حدث آخر فى الماضى.

الحدث الأول (الأقدم) ماضى تام والحدث الثانى (الأحدث) ماضى بسيط.

- I went to the cinema after I had completed my work.

الحدث الثانى : ماضى بسيط — الحدث الأول : ماضى التام

Time connectors

يستخدم زمن الماضى التام مع الروابط الآتية :

1

After بعد / As soon as بمجرد أن — Past Perfect Tense (زمن الماضى التام) , Past Simple Tense (زمن الماضى البسيط)

Past Simple Tense (زمن الماضى البسيط) — after / as soon as — Past Perfect Tense (زمن الماضى التام)

ex. - After he had parked his car, he went to work.
- He had breakfast as soon as he had washed his face.

2

Before قبل
By the time قبل
When عندما

Past Simple Tense (زمن الماضى البسيط) → , Past Perfect Tense (زمن الماضى التام) →

← Past Perfect Tense (زمن الماضى التام) before / by the time / when Past Simple Tense (زمن الماضى البسيط) →

ex. - Before he arrived, his uncle had left to Mansoura.
- He had written the letter to his uncle by the time he visited him.
- When we arrived at the station, the train had left.

لاحظ فى حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد After / Before نستخدم (inf. + ing) بعدهما

ex. - After parking his car, he went to work.
- Before watching TV, he had studied his lessons.

3

ماضى بسيط غالباً منفى ← didn't + inf. / wasn't + p.p. / adj. / weren't + p.p. / adj.

until حتى / till حتى

Past Perfect Tense (زمن الماضى التام) →

ex. - He didn't watch TV until he had done his homework.
- The car wasn't sold till he had repaired it.
- Sara and Manar weren't happy until their mother had come.

4

نتيجة ← Past Simple

because لأن / as لأن

سبب → Past Perfect (had + p.p.)

ex. - Ali was tired because he had worked hard.
- Nadia succeeded as she had studied hard.

5

سبب ← Past Perfect

so لذلك / that's why لهذا السبب

نتيجة → Past Simple

ex. - Ali had worked hard so he was tired.
- Nadia had studied hard that's why she succeeded.

2 The past perfect is used to describe an action that happened before a specific time in the past.

يستخدم الماضى التام ليصف حدث تم فى الماضى قبل وقت محدد فى الماضى.

By بحلول / Before قبل → وقت محدد فى الماضى , → ماضى تام had + p.p.

ex. - Before the beginning of the 17th century, astronomers had only studied space with their own eyes.
- By 2001, my uncle had built his house.
- Before my last birthday, I had bought a bike.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

1. I did not send the report until I ..... (revise) it. *(Damietta 2023)*
2. ..... (Did) you finished your homework before you went to the cinema ? *(Sharkia 2023)*
3. After I ..... (have) my lunch, I went out. *(Qena 2023)*
4. LM I had cleaned my room ..... (after) I started studying.
5. As soon as Maha ..... (watch) TV, she slept. *(Alexandria 2022)*
6. I went to the club after I ..... (finish) my work. *(Giza 2022)*
7. Ramy ..... (tidy) his room before he started studying. *(Khafr El-Sheikh 2022)*
8. SB How many people ..... (walked) on the moon by the end of the 20th century ?
9. WB I hadn't been to Karim's house since he ..... (paints) it yellow.
10. WB Fatma ..... (has) never heard Italian before she went to Rome.
11. WB We ..... (take) a taxi to the beach because the bus had already left.

El-Moasser Exercises

12. After Nada ..... (cooks) the food, her visitors arrived.
13. Before ..... (listened) to the radio, Ali had done his homework.
14. The boy ran away as soon as he ..... (seeing) the dog.
15. Before he ..... (go) to school, he had packed his bag.

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Atef is talking to a tourist about his visit to Egypt.

Atef : Hello. Is it your first visit to Egypt ?

Tourist : Hello. (1) ..... . I came here with my wife before.

Atef : (2) ..... ?

Tourist : I come from Ireland.

Atef : (3) ..... ?

Tourist : I will stay in Egypt for two weeks.

Atef : What cities are you going to visit ?

Tourist : (4) ..... .

Atef : Sure, Aswan and Luxor are interesting places to visit. I wish you an enjoyable visit.

Tourist : (5) ..... . *(Damietta 2023)*

2 LM Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

astronaut - have been - astronomer - had been - station - make

The space is no longer a big secret. Scientists (1) ..... trying to discover more and more about space. In the past, Neil Armstrong was the first (2) ..... to walk on the moon. In 1990, the world's first space (3) ..... went into space. Still, we expect scientists to (4) ..... achievements.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The synonym of the word "true" is "..... ". *(Assiut 2023)*
   a. sad b. incorrect c. remote d. correct
2. LM A/An ..... is an expert in or a student of astronomy.
   a. astronomer b. engineer c. pilot d. astronaut
3. To give the name of the person from the verb "invent", we add the suffix "..... ".
   a. –or b. –er c. –ity d. –able

4. WB A/An ..... is a person who studies something carefully.
   a. researcher b. scientist c. astronomer d. astrologer
5. He is the writer of the novel. This means he is the ..... .
   a. reader b. author c. moral d. sailor
6. Dad had organized a car to meet me at the airport. The word "organized" means "..... ".
   a. arranged b. attracted c. graduated d. retired

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. For three years, I ..... (learn) the French Language. *(Menoufia 2023)*
2. We ..... (go) out for a walk after we had finished our homework. *(Menia 2022)*
3. LM Before ..... (visited) my friend, I had bought him a valuable present.
4. She ..... (work) here for five years. She is still working here.
5. LM We've been waiting for Rami; he ..... (not arrived) yet.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

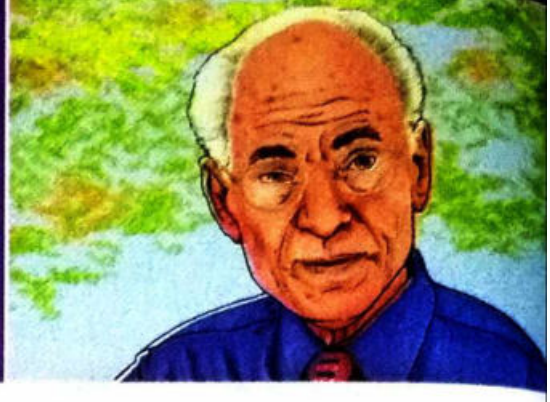
"A biography of Ayman Ragab"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Lessons

3 & 4

SB pages 38 : 40
WB pages 95 & 96



1 Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

braces(n)	تقويم أسنان - دعامة	signal(n)	إشارة
helmet(n)	خوذة	trainers(n)	حذاء رياضى
receiver(n)	جهاز استقبال	wireless(adj)	لاسلكى
sensor(n)	جهاز استشعار	in vain (adv)	عبثا - بلا جدوى
continent (n)	قارة	fellow (n)	رفيق
grain (n)	حبوب	toiler (n)	عامل مكافح

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

continents - braces - signal - trainers - grain

1. There was no ..... because the TV receiver was broken.
2. Africa, Europe and Asia are ..... .
3. My teeth are not straight, so the dentist advised me to put ..... .
4. While shopping I walk a lot, so I need good ..... .

Lesson 3

SB pages 38 & 39 WB page 95

allow(ed) (v)	يُمكّن - يسمح	motorbike(n)	دراجة بخارية
anywhere(adv)	فى أى مكان	sports matches(n)	مباريات رياضية
without(adv/prep)	بدون	podcast(n)	إذاعة / بث
satellite TV (n)	القنوات الفضائية	air bags	وسادات هوائية
nature (n)	الطبيعة	clear material	مادة شفافة
headphones (n)	سماعات الأذن	check (ed) (v)	يفحص - يدقق

Lesson 4

SB page 40 WB page 96

context(n)	السياق	poem(n)	قصيدة
verse(n)	فقرة شعرية	rhyme(d) (v), (n)	يسجع - قافية
poet (n)	شاعر	task (n)	مهمة
wheat (n)	قمح	diplomat (n)	دبلوماسى
seed (n)	بذرة	wait (ed) (v)	ينتظر

Clear the confusion

won	فاز	one	رقم واحد
I	أنا	eye	عين
here	هنا	hear	يسمع
know	يعرف	no	لا
sea	بحر	see	يرى
son	ابن	sun	شمس

Abbreviations

اختصارات

GPS	Global Positioning System	نظام تحديد المواقع العالمى
BCE	before common era	قبل الميلاد
Dr	doctor	طبيب
Mr	mister	السيد
TV	television	تليفزيون

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
blow تهب	blew	blown

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

braces	something that people can wear to make their teeth straight	تقويم أسنان - دعامة
GPS	a system (Global Positioning System) for finding how to find something or to get to a place using satellites	نظام تحديد المواقع
helmet	a special hard hat used to protect the head	خوذة
satellite receiver	a machine which can receive or read information that is sent by a satellite	جهاز استقبال القمر الصناعى
sensor	something which can measure small amounts of light, heat, sound, etc.	جهاز استشعار
signal	information or an instruction that is sent by sound, light, etc.	إشارة
wireless	able to use the internet without wires	لاسلكى
toiler	someone who is working hard	مكافح - مجتهد
grain	a seed or seeds from a plant that you can eat	حبوب
fellow	another word for man	رفيق
continent	one of the large areas of land in the world, such as Africa, Asia, or Europe.	قارة
in vain	if you do something in vain, you do it unsuccessfully	عبثًا - بلا جدوى

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

send	signals	يرسل إشارات	**take**	photos	يلتقط صور

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
useless	عديم الفائدة	worthless - valueless	useful	مفيد
allow	يُمكّن - يسمح	let - permit	stop/prevent	يمنع
comfortable	مريح	relaxing	uncomfortable	غير مريح
send	يرسل	transmit – transfer	receive	يستلم
toiler	عامل مكافح [نشيط]	labourer/hard-working	lazy	كسول
in vain	عبثًا / بدون فائدة	unsuccessfully/ without success	successfully	بنجاح

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–ful	تكون الصفة من الاسم	useful	مفيد
–less	تكون الصفة من الاسم	wireless	لاسلكى
–er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	receiver	جهاز استقبال
		toiler	مكافح / مجتهد
un–	تكون عكس المعنى	unsuccessful	غير ناجح
–able	تكون الصفة من الاسم	comfortable	مريح

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 since

لأن

* since = because
  - Sama didn't go to school **since** she was ill.

منذ

* since
  - They've lived in Luxor **since** they were married.

SB page 38

2 weather - climate

الطقس [يعكس حالة الجو لفترة قصيرة]

* weather
  - **A :** What's the **weather** like today ?
    B : It's hot and dry.

المناخ [يعكس حالة الجو لفترة أطول فى منطقة معينة]

* climate
  - Egypt has a good **climate** all the year.

SB page 38

3 sign - signal

* sign (n)
  - There is a "No smoking" **sign** everywhere in the hospital. **لافتة**
  - Scientists are looking for **signs** of life on the moon. **علامة**
* signal (n) **إشارة** [ضوئية - صوتية] لإرسال معلومات معينة لشخص ما.
  - The officer gave a **signal** to the policemen to start attacking the gang.

SB page 38

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
a system of satellites	نظام القمر الصناعى	find their way	يجدوا طريقهم
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	since the late 20th century	منذ أواخر القرن العشرين
put together	يضع سويًا		
take photos	يلتقط صورًا	send signals	يرسل إشارات
Prepositions			
land on	يهبط على	use ... for	يستخدم ... لـ ...
abbreviation for	اختصار لـ	work out	يحسب - يحل - يستنتج
communicate with	يتواصل مع	in some areas	فى بعض المناطق
far from cities	بعيدًا عن المدن	step onto	يخطو على
on satellite TV	على الفضائيات	on later visits	فى زيارات لاحقة

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 38

We couldn't live without ... satellite technology

Since(1) the **late 20th century**(2), we have used satellite technology for many of the things we do every day. Our lives would be very different **without**(3) it. Here are some of the things that we use satellites for.

GPS(4) -Before satellites were invented, people had always used maps to find their way. Now, most people use GPS, which uses a **system**(5) of satellites that work

(1) منذ | (2) أواخر القرن العشرين | (3) بدون | (4) نظام تحديد المواقع العالمى | (5) نظام

• on Lesson 4 SB page 96

1. I watched my favourite football team yesterday, and they won !
2. Oh, there is something in my eye.
3. My friend called me, but I could not hear.
4. I asked my mother if I could go to the park, but she said no.
5. What can you see from the top of the tower ?
6. Ali is Hassan's youngest son.

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

▸ Definitions

1. LM The ..... is a network of satellites that helps to show location of something on Earth.
   a. GPS b. solar system c. Cairo Tower d. Microscope
2. WB The ..... are something that people can wear to make their teeth straight.
   a. braces b. bracelets c. rings d. necklaces
3. WB A ..... is information or an instruction that is sent by sound, light, etc.
   a. sensor b. signal c. line d. receiver

▸ Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes

4. To be famous and rich, you should be a toiler. The word "toiler" means someone who ..... . *(Assiut 2023)*
   a. never works b. works hard c. sleeps a lot d. eats much
5. LM I searched for the lost watch in vain. "In vain" means "..... ".
   a. hopefully b. carelessly
   c. without success d. without failure
6. SB Satellites send lots of signals. The antonym of the word "send" is ..... . *(Port Said 2023)*
   a. deliver b. allow c. pass d. receive
7. Satellites allow us to study the weather all around the world. The word "allow" is the same meaning as the word "..... ". *(Kafr El-Sheikh 2022)*
   a. let b. give c. stop d. prevent

▸ Guessing the meaning from the text

8. You don't have to plug it because it is ..... . *(Sharkia 2023)*
   a. wireless b. careless c. leafless d. useless

9. LM **Samir :** Do you know who ..... the telescope ?
Rami : Yes, he was Hans Lippershey.
a. sold b. bought c. discovered d. invented

10. WB He didn't go to school since he was ill. The word "since" here means ..... .
a. because b. so c. as a result d. before

El-Moasser Exercises

▸ **Key vocabulary**

11. You can wear ..... for sports. They are very comfortable to your feet.
a. boots b. air bags c. trainers d. suits

12. LM Asia is the largest ..... .
a. capital b. island c. continent d. country

▸ **Definitions**

13. ..... is a seed or seeds from a plant that you can eat.
a. Graph b. Gram c. Grain d. Grade

14. A ..... is a special hard hat used to protect the head.
a. boot b. helmet c. cap d. mask

▸ **Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes**

15. You can make an adjective from the noun "use" by adding "..... ".
a. -ly b. -ful c. -ness d. -y

16. We add the suffix "..... " to get the adjective from the noun "wire".
a. -ness b. -y c. -less d. -ment

17. His parents don't allow him to stay out late. The opposite of the word "allow" is " ..... ".
a. let b. encourage c. prevent d. pass

▸ **Guessing the meaning from the text**

18. Omar succeeded in all his exams last year. That means that he ..... all his exams.
a. failed b. passed c. fell d. went

19. If you do something in vain, you do it ..... .
a. happily b. unsuccessfully c. successfully d. beautifully

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

20. The first photo of the Earth was ..... in 1946.
a. invented b. repeated c. done d. taken

Speaking & Writing Corner

Reviews, Biographies, Short Stories & Dialogues الحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة الـ

قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues 80 Reviews, Biographies & Short Stories

Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابه
Read and complete : 1. Why is ..... technology useful for weather reports ? القمر الصناعى - Because it shows how clouds and storms are moving. 2. What did people use to find their way before inventing satellites ? - They used ..... . خرائط 3. What sends the ..... ? الاشارة - The satellite sends it.	**Finish the following dialogue :** A : Can I ask you some questions ? B : (1) ..... . A : (2) ..... ? B : Yes, satellite technology is very useful. A : What do people use now to find their way ? B : (3) ..... . A : GPS ! (4) ..... ? B : They used maps in the past. A : What sends the signal ? B : (5)	**Write a review on :** "Satellite technology" ....

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Hafsa was calling her friend Heba on the phone, but she was told that Heba was out.

Hafsa : May I speak to Heba, please ?

Hind : (1) ..... . Shall I know who is calling ?

Hafsa : (2) ..... . I am sorry to have troubled you.

Hind : That's all right. (3) ..... ?

Hafsa : Yes, please. Tell her to call me when she comes back.

Hind : (4) ..... ?

Hafsa : OK. It's 12345.

Hind : Thank you.

Hafsa : (5) ..... . *(Kafr El-Sheikh 2022)*

2 LM Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

arrive - locate - are using - storms - have used - climate

Satellite technology is very important. Since the late 20th century, we (1) ..... satellite technology for many things we do every day. Now, we have GPS that helps us (2) ..... our destination. Weather satellites are useful because they show us how clouds and (3) ..... are moving. These satellites enable us to know about the possible (4) ..... change.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We can use internet without wires, this means we use ..... technology. *(Qena 2023)*

a. useless b. helpless c. wireless d. hopeless

2. To make the adjective from the word "success", we add the suffix "..... ". *(Assiut 2023)*

a. –al b. –ion c. –ness d. –ful

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

3. A/An ..... is someone who is working hard.

a. toiler b. sensor c. receiver d. beggar

4. LM Satellites allow us to study the weather all around the world. "Allow ... to" here is the opposite in meaning to "..... ".

a. prevent ... from b. come from

c. persuade ... to d. think of

5. LM My school is near, but my brother's university is very ..... from our home.

a. different b. far c. crowded d. absent

6. The ..... is a machine which can receive or read information that is sent by a satellite.

a. signal b. satellite receiver

c. helmet d. sensor

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of satellite technology"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons

5 & 6

SB pages 41 & 42
WB pages 97 & 98

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

exhibition(n)	معرض - عرض	guide (n)	مرشد
planetarium(n)	قبة سماوية	directions(n)	اتجاهات
vehicle(n)	مَركَبة	railway(n)	سكة حديدية
source(n)	مصدر	the Mediterranean(n)	البحر الابيض المتوسط
The International Space Station	المحطة الفضائية الدولية	sailor (n)	بحّار
asteroid (n)	كويكب [كوكب سيار]	newspaper (n)	جريدة

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

sailor - directions - vehicles - railway - newspapers

1. Can you give me ..... to reach the zoo ?
2. I read some advertisements about jobs in these ..... .
3. The Egyptian ..... system has been developed greatly.
4. Electric ..... will be popular in the next few years.

Lesson 5

SB page 41 WB page 97

around(prep/adv)	حول	flat(adj), (n)	مستو - مُسطّح / شقة سكنية
clear(adj)	واضح	Venetian(n)	شخص من مدينة فينيسيا الإيطالية
Russia	دولة روسيا	circle (n)	دائرة
Europe (n)	قارة أوروبا	appear (ed) (v)	يظهر
Spanish (n)	أسبانى [الجنسية]	Englishman (n)	رجل إنجليزى [الجنسية]
travel(led) (v), (n)	يسافر - سفر	Asia (n)	قارة آسيا

Lesson 6

SB page 42 WB page 98

informative (adj)	إعلامى - إخبارى	journey(n)	رحلة طويلة
Hubble(n)	مرصد هابل الفلكى	perseverance(n)	مثابرة / عزيمة
achievement (n)	إنجاز	probe (n)	مسبار / مجس [آلة]
nearly (adv)	تقريبًا	public transport (n)	المواصلات العامة
diary (n)	يوميات / مفكرة يومية	winner (n)	فائز
date	تاريخ	entry (n)	مدخل

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
hit	يصدم - يضرب	hit	hit

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make	maps	يرسم خرائط	draw	maps	يرسم خرائط
	phone calls	يجرى مكالمات هاتفية	get	directions	يحصل على الاتجاهات
	notes	يدون الملاحظات	take	back to	يرد / يعيد إلى
	sure	يتأكد			

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
stay	يبقى/يظل	remain	leave	يغادر
bright	ساطع/لامع	shiny	dark - dull	مظلم - معتم
public	عام	general	private	خاص

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	carefully	بحرص - بعناية
–ese	تكون الصفة من الاسم أو الجنسية من اسم البلد	Japanese	يابانى [الجنسية]
–ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	communication direction exhibition	الاتصال - التواصل اتجاه معرض
im–	تكون عكس المعنى	impossible	مستحيل
–ment	تكون الاسم من الفعل	achievement	إنجاز

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 orbit - spin

* orbit (v) — يدور [حول شىء]
  - The Earth **orbits** the sun.
* spin (v) — يدور [حول محوره]
  - The Earth **spins** on its axis محور once a day.

SB page 41

2 station - stop

* station (n) — محطة

(مبنى أكبر وبه مكتب لبيع التذاكر مثلاً) ودائمًا تكون مكان لانطلاق الرحلة من مكان ما أو نقطة الوصول لمكان ما)

▸ **bus station / train station**

* stop (n) — موقف - محطة

▸ **bus stop** (أى مكان يتوقف فيه الأتوبيس)

SB page 42

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

include facts	يتضمن حقائق	move forward	يتقدم للأمام
as soon as	بمجرد أن	the journey back	رحلة العودة
soon after	مباشرة بعد	a robot space vehicle	مركبة فضائية آلية (غير مأهولة)
a colour photo	صورة بالألوان		
check your ideas	تأكد من صحة أفكارك		

Prepositions

above the Earth	فوق كوكب الأرض	the far side of	الجانب البعيد (الآخر) لـ
go into space	ينطلق إلى الفضاء	go around	يدور حول
stay on the space station	يظل فى محطة الفضاء	different from	مختلف عن
		on Earth	على كوكب الأرض
travels at ...	يسافر بسرعة	in many ways	بطرق مختلفة
at the same time as	فى نفس توقيت	use satellites for maps	يستخدم الأقمار الصناعية لرسم الخرائط
refer to	يشير إلى		

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 41

Guide[1]: This is a very interesting photo. Do you know what it is ?
Lina : It's the moon.
Guide : That's right. This is a photo of the moon, but it's an **unusual**[2] photo. This isn't what we see when we look into the sky at night. This is **the far side**[3] of the moon.

(1) مرشد (2) غير عادى (3) الجانب البعيد

had studied the stars to **find out**[2] when the Nile **flooded**[3]. They had even used the stars to help them build the pyramids.

After the film, we went to an **exhibition**[4] about Mars. Did you know a space robot had explored Mars before the end of the 20th **century**[5] ? It **landed**[6] on Mars in 1997.

We had an amazing time. We were there all morning, but when we left, we hadn't seen everything! I'd like to back there again one day.

(2) يكتشف | (3) يفيض | (4) عرض | (5) قرن (مائة عام) | (6) يهبط

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes& prefixes

1. LM Do you think it's possible to solve the problem of pollution ? We can get the opposite of "possible" by adding ..... .
   a. the suffix –ful b. the suffix –less
   c. the prefix in– d. the prefix im–

Guessing the meaning from the text

2. LM An astronomer called Ptolemy believed that the sun orbited the Earth. "Orbited" here means to travel in a curved path ..... a much larger object.
   a. to b. around c. with d. from

El-Moasser Exercises

Key vocabulary

3. Bennu is a / an ..... , which is a large rock that is flying through space.
   a. asteroid b. entry c. satellite d. spacecraft
4. Most astronauts stay on the ..... station for about six months.
   a. space b. robot c. rocket d. aquarium
5. A ..... is a person who works on a ship.
   a. butcher b. cook c. sailor d. farmer
6. We saw a / an ..... about Mars yesterday.
   a. aquarium b. match c. vehicle d. exhibition
7. We can see the positions and movements of the planets and stars in a/an ..... .
   a. museum b. exhibition c. planetarium d. aquarium
8. There are many motor ..... in the city such as cars, buses and lorries.
   a. tools b. vehicles c. photos d. newspapers
9. Buses and trains are examples for public ..... .
   a. plans b. transport c. ports d. parts

10. You need a lot of ..... to come first at any competition.
a. preference b. perseverance c. conversations d. calls

▸ **Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes& prefixes**

11. They live in a huge house. The synonym of the word "huge" is ..... .
a. tiny b. small c. enormous d. easy

12. You can make an adjective from the word "Japan" by adding the suffix "..... ".
a. -tian b. -ese c. -ion d. -tion

13. The word "public" is a/an ..... .
a. verb b. adjective c. preposition d. adverb

14. I can't stay in one place for too long. They synonym of the word "stay" is ..... .
a. leave b. sleep c. remain d. close

▸ **Guessing the meaning from the text**

15. There are no mountains or hills in this land. It's a/an ..... area.
a. high b. far c. flat d. easy

16. This shape has no sides. It's a ..... .
a. square b. circle c. star d. diamond

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

17. Astronauts can send emails or ..... phone calls to their families.
a. do b. make c. train d. draw

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▸ **Saying when events happened.** ذكر توقيت الأحداث.

1. The first photo of the Earth was taken from space in 1946.
١. التقطت أول صورة لكوكب الأرض من الفضاء فى عام ١٩٤٦م.
2. A long time after that, in 1967 the first colour photo of the Earth was taken.
٢. بعد ذلك بوقت طويل فى عام ١٩٦٧، التقطت أول صورة ملونة لكوكب الأرض.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

The International Space Station **محطة الفضاء الدولية**

1. The International Space Station is a huge spacecraft.
١. محطة الفضاء الدولية هى مركبة فضاء عملاقة.
2. It's a place where astronauts live and work when they go into space.
٢. إنها المكان الذى يعيش ويعمل فيه رواد الفضاء عندما يسافرون إلى الفضاء.
3. The space station orbits the Earth every day. ٣. تدور محطة الفضاء حول الأرض كل يوم.
4. It travels at 27,000 kilometers an hour. ٤. تسافر بسرعة ٢٧ ألف كيلومتر فى الساعة.
5. It goes around the Earth every 90 minutes. ٥. تدور حول الأرض كل ٩٠ دقيقة.

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Waleed is asking Tamer some questions about his life.

Waleed : Hello, Tamer. Can I ask you a few questions ?

Tamer : Yes, you can.

Waleed : (1) ..... ?

Tamer : No, I have never tried an unusual sport.

Waleed : What have you been dreaming to be since you were young ?

Tamer : (2) ..... .

Waleed : An astronaut ! (3) ..... ?

Tamer : Because I want to explore space.

Waleed : Well, I hope you will achieve your dreams.

Tamer : (4) ..... .

Waleed : (5) ..... .

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

plane - calls - for - astronauts - since - spacecraft

The International Space Station is a huge (1) ..... 70 km above the Earth. It is a place where (2) ..... live and work when they go into space. Most astronauts stay on the space station (3) ..... about six months. They can send e-mails or make phone (4) ..... to the Earth. *(Damietta 2023)*

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Some fish have bright colours. The antonym of the word "bright" is ..... .
   a. colourful b. dull c. right d. shiny
2. To form the adverb of the word "careful", we add the suffix "..... " .
   a. –ion b. –ly c. –ity d. –ment
3. The ..... is the person who works on a ship.
   a. guide b. builder c. sailor d. astronaut

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

4. LM A .....is a spacecraft where people live and work.
   a. satellite b. train station c. rocket d. space station
5. All people can use buses and trains. They're ..... transport.
   a. special b. private c. public d. dirty
6. The elephants aren't small animals; they are ..... .
   a. lazy b. active c. huge d. tiny

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I didn't send the report until I ..... (revise) it. *(South Sinai 2022)*
2. WB I wrote a reply to the e-mail as soon as I ..... (receive) it.
3. SB People ..... (not know) much about stars until scientists had used telescopes.
4. After they ..... (win) the match, they celebrated.
5. When Hamza had come, the film ..... (start).

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of the International Space Station"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on unit 10

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary

space station	محطة فضاء
astronaut	رائد فضاء
telescope	منظار
exhibition	معرض
spacecraft	مركبة فضائية
space shuttle	مكوك فضائى
unusual sport	رياضة غير معتادة
explore	يستكشف
discover	يكتشف
astronomer	عالم الفلك
lenses	عدسات
orbit	يدور
solar system	النظام الشمسى
signals	إشارات
storms	عواصف
ATM	ماكينة الصراف الآلى
GPS	نظام تحديد المواقع العالمى
wireless	لاسلكى
science competition	مسابقة علمية

Language

1. The Present Perfect • زمن المضارع التام

(I, We, You, They) have
(He, She, It) has + p.p. ..... التصريف الثالث

ex. She has watered the plants.

ex. They have eaten pizza.

2. The Past Perfect • زمن الماضى التام

Subj. + had + p.p. ..... التصريف الثالث

ex. - Adel had travelled abroad.

- He hadn't published his ideas until just before he died.

3. The present perfect continuous • زمن المضارع التام المستمر

Subj. + has / have + been + inf. + ing

ex. I'm really tired because I have been studying all night.

Speaking

1. Talking about life experiences

• التحدث عن التجارب الحياتية.

* Have you ever helped to organise a sports event ?

- Yes, I have helped to organise the Handball Africa Cup of Nations.

2. Talking about space

• التحدث عن الفضاء.

* What is the International Space Station ?

- It is a huge spacecraft above the Earth.

3. Talking about satellite technology

• التحدث عن تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية.

* How have you used satellite technology this week ?

- I watched my favourite programme on satellite TV.

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Making Inference

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [الاستنتاج من النص].

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

It was Omar's 20th birthday. He invited his friends to a restaurant at 7 o'clock in the evening for a birthday dinner. Omar reached the restaurant at 7 o'clock. He looked around for any of his friends, but no one came. So he decided to wait outside. A lot of customers came, but no one of them was his friend. At 7 : 30, he phoned his friends, but nobody answerd. At 8 o'clock, Omar went home. He thought that his friends had forgotten his birthday, so he was sad and disappointed. He opened the front door and walked into the dark house. The living room was closed. "How strange!", he thought as he always left it open. He opened the door. Suddenly, the lights were turned on and all his friends shouted, "Surprise". So they hadn't forgotten. They gave him nice presents. In the end, it was the best birthday ever that made him happy.

- How did we know that Omar was disappointed ?

.....

التحدى لا يمكننى الإجابة عن سؤال استنتاج أحداث قادمة فى النص كيف يمكننى بناء تنبؤ لم يتم ذكره فى النص.

مفتاح الحل إجابة سؤال الاستنتاج تكون مذكورة فى النص. هذا السؤال مثل فكرة سؤال علل فالإجابة أن تذكر دليل من القطعة يؤيد هذه الفكرة.

2 Speaking

Talking about Dr Farouk El-Baz

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Finish the following dialogue :

Noura and Hala are talking about Dr Farouk El-Baz.

Noura : Good evening, Hala. How are things ?
Hala : Good evening, Noura.
(1) ..... .
Noura : Have you heard about Dr Farouk El-Baz ?
Hala : (2) ..... .
Noura : (3) ..... ?
Hala : I heard that he helped the astronauts a lot to use satellites.
Noura : (4) ..... ?
Hala : Yes, he helped Egypt a lot.
Noura : How did he help Egypt ?
Hala : (5) ..... . That's because water in the Western Desert is really useful.

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [دكتور فاروق الباز] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Writing

يختبر سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية معرفتك لقدر كاف من المفردات وقدرتك على كتابة جمل تعبر عن الموضوع.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [السيرة الذاتية لأيمن رجب] و[الأقمار الصناعية] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraph
Biography of Ayman Ragab	Write the meaning : ..... وكالة الفضاء الامريكية ..... مهتم بـ ..... المركز الثانى ..... مسابقة ..... تخرج فى [تخصص]	Complete the sentences : 1. Ayman Ragab is an Egyptian scientist who has been always ..... space science. 2. NASA started a ..... to find a solution to this problem. 3. Ayman entered the competition and came ..... . 4. Ayman..... in Engineering from Aswan University.	Write a biography of : *"Ayman Ragab"* ....
Satellite technology	..... الطقس ..... اشارات بث ..... هواتف الاقمار الصناعية ..... تكنولوجيا الاقمار الصناعية ..... ترسل	1. Satellites allow us to study ..... all around the world. 2. Satellites ..... photos of the Earth from space. 3. Satellites send ..... to TV receivers so that you can watch your favourite shows and sports. 4. ..... can work anywhere in the world.	Write an email about : *"Satellite technology"* ....

تدريب تلقائى على مهارة الكتابة

Questions collected from previous exams & longman

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The moon ..... the earth once every 27 days.
   a. cycles b. arms c. orbits d. dives
   (Gharbia 2023)
2. A/An "....." is a person who travels to space.
   a. astronaut b. researcher
   c. assistant d. driver *(Menoufia 2023)*
3. ..... is a force which attracts things or people to the center of the Earth. *(North Sinai 2023)*
   a. Gravity b. Water c. Sun d. Moon
4. You're not allowed to talk during the exam. This means they ..... you from talking. *(The New Valley 2023)*
   a. prevent b. permit c. let d. advise
5. LM He is a fellow toiler. A "toiler" is a ..... or a person who does very hard or dull work.
   a. labourer b. visitor c. user d. trader
6. My school is near, but my brother's university is very ..... from our home.
   a. different b. far c. crowded d. absent
7. We add the suffix "....." to the verb "collect" to make the noun. *(Giza 2023)*
   a. –ed b. –ance c. –ness d. –ion
8. To get the opposite of the word "popular", we add the prefix "....." . *(Alexandria 2022)*
   a. in– b. un– c. im– d. dis–
9. The suffix "–ly" can make a/an ..... from the adjective "successful". *(Qena 2022)*
   a. verb b. adverb c. noun d. adjective
10. LM There are eight planets in our ..... .
   a. solar energy b. solar system
   c. stars d. continent

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in bracket :

1. He had dinner after he ..... (tidy) his room. *(Fayoum 2023)*
2. After Salma ..... (write) the email, she sent it. *(Souhag 2023)*
3. Before I came to school, I ..... (do) my homework. *(Assuit 2022)*
4. My brother didn't go to the club until he ..... (finish) his work. *(South Sinai 2023)*
5. As soon as Maha ..... (watch) TV, she slept. *(Alexandria 2022)*
6. Nada watched the film as soon as she ..... (does) her homework. *(Qalyoubia 2022)*
7. He didn't telephone me until he ..... (was) heard the news. *(Sharkia 2022)*
8. LM Have you ..... (never) used a telescope ?
9. LM Before ..... (visited) my friend, I had bought him a valuable present.
10. Adam came first in the race because he ..... (train) well. *(Beheira 2023)*

Test on unit 10

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

1 Finish the following dialogue :

قم بحل اختبار تراكمى فى الملحق

A student is talking to his / her teacher about the solar system.

student : Nice to meet you, sir. Can I ask you a few questions ?
Teacher : (1) ..... . What questions would you like to ask ?
student : (2) ..... ?
Teacher : There are eight planets in the solar system. What else ?
student : (3) ..... ?
Teacher : The sun is a star not a planet.
student : How can we see the stars ?
Teacher : (4) ..... .
student : Yes, the telescope is a good idea. (5) ..... .
Teacher : You're welcome. *(Aswan 2023)*

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

above – satellites – under – moon – space – sun

Dr Farouk El Baz is one of the most important scientists. He was a (1) ..... scientist and geologist. He worked with NASA. He helped to plan where Apollo II should land on the (2) ..... . He also started studying deserts on the Earth. He used (3) ..... to find rivers that were (4) ..... the sand. *(Suez 2023)*

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. .....
3. ..... 4. .....

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

An engineer had worked hard for a building company. When the engineer got older, he decided to stop working. He wanted to relax. The owner of the company asked **him** to do one last job for the company. It was to build a beautiful house. The engineer agreed, but he wasn't interested in doing his work well. He didn't use good building materials. He didn't think about the safety of the people who would live in that

house. He only wanted to finish the job earlier to enjoy the rest of his life. When he finished, the house appeared beautiful but wasn't well built.

On his last day in the company, the owner gave him the key of the house and said : "This is for you; you worked hard for the company and we want to give you a reward. This new house which you have built is yours".

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The main idea of the passage is ..... .
   a. you should be honest b. don't trouble yourself
   c. helping others is useless d. safety of buildings isn't important
2. The underlined word "**him**" refers to ..... .
   a. the scientist b. the manager
   c. the engineer d. the owner
3. The engineer was ..... when the owner gave him the house.
   a. brave b. unlucky c. smart d. lucky

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What was the engineer's decision when he got older ?
   .....
5. Do you think the engineer will be happy in his new house ? Why / Why not ?
   .....
6. Summarize the second paragraph in your own words.
   .....

(Ismailia 2022)

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Success in life is based on hard work. When we add the suffix "ful" to the word "success" we get a/an ..... .
   a. verb b. adjective c. noun d. adverb
2. The box wasn't small as I expected. It was a/an ..... one.
   a. modern b. noisy c. large d. old
3. LM A ..... is an instrument designed to make distant objects appear closer.
   a. spacecraft b. television c. thermometer d. telescope

4. The antonym of the word "useless" is ..... .
   a. worthless b. useful c. valueless d. comfortable
5. My parents don't allow me to watch TV late. This means they ..... me from watching TV.
   a. let b. prevent c. reject d. find
6. LM An astronaut is a person who ..... .
   a. controls a ship b. studies astronomy
   c. travels into space d. discovers monuments

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Adam came first in the race because he ..... (train) well. *(Beheia 2023)*
2. Before I ..... (had returned) home, I had bought everything we needed.
3. Before his death, the author ..... (publish) his latest collection of short stories. *(Luxor 2023)*
4. Sohaila phoned her father after she ..... (know) the exam results.
5. Marwan hasn't finished his homework ..... (just).

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A biography of Dr Farouk El-Baz"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 10 for Al-Azhar students إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Salma and Ali are talking about a famous scientist.

Salma : What are you doing ?

Ali : (1) ..... .

Salma : What is the book about ?

Ali : (2) ..... .

Salma : What is his name ?

Ali : He is Dr Farouk El-Baz.

Salma : (3) ..... ?

Ali : He helped to plan where Apollo II should land on the moon.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The ..... is an instrument used to make distant objects appear nearer.
   a. thermometer b. telescope
   c. mirror d. microscope *(Beheira Zone 2023)*
2. Hoda did well in the test because she ..... . *(Sharkia Zone 2023)*
   a. revise b. revises c. is revising d. had revised
3. I didn't have lunch ..... I had returned home. *(Sharkia Zone 2023)*
   a. before b. by the time c. until d. while
4. Africa, Asia and Europe are ..... . *(Qena Zone 2023)*
   a. countries b. continents c. cities d. towns

3 Write a paragraph of SIX sentences on :

"Space"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :**

The famous Egyptian scientist Farouk El-Baz.

Maha : I think Farouk El-Baz is one of the most famous Egyptian scientists.

Hassan : (1) ..... .

a. I agree with you b. I live in Cairo
c. I prefer tennis d. I won a prize

Maha : Did he do any important research ?

Hassan : (2) ..... .

a. Yes, I am b. Yes, he is
c. Yes, he does d. Yes, he did

Maha : (3) ..... ?

a. How did he help
b. Why did he help
c. Where did he live
d. How old is he

Hassan : He found rivers that were under the sand.

Maha : (4) ..... ?

a. What did he use to find underground rivers
b. Was he married
c. How did he go to school
d. Was he rich

Hassan : He used satellites to find underground rivers.

Maha : Did he work for NASA ?

Hassan : (5) ..... .

a. Yes, he did
b. Yes, he lived in the USA
c. Yes, he was lazy
d. No, he wasn't clever

* **Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :**

6. After they ..... **(play)** the match, they had a shower.
   a. played b. had played
   c. playing d. will play
7. He ..... **(publish)** his ideas until just before he died.
   a. hadn't published b. won't publish
   c. hasn't published d. doesn't publish
8. No one had ..... **(see)** a photo of the far side of the moon before 1959.
   a. seeing b. saw c. seen d. see to
9. Rami had tidied his room before he ..... **(start)** studying.
   a. started b. had started
   c. has started d. is starting
10. I didn't send the report until I ..... **(revise)** it.
   a. revise to b. revising
   c. had revised d. have revised

Unit 11 Media now and in the past

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 44 : 47
WB pages 100 & 101

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

press (n)	الصحافة	stuck (adj)	عالق
media (n)	وسائل الإعلام	pipe (n)	ماسورة
news websites (n)	مواقع إخبارية إلكترونية	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعى
webpage (n)	صفحة على الإنترنت	witness (n)	شاهد
warning (n)	تحذير - إنذار	TV news programme	برنامج تليفزيونى إخبارى
trust (ed) (v) , (n)	يثق - ثقة	cross (adj)	غاضب
Jobs in the media	**وظائف فى الصحافة والإعلام**		
camera operator (n)	مصور تليفزيونى	radio presenter (n)	مقدم برامج إذاعية
journalist (n)	صحفى	web designer (n)	مصمم مواقع إلكترونية
newsreader (n)	قارئ / مقدم أخبار	editor (n)	رئيس تحرير - محرر
photographer (n)	مصور فوتوغرافى		
Types of media	**أنواع وسائل الإعلام**		
magazine (n)	مجلة	internet (n)	شبكة الإتصالات [الإنترنت]
newspaper (n)	جريدة - صحيفة	television (n)	تلفاز
radio (n)	راديو		

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

photographer – journalist – stuck – trust – fix

1. He likes writing about interesting news, so he'd like to be a ..... .
2. We mustn't ..... liars كاذبون.
3. The good ..... should be clever and quick while taking photos.
4. Hamza is late because he is ..... in the traffic jam in Nasr City.

Lesson 1

SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 100

person (n)	شخص	crosswords (n)	كلمات متقاطعة
control (led) (v)	يتحكم فى	news articles (n)	مقالات إخبارية
page (n)	صفحة	decide (d) (v)	يقرر

Lesson 2

SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 101

road (n)	طريق	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
flood (ed) (v), (n)	يغمر بالمياه - فيضان	fix (ed) (v)	يصلح
injured (adj)	مصاب	fire (n)	حريق - نار
police officer (n)	ضابط شرطة	motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية
alone (adv)	بمفرده	event (n)	حدث
shopping centre (n)	مركز تسوق / تجارى	replace (d) (v)	يستبدل
city centre (n)	وسط المدينة	traffic (n)	حركة المرور
accident (n)	حادث	roof (n)	سطح
experience (d) (v), (n)	يواجه - يعانى / خبرة	side (n)	جانب
owner (n)	مالك	necklace (n)	عقد - قلادة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
burst	ينفجر - ينفتح بقوة	burst	burst
steal	يسرق	stole	stolen
stick	يلصق - يثبت	stuck	stuck

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

media	newspapers, magazines, radio, television, the internet, and other forms of communication that give news الإعلام
camera operator	• a person who controls a television camera مصور تليفزيونى • a person whose job is to film things for television, film, etc.
journalist	• a person who researches and writes news articles • a person whose job is to write news and articles for newspapers, magazines, websites, etc. صحفى
newsreader	a person whose job is to read the news on TV or radio قارئ أخبار
photographer	a person whose job is to take photographs مصور فوتوغرافى
radio presenter	• a person who talks on a radio programme مقدم برامج إذاعية • a person whose job is to introduce programmes on the radio
web designer	• a person who decides how a webpage should look • a person who designs websites or pages on websites مُصمم مواقع / شبكات

editor	a person whose job is to choose what should be in a newspaper, magazine, etc. and who checks the information and language	رئيس تحرير - محرر
witness	a person who has seen an accident, crime, etc. and can tell the police about it	شاهد
warning	something that tells you about something dangerous or bad that might happen	تحذير
stuck	not able to be moved	عالق
pipe	a long; thin piece of metal or plastic, used to carry water, gas, etc. often under the ground or through buildings	ماسورة
burst	break open suddenly, or make something do this	ينفجر - ينفتح بقوة
cross	angry or annoyed	غاضب

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

design	a website	يصمم موقع على الأنترنت	**take**	photographs / photos	يلتقط صور
do	a job	يقوم بوظيفة / مهمة	**get**	news	يعرف الأخبار

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — **مترادفات ومتضادات**

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
control	يتحكم - يسيطر	manage	follow / submit	يخضع / يتبع
normally	بشكل معتاد	ordinarily	untypically - unusually	بشكل غير عادى/غير نمطى
online	على الإنترنت	connected	offline - disconnected	غير متصل بالإنترنت
cross	غاضب	annoyed / angry	calm	هادئ
local	محلى	native - national	international	عالمى / دولى
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily	fortunately / luckily	لحسن الحظ
interesting	شيق	fascinating	uninteresting - boring	غير شيق - ممل
injured	مصاب	hurt	well/unharmed	سليم/مُعافى
trust	ثقة	confidence	distrust – doubt	عدم ثقة - شك
fix	يصلح	mend - repair	damage	يدمر - يتلف

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
–er	تحول من فعل إلى اسم [وظيفة]	designer مصمم presenter مقدم [برنامج] photographer مصور فوتوغرافى
–ing	تحول من فعل إلى صفة	interesting شيق
–ly	تحول من صفة إلى ظرف	completely تمامًا - كليًا politely بطريقة مهذبة
–or	تحول من فعل إلى اسم [وظيفة]	editor رئيس تحرير operator عامل

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 news (n) — أخبار [تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد]

- The **news** of today **is** so good.

تستخدم (a piece of) كمجزئ لتحويل الكلمة إلى صيغة [الجمع]

- I've got two **pieces of** good **news** from Basim. *SB page 46*

2 cross (v / adj)

* cross (ed) (v) — يعبر
  - The old man can't **cross** the road. There are too many cars on the road.
* cross (adj) — غضبان
  - Noha is **cross**. She has failed. *SB page 46 - WB page 101*

3 the police — الشرطة

لاحظ : كلمة (police) تعامل دائمًا معاملة الجمع ويأتى قبلها (the)

- **The police** are stopping people from driving too fast. *SB page 47*

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

study media	يدرس الإعلام	lunchtime news	أخبار وقت الظهيرة
rather than	بدلًا من	do a job in the media	يعمل فى مجال الإعلام
all day	طوال اليوم	look really good	يبدو جيد حقًا
as quickly as possible	باسرع ما يمكن	take away	يزيل / ينقل

Prepositions

get ..... from	يحصل على .... من	stuck in	عالق بـ ....
study at university	يدرس فى الجامعة	on time	فى الوقت المحدد
interested in	مهتم بـ	replace with	يستبدل بـ
on the radio / TV	فى الراديو / التلفاز	start with	يبدأ بـ
work for a newspaper	يعمل لدى جريدة	look for	يبحث عن
work in the media	يعمل فى مجال الصحافة والإعلام	work in TV/radio	يعمل فى التليفزيون / الإذاعة
a good job for	وظيفة جيدة لـ	on the road	على الطريق
break down	يتعطل	know how to + (inf)	يعرف كيف يقوم بـ
on a motorbike	على الدراجة البخارية	give reasons for	يعطى أسباب / مبررات لـ

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

• **on Lesson 1 SB page 45**

Fatma : What job do you want to do when you are older, Reem? I've been thinking about studying media. I love writing and I'm interested in the news so I think a journalist would be a good job for me.

Reem : You'd be amazing at that, Fatma! I think you would be good on the TV as a **newsreader**[1] too!

Fatma : **No way**[2]! I'd **hate**[3] to be on TV, I would be so **nervous**[4].

Reem : A radio presenter then? That would be cool! I'd like to do that.

Fatma : Yes, I'd quite like to have a radio show, but I think I'd prefer to work for a newspaper.

Reem : Online news is the future I think! No one will buy newspapers in a few years. I'm going to study to be a **web designer**[5].

Fatma : Hmmm, well, maybe I will work for online news then. I'll write the stories and you can design the **website**[6]!

Reem : Great! And your brother can be the photographer, he likes taking photos!

Fatma : Good idea!

(1) مقدم أخبار | (2) مستحيل | (3) يكره | (4) متوتر | (5) مصمم مواقع الكترونية | (6) موقع الكترونى

The text is from social media.

Omar Zaki - Today, 10:30 am

WARNING(1) ! The street outside the shopping centre is closed! There is water **everywhere**(2) . A big, old red car is stuck **in the middle**(3) of the **road**(4) . DON'T TRY TO GO THERE!

(1) تحذير / إنذار | (2) فى كل مكان | (3) فى منتصف | (4) طريق

on Lesson 2 SB page 47

There was a bad **accident**(1) on the road to our school yesterday. A car **hit**(2) a big tree, and the driver was **injured**(3). We were **stuck**(4) and couldn't move. The police arrived quickly and took the **damaged**(5) car to the side of the road. **Unfortunately**(6), we went to school late !

(1) حادث | (2) يصطدم بـ | (3) مصاب | (4) عالق | (5) تالف | (6) لسوء الحظ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

Definitions

1. WB A/An ..... is a person whose job is to write news and articles for newspapers.
   a. journalist b. newsreader c. editor d. photographer
2. LM A/An ..... decides on the final content of a newspaper, magazine, etc.
   a. newsreader b. news presenter
   c. editor d. newspaper seller
3. SB A ..... is a person who reads the news on the radio or television.
   a. photographer b. paper c. designer d. newsreader
4. WB A / An ..... is a person who has seen an accident, crime, etc.
   a. sailor b. astronaut c. witness d. sickness

Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes

5. To get the adverb of "complete", we add the suffix ..... . *(Ismailia 2023)*
   a. –tion b. –ly c. –y d. –ment
6. He couldn't control his feelings. The synonym of "control" is ..... .
   a. manage b. design c. mend d. depend
   (Aswan 2023)
7. SB To get the adjective from the verb "interest", we add the suffix "..... " .
   a. -ment b. -ive c. -ing d. -able

8. SB The prefix " ..... " gives the opposite of "fortunately".
a. un- b. im- c. il- d. dis-

▸ **Guessing the meaning from the text**

9. He can't go anywhere. He is ..... in his house because of the flood.
a. funny b. full c. stuck d. free *(Ismailia 2023)*

10. I was ..... when my little baby brother made so much noise. *(Beheira 2023)*
a. cross b. across c. happy d. calm

11. WB He ordered me not to come late again. He gave a/an ..... .
a. warning b. idea c. prize d. price

El-Moasser Exercises

▸ **Key vocabulary**

12. Newspapers, television and radio are called the ..... .
a. projects b. media c. lands d. sites

13. The bathroom is full of water, there must be a problem with the ..... .
a. roads b. pipes c. toasters d. ovens

▸ **Definitions**

14. A camera ..... is a person who controls a television camera.
a. mechanic b. operator c. manager d. presenter

15. ..... means to break open suddenly, or make something do this.
a. Burst b. Trust c. Support d. Repair

▸ **Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes**

16. It's good that you keep your parents' trust. The antonym of the word "trust" is ..... .
a. confidence b. design c. interest d. distrust

17. We add the suffix "....." to get the noun from the verb "design".
a. -ed b. -y c. -er d. -ly

▸ **Guessing the meaning from the text**

18. We need to replace the broken pipe with a new one. The word "replace" means "..... ".
a. trust b. fix c. change d. cross

19. He bought a villa. He is the ..... now.
a. owner b. worker c. actor d. researcher

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

20. Sama couldn't give reasons ..... coming late.
a. of b. for c. at d. with

Speaking & Writing Corner

Reviews, Biographies, Short Stories & Dialogues الـ للحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة

قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues 80 Reviews, Biographies & Short Stories

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابه
Jobs in media	**Read and complete :** 1. Which type of ..... do you trust the most ? وسائل الاعلام - I prefer the newspapers and TV programmes. 2. Which job do you like to do in the field of media ? - I'd like to work as a ..... . صحفى	**Finish the following dialogue :** A : What job do you want to do when you are older, Reem ? B : (1) ..... . A : You will be good on TV as a newsreader, too. B : (2) ..... . A : I see. You don't prefer to be on TV. You like to work for online newspaper. B : (3) ..... ? A : I'd like to be a web designer. B : Great ! I'll write the stories and you will design the sites. A : (4) ..... ? B : Your brother can be the photographer. A : (5) ..... . B : I like this idea, too. We'll be famous.	**Write a review on :** **"Jobs in media"** .....
A water pipe burst	1. Why are you late ? - I was ..... in the traffic. عالق 2. What made the water ..... burst ? ماسورة - A ..... said that a big truck. شاهد	Seif : Why are you late, Ali ? Ali : (1) ..... . Seif : Stuck ! What happened ? Ali : (2) ..... . Seif : (3) ..... ? Ali : People called emergency and they replaced the broken water pipe. Seif : (4) ..... ? Ali : A witness said that a big truck. Seif : How long did it take to fix it ? Ali : (5)	**"A water pipe burst"** .....

III Language

Remember تذكر

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

قد سبق دراسته فى الأعوام السابقة

- I went to Alexandria last week. (Affirmative statement)
- I didn't go to Alexandria last week. (Negative statement)
- Did you go to Alexandria last week ? (Yes / No question)
- When did you go to Alexandria ? (Wh-question)

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

1. They ..... (catch) thousands of fish from the sea yesterday. *(Fayoum 2023)*
2. People ..... (live) in caves a long time ago. *(The New Valley 2023)*
3. SB How big ..... (is) Cairo in 2020 ?
4. SB There ..... (were) a lot of water in the road yesterday.
5. SB ..... (Were) there an accident yesterday ? - Yes, there was.
6. SB Last week, we ..... (decide) to spend the weekend in Sharm El-Sheikh.
7. SB We took our friend's car. Unfortunately, the car ..... (break) down.
8. WB Marwa's father ..... (buy) a big motorbike last week.
9. WB The government ..... (build) a new bridge in our town last year. *(North Sinai 2022)*
10. WB The actor ..... (wear) expensive sunglasses in yesterday's show.

El-Moasser Exercises

11. There ..... (were) some milk in the fridge yesterday.
12. ..... (Was) there many people in the library last week?
13. Did you ..... (saw) the accident yesterday ?
14. My cat ..... (not sleep) on her bed last night.
15. ..... (There were) many cars on the road ?

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Esraa is asking Basma about her future job.

Esraa : Hi, Basma. Where have you been ?

Basma : (1) ..... .

Esraa : The library ! (2) ..... ?

Basma : Because I am doing a research about media.

Esraa : What job would you like to do in the future ?

Basma : (3) ..... .

Esraa : Why do you want to do this job ?

Basma : (4) ..... .

Amira : Great ! (5) ..... ?

Basma : Sure, a journalist needs special skills. *(Qena 2023)*

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

presenter – media – study – studying – designer – satellites

Sara, Nada and Reem are friends. They have been (1) ..... social (2) ..... for three years. Both Sara and Nada are interested in the news. Sara wants to be a journalist. Nada is a very good newsreader. However, she hates to be on TV, she wants to be a radio (3) ..... . Reem is interested in websites. She wants to be a web (4) ..... .

(Minia 2023)

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Newspapers, magazines, television, the internet and other forms of communication are all types of ..... . *(Fayoum 2023)*
   a. mountains b. medicine
   c. meteorites d. media
2. We form the noun of the verb "operate" by adding the suffix "....." .
   a. –ment b. –er c. –or d. –ly

3. A ..... is something that tells you about something dangerous that might happen.

a. site b. warning c. pipe d. design

4. The word "ordinarily" is the synonym of the word " ..... " .

a. normally b. exceptionally c. unusually d. strangely

5. Water comes from the roof to the ground floor through a ..... .

a. wire b. pipe c. line d. pile

(Gharbia 2023)

6. LM My mother was cross because I was late for school. "Cross" here can be replaced by "....." .

a. ready b. easy c. quiet d. angry

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. We ..... (come) home by car last weekend.
2. ..... (Was) there any cars in the city last Monday ?
3. My father ..... (use) to live on a farm. *(Sohag 2022)*
4. Yesterday, Salma ..... (buys) a new mobile.
5. What ..... (does) Ali do last week ?

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of a job that you would like to do in the media"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons

3 & 4

SB pages 48 : 50
WB pages 102 & 103

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

governor (n)	محافظ	female voice	صوت نسائى
tournament (n)	بطولة - دورة [مباريات]	guardian (n)	حارس
water park (n)	ملاهى مائية	award (n)	جائزة
tourism (n)	السياحة	linguist (n)	عالم باللغة - لغوى
recycling (n)	إعادة التدوير	graduate (d) (v)	يتخرج
retire (d) (v)	يتقاعد	presenter (n)	مقدم برامج
broadcaster (n)	إذاعى - مذيع	career (n)	الحياة المهنية
broadcasting (n)	بث / إذاعة		

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

linguist - governor - retire - tournament - Tourism

1. The ..... of Alexandria is an active person.
2. ..... industry is one of the main sources of income دخل in Egypt.
3. Our school held a football ..... last year.
4. A ..... is someone who is expert in languages.

Lesson 3

SB pages 48 & 49 WB page 102

building (n)	مبنى	recently (adv)	حديثًا - مؤخرًا
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى	scientist (n)	عالم
pleased (adj)	مسرور	warm (ed) (v), (adj)	يُدفِئ - دافئ
area (n)	منطقة	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح - يفسر
conversation (n)	محادثة	tired (adj)	متعب

Lesson 4

SB page 50 WB page 103

programme (n)	برنامج	encourage (d) (v)	يشجع
Arab world (n)	العالم العربى	broadcast (ed) (v), (n)	يبث - بث
novel (n)	رواية	literature (n)	الأدب

faculty (n)	كلية	join (ed) (v)	ينضم - يلتحق
present (ed) (v)	يقدم	beauty (n)	الجمال
whole (adj)	كامل - كل	head (n)	مدير - رئيس
specialise (d) (v)	يتخصص	elementary school (n)	مدرسة ابتدائية
produce (d) (v)	ينتج - يصدر	housewife (n)	ربة منزل
language (n)	لغة	educational (adj)	تعليمي

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
bear	تلد	bore	born
tell	يخبر	told	told
hurt	يؤذى - يؤلم	hurt	hurt

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

have	a conversation	يقوم بحوار	**do**	sport	يمارس رياضة
	a job	لديه وظيفة	**study**	online	يدرس عن بعد
win	the match	يفوز بمباراة	**leave**	a job	يترك وظيفة

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

governor	the person who rules a city or an area	محافظ
water park	an amusement park that include water slides, fountains and swimming pools	ملاهى مائية
recycling	reusing the waste in a useful way	إعادة تدوير / تصنيع
broadcast	to send a programme or some information by radio or TV	يبث (فى الإذاعة / التليفزيون)
linguist	a person who specialises in languages	عالم باللغة - لغوى
voice	sound produced by a person when they speak	صوت (بشرى)
retire	to leave a job or stop working because of old age	يتقاعد
presenter	a person who presents a programme on the radio or TV	مقدم برامج (إذاعية / تلفزيونية)
broadcasting	the business of making television or radio programmes	بث - إذاعة
graduate	succeed in passing your exams at university	يتخرج

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms — مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
special	مميز - خاص	unusual	usual - common	عادى - مألوف
true	صحيح	correct - right	false - untrue	خطأ - غير حقيقى
remember	يتذكر	keep in mind - recall	forget	ينسى
noisy	مزعج	loud	quiet	هادئ

Prefixes & Suffixes — مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–ism	تحول الفعل أو الأسم إلى أسم	tourism	سياحة
–er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	broadcaster	إذاعى - مذيع
–or	تحول من فعل إلى اسم	governor	محافظ
–ing	تحول من فعل إلى اسم	recycling broadcasting amusing	إعادة التدوير بث /إذاعة مُسلى
–al	تحول من اسم إلى صفة	educational cultural	تعليمى ثقافى
in–	تعطى عكس الصفة	inexpensive	رخيص

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 graduate

* graduate from — يتخرج من (كلية / جامعة / .....)
  - Farouk Shousha **graduated from** the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum.
* graduate in — يتخرج بشهادة فى
  - I **graduated in** Engineering from Ain Shams University.
* a graduate of — خريج
  - Samar is a **graduate of** the Faculty of Medicine. *SB page 50 - WB page 103*

2 because — لأن

* because of + noun/inf. + ing
  - He stopped working **because of** old age/being old.
* because + جملة كاملة
  - She was tired **because** she had done a lot of work. *SB page 49 - WB page 102*

3 finish + (verb + ing) — ينهى - ينتهى

- They have **finished building** the new museum. *SB page 49*

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
radio news report	تقرير إخبارى على الراديو	check information	يتحقق من المعلومات
early life	بداية حياة (شخص)	bring more tourism	يجلب سياحة أكثر
the mother of all broadcasters	أم الإذاعيين	on fire	مشتعل
Prepositions			
take (time) to	يستغرق وقت لـ	over 100 new jobs	أكثر من ١٠٠ وظيفة جديدة
special about	مميز / خاص بشأن	at a very early age	فى عمر مبكر جدًا
for free	مجانًا	specialise in	يتخصص فى
later on	فيما بعد ذلك - لاحقًا	for this reason	ولهذا السبب

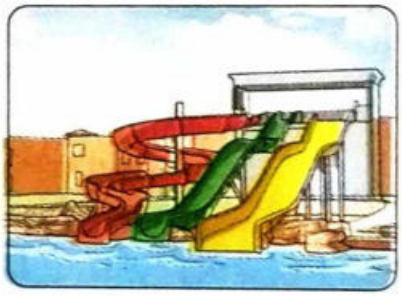
II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 48



News reporter[1] **:** This is the 12 o'clock news. Today a new **water park**[2] opened in Sharm El Sheikh. The **governor**[3] of the town said the park was the biggest in Egypt and would be great for **tourism**[4] in the area. The **owner**[5] of the new park explained that there would be over one hundred new jobs for people at the park. The park has restaurants and the owner is going to build a new hotel next year. The owner also told us that the park had taken over three years to build. The first fifty visitors today can go to the water park **for free**[6].

(1) مراسل الأخبار | (2) ملاهى مائية | (3) محافظ | (4) سياحة | (5) مالك | (6) مجانًا

Cairo University and graduated from the **Faculty of Dar al-Ulum** (7) in 1956.

Career (8)

Shousha worked as a radio presenter in 1958 and later on as a TV presenter too. He always liked **poetry** (9) and **Arabic literature** (10). He **presented** (11) many programmes like 'Our Beautiful Language' on the radio, and "**Cultural Evening** (12)".

Awards (13)

In his programmes, Shousha always talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and its rich literature. For this reason, he was called 'the **guardian** (14) of the Arabic language'. He won the **Nile Prize** (15) for Literature in 2016.

(7) كلية دار العلوم	(8) الحياة المهنية	(9) الشعر	(10) الأدب العربى	(11) قام بتقديم
(12) امسية ثقافية	(13) جوائز	(14) حارس	(15) جائزة النيل	

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

Definitions

1. The ..... is a person who rules a city or an area. *(The New Valley 2023)*
   a. president b. governor c. editor d. writer
2. A ..... is a person who specialises in languages. *(Port Said 2023 - Giza 2022)*
   a. presenter b. broadcaster c. linguist d. reader
3. WB ..... is sound produced by a person when they speak. *(Giza 2023)*
   a. Playing b. Voice c. Running d. Vibration

Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes

4. LM I saw wonderful places during my tour in Cairo. To change "tour" into a noun that expresses a source of national income, we add the suffix "....."
   a. –al b. –ism c. –ity d. –able
5. WB The government is greatly interested in education. We can change "education" into an adjective when we add the suffix ".....".
   a. -ing b. -ly c. -al d. -y
6. SB The synonym of the word "true" is ..... .
   a. delighted b. displeased c. correct d. false

Guessing the meaning from the text

7. LM A university student ..... when he passes the final exams.
   a. starts b. graduates c. leaves d. stops

8. He is going to retire. The word "retire" here means ..... working.
   a. prevent b. stop c. start d. invent

(North Sinai 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises

Key vocabulary

9. She worked as a radio ..... so we all know her voice.
   a. writer b. presenter c. photographer d. designer
10. He won the best actor ..... this year.
   a. award b. world c. word d. war

Definitions

11. A ..... is an amusement park that include water slides, fountains and swimming pools.
   a. forest b. waterfall c. water park d. skate park
12. ..... is the business of making television or radio programmes.
   a. Broadcasting b. Presentation c. Agriculture d. Literature
13. ..... means reusing the waste in a useful way.
   a. Recycling b. Refreshing c. Redoing d. Rebuilding

Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes

14. Braille is a special language for blind people. The opposite of "special" is "..... ".
   a. unusual b. common c. correct d. quiet
15. The suffix "....." can form the noun from the verb "broadcast".
   a. -ed b. -ing c. -al d. -ment
16. The synonym of the word "noisy" is ..... .
   a. loud b. busy c. quiet d. pleased
17. Remember to turn off your latop. The opposite of "remember" is ..... .
   a. begin b. turn on c. recall d. forget

Guessing the meaning from the text

18. He doesn't have any energy to do anything. He is ..... now.
   a. powerful b. tired c. clever d. heavy
19. Shahd did a successful experiment in the lab and found a new cure علاج. She is a/an ..... .
   a. journalist b. mathematician c. scientist d. explorer

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

20. Huda graduated ..... the Faculty of Science.
   a. in b. of c. from d. on

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

1. Asking and giving opinions.

١. السؤال عن وإعطاء الآراء.

Questions	Answers
1. What do you think about studying online ? ١. ما رأيك فى الدراسة عبر الإنترنت ؟	- I like it as it saves a lot of time. - احب هذا النوع من الدراسة لأنه يوفر الكثير من الوقت. - I don't like it because I can't discuss things with my friends. - انا لا أحب هذا النوع من الدراسة لأنه لا يمكننى مناقشة الأشياء مع أصدقائى.
2. What do you think about recycling ? ٢. ما رأيك فى إعادة تدوير الأشياء ؟	- I think it is a solution to many of our environmental problems. - اعتقد إنها حل للعديد من مشاكلنا البيئية.

2. Asking and answering questions about the radio broadcasting.

٢. توجيه أسئلة والإجابة عليها عن البث الإذاعى.

• Was radio broadcasting very important in the last century ? Why ? - هل كان البث الإذاعى له أهمية كبيرة فى القرن الماضى؟ ولماذا؟	- Yes, it was very important as it was one of the main sources of news. - نعم، كان مهم جدًا لأنه كان أحد المصادر الرئيسية للأخبار.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

Farouk Shousha فاروق شوشة

1. Farouk Shousha is a well-known radio presenter.
١. فاروق شوشة هو مقدم برامج إذاعى معروف.

2. He is also a famous poet.
٢. هو أيضًا شاعر مشهور.

3. Shousha was born in Damietta in 1936.
٣. ولد شوشة فى محافظة دمياط فى عام ١٩٣٦.

4. He was able to read many books in the Arabic language at a very early age.
٤. فى عمر مبكرًا جدًا، استطاع شوشة قراءة الكثير من الكتب باللغة العربية.

5. He graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum at Cairo University.
٥. تخرج فاروق شوشة من كلية دار العلوم جامعة القاهرة.

6. He worked as a radio presenter and a TV presenter, too.
٦. عمل كمقدم برامج إذاعية وعمل أيضًا كمقدم تلفزيونى.

7. He was called "the guardian of the Arabic language".
٧. لقب بحارس اللغة العربية.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Reviews, Biographies, Short Stories & Dialogues

للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ

فهم واستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues | 80 Reviews, Biographies & Short Stories

	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابه
Safia el Mohandes	**Read and complete :** 1. Do you know when Egyptian radio ..... started ? بث اذاعى - It started in 1934. 2. Who was the first female ..... on the radio ? صوت بشرى - It was the voice of Safia el Mohandes .	**Finish the following dialogue :** A : Can I ask you some questions ? B : (1) ..... . A : Do you know Safia el Mohandes ? B : (2) ..... . A : (3) ..... ? B : She was born in 1922 in Cairo. A : (4) ..... ? B : Her father was a famous linguist. A : Thanks for your information. B : (5)	**Write a biography of :** **"Safia el Mohandes"** .....
Farouk Shousha	1. Where did Shousha ..... from ? يتخرج - The ..... of Dar Al-Ulum. كلية 2. What did he do ? - He worked as a radio ..... . مقدم برامج	A : What's your favourite language ? B : (1) ..... . A : Me, too. Do you know who was called the guardian of the Arabic language ? B : (2) ..... . He's Farouk Shousha. A : (3) ..... ? B : He graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum. A : What did he do ? B : (4) ..... . A : (5) ..... ? B : He talked about the beauty of the Arabic language in his programmes.	**"Farouk Shousha"** .....

III Language

Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

الكلام المباشر "Direct Speech" هو الكلام الذى يأتى على لسان شخص ما مباشرة أو نصًا ويكون الكلام موضوعًا بين علامتى تنصيص" ..... ":

- "I am ill.", said Ali.

الكلام غير المباشر "Reported Speech" هو الكلام الذى ينقله شخص ما عن شخص آخر، ولا يوضع الكلام غير المباشر بين علامتى تنصيص :

- Ali said (that) he was ill.

Statement : الجملة الخبرية

Speaker + فعل القول + [that] + subject + past simple + باقي الجملة

- Speaker → المتحدث: Ali
- فعل القول → قال / فسر / أبلغ / أخبر: said / explained / reported / told + object (مفعول)
- [that] → that
- subject → الفاعل: he
- past simple → فعل ماضي: was
- باقي الجملة → ill.

Ali + said / explained / reported / told + object + that + he + was + ill.

- المتحدث: الشخص الذى قال الكلام المباشر
- فعل القول: لاحظ أن : told لابد أن يتبعها مفعول
- that: يمكن حذفها
- he: يتم تحويل الضمائر بما يتناسب مع المتكلم والمخاطب
- was: يتحول الزمن إلى الأبعد

خطوات تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى غير المباشر :

١ تحويل فعل القول كالتالى:

said → said (تبقى كما هى)	said to → told (تحول إلى)
say / says → say / says (تبقى كما هى)	say to / says to → tell / tells (تحول إلى)

لاحظ الفرق بين told / said

* said لا يأتى بعدها مفعول
  - Ali said, "I like rice." → Ali said that he liked rice.
* told لابد أن يأتى بعدها مفعول
  - " I like rice." Ali said to me. → Ali told me that he liked rice.

لاحظ تحويلات أخرى لفعل القول :

- يمكن تحويل فعل القول إلى **promised / explained / admitted** حسب مضمون الكلام داخل الأقواس ولا يأتى بعدهم مفعول.

- He said to me, "I will help you." → He promised (that) he would help me.

٢ تحذف الأقواس وتربط بكلمة **that** ويمكن حذفها :

٣ يتم تحويل الضمائر بما يتوافق مع المتكلم والمخاطب :

ضمائر الفاعل	
Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
I	he / she
you	I / we
we	they

ضمائر المفعول	
Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
me	him / her
you	me / us
us	them

صفات الملكية	
Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
my	his / her
your	my / our
our	their

٤ يتم تحويل الظروف الزمنية وأسماء الإشارة كالتالى إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا وتبقى كما هى إذا كان فعل القول مضارعًا :

أسماء الإشارة	
Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
this these	that those
ظروف المكان	
here	there

التعبيرات الزمنية			
Direct Speech	Indirect Speech	Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
today	that day	tonight	that night
tomorrow	the following day	now	then
yesterday	the day before	ago	before
last week	the week before		

٥ يتم تحويل زمن الفعل كالتالى إذا كان فعل القول ماضيًا ويبقى كما هو إذا كان فعل القول مضارعًا :

Present Simple		Past Simple
1. "I like fish," said Sama.	→	- Sama said that she liked fish.
2. Ali said "My Mum doesn't get up late."	→	- Ali said that his mum didn't get up late.

Present Continuous		Past Continuous
1. "I'm writing a paragraph," Ali said to Ahmed.	→	- Ali told Ahmed (that) he was writing a paragraph.
2. "The children are playing in the garden," Nancy said.	→	- Nancy said (that) the children were playing in the garden.

Past Simple		Past Perfect
1. "I helped my mother", Adel said to me.	→	- Adel told me (that) he had helped his mother.
2. "We didn't enjoy the show," said my friends.	→	- My friends said (that) they hadn't enjoyed the show.

لاحظ : يمكن أن يبقى زمن الماضى البسيط كما هو ولا يُحول.

Present Perfect Simple		Past Perfect simple
1. "I've made a mistake," said Adel.	→	- Adel said (that) he had made a mistake.
2. "We haven't finished our homework" they said.	→	- They said (that) they had not finished their homework.

Modals		
can - will - has / have to - must - may - shall	→	could - would - had to - might - should
1. "It may rain," Sarah said to me.	→	- Sarah told me (that) it might rain.
2. "The bus will leave soon," said my friend.	→	- My friend said (that) the bus would leave soon.

لاحظ :

١. لا يتم تغيير الزمن إذا كان فعل القول **say (s)**

ex. - Mother says, "I am visiting your aunt tomorrow."
- Mother says that she is visiting my aunt tomorrow.

٢. لا يتم تغيير الأزمنة إذا كانت جملة القول تعبر عن حقائق

ex. - The teacher said, " Lions don't eat grass."
- The teacher said that lions don't eat grass.

٣. لا يتم تغيير الأزمنة إذا قيل الكلام منذ فترة قصيرة

ex. - Ayman said just now, "I am busy."
- Ayman said just now (that) he is busy.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

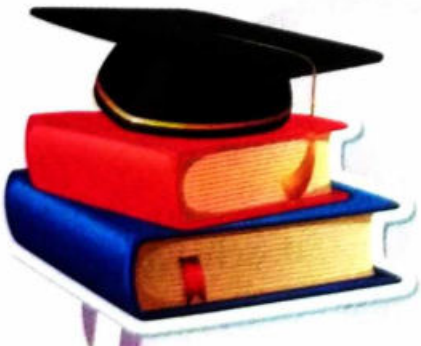
SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

1. WB Moustafa said that he ..... (be) tired. *(North Sinai 2023)*
2. He said that he ..... (be) eating. *(The Red Sea 2023)*
3. He ..... (tells) me that his best friend at school was Ahmed. *(The New Valley 2023)*

4. SB The police ..... (told) that lots of mobile phones had been stolen that year. *(Sharkia 2022)*
5. Amr told me that he ..... (travel) abroad the next week. *(Cairo 2022)*
6. Heba told me that her plane ..... (leaves) to London that day. *(Giza 2022)*
7. A witness ..... (told) that the building was on fire. *(Dakahlia 2022)*
8. Mariam told me that she was studying ..... (now). *(Minia 2022)*
9. SB The teacher ..... (said) us that the library was closed. *(Beni Suef 2022)*
10. SB The man told us that the football tournament would start ..... (tomorrow).
11. LM I said to Manal, " I ..... (had) just finished my work."
12. WB Lama said that she ..... (wants) to go to the new water park.
13. WB The teacher said that ..... (these) books were very interesting.
14. WB Heba said that they ..... (don't) go to the museum on Tuesday.

El-Moasser Exercises

15. My friend said that the bus ..... (will) leave soon.
16. Sara ..... (said) us that the new shop would open in two weeks.
17. Tarek said that ..... (him) was learning how to swim.



Quick Look

An hour before the exam

مراجعة المنهج
والتمكن منه فى ساعة
واحدة فقط فى نهاية ملحق

A Week is enough

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Mr Ayman is talking to Ahmed who came late to the office.

Ahmed : Good morning, Mr Ayman.

Mr Ayman : Good morning, Ahmed. Why are you late ?

Ahmed : Sorry, Mr Ayman. (1) ..... .

Mr Ayman : (2) ..... ?

Ahmed : I got up late because I had a toothache last night and I couldn't sleep well.

Mr Ayman : It's OK. (3) ..... ?

Ahmed : No, I didn't see a doctor because it was late. Can I have your permission to leave early today to see a doctor ?

Mr Ayman : (4) ..... . How are you feeling now ?

Ahmed : (5) ..... . Thanks a lot.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. LM A/An ..... is a person whose job is to understand, describe, and analyse a language.
   a. engineer b. discoverer c. foreigner d. linguist
2. WB To send a programme or some information by radio or TV means to ..... .
   a. donate b. broadcast c. include d. click
3. The verb "print" can be a noun by adding ..... . *(Luxor 2022)*
   a. –or b. –er c. –ur d. –ir
4. The film starts at ten o'clock. The synonym of "start" is ..... .
   a. fail b. stop c. begin d. achieve
5. I don't feel cold because this jacket makes me feel ..... .
   a. sad b. warm c. angry d. frightened
6. I read a true story on the internet yesterday. The word "true" means ..... .
   a. false b. inaccurate c. incorrect d. accurate

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He told me that it ..... (will be) a holiday the next day. *(Assiut 2023)*
2. The housewife ..... (say) the thief had stolen the house the last night. *(Cairo 2023)*
3. LM My father ..... (said to) us that he had bought a new mobile.
4. LM Sherif told me that ..... (him) was doing his work, so he couldn't go to the club with me.
5. "Lots of mobile phones ..... (steal) this year, "the police said. *(Alexandria 2023)*

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A biography of Safia el-Mohandes"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons

5 & 6

SB pages 51 & 52
WB pages 104 & 105

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

festival (n)	مهرجان	nature reserve (n)	محمية طبيعية
teenager (n)	مراهق	meeting (n)	اجتماع - مقابلة
apparently (adv)	على ما يبدو - بكل وضوح	skills (n)	مهارات
sports star (n)	بطل رياضى	climber (n)	متسلق
sports centre (n)	مركز رياضى	path (n)	طريق - ممر
volunteers (n)	متطوعين	news website (n)	موقع إخبارى

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

volunteers - festival - reserve - climber - sports star

1. The Citadel ..... was really fantastic.
2. Last week, we went to Ras Mohammed nature ..... .
3. Mohammed Salah is a popular ..... .
4. We need some ..... to clean our street today.

Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 104

traditional (adj)	تقليدى	phrase (n)	عبارة
sports team(n)	فريق رياضى	response (n)	رد - استجابة
tick (ed) (v)	يشير - يضع علامة	probably (adv)	من المحتمل
recently (adv)	حديثًا / مؤخرًا	pollution (n)	تلوث
national news (n)	الأخبار المحلية	Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة

Lesson 6

SB page 52 WB page 105

spelling mistakes (n)	أخطاء هجائية	jewellery (n)	مجوهرات
hours (n)	ساعات	possible (adj)	ممكن - محتمل
facts(n)	حقائق	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث

finally (adv)	أخيرًا - فى الختام	hole (n)	ثقب - حفرة
act (ed) (v)	يمثل - يؤدى دور	stadium (n)	استاد [رياضى]
TV news	نشرة الأخبار التليفزيونية	summarise (d) (v)	يلخص

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
meet	يقابل	met	met
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
get	يحصل على	got	got/gotten
sit	يجلس	sat	sat

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

do	an interview	يجرى حوار	**have**	a meeting	يعقد إجتماع
get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة		a picnic	يذهب فى نزهة
	lost	يضل الطريق	**make**	a question	يكون / يكتب سؤال
give	warning	يحذر		a mistake	يرتكب خطأ

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

apparently	according to what you have heard is true	على ما يبدو - من الواضح
festival	a day or time for people to celebrate something	مهرجان
meeting	a situation when groups of people meet to discuss something	اجتماع
according to	as said by someone or as shown by something	طبقًا لـ

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
normal	عادى - طبيعى	usual	abnormal - unusual	غير طبيعى - غير عادى
exciting	شيق - مثير	interesting	boring	ممل
true	صحيح	right - correct	false - wrong	خاطئ
difficult	صعب	hard	easy	سهل
wonderful	رائع	awesome-amazing	bad - terrible	ردئ - سيئ

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
un–	تعطى عكس المعنى	unable	غير قادر
ab–	تعطى عكس المعنى	abnormal	غير طبيعى
–ing	يحول من فعل إلى اسم	warning meeting	تحذير اجتماع
–er	يحول من فعل إلى اسم	climber	متسلق
–ion	يحول من فعل إلى اسم	pollution	تلوث
–ly	يكون الظرف من الصفة	apparently	على ما يبدو / بوضوح

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

That's good news!	هذه أخبار جيدة !	serve food	يقدم طعام
make ... easy to understand	يجعل ... سهل الفهم	take the wrong path	يتخذ الممر الخاطئ

Prepositions

according to	طبقا لـ	for a while	لمدة قصيرة
put on the news	يضع فى الأخبار	by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ
on the internet	على شبكة الإنترنت	respond to	يرد على
talk on the phone	يتحدث فى الهاتف	go out with	يخرج مع
spend a long time on	يقضى وقت طويلا على	go with	يتماشى مع
at first	فى البداية	go on	يستمر / يظل على
report on	يجرى تقرير عن	have a hat on	يرتدى قبعة
in TV news	فى الأخبار التليفزيونية	come out of	يخرج من

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

- on Lesson 5 SB page 51

Adel : Fawzi, did you know that they are having a new food **festival**[1] next month in our village.

Fawzi : Really? That's good. Why are they having it?

(1) مهرجان

B. CLIMBERS[4] FOUND!

Two men who **got lost**[5] when climbing a mountain have been found. The climbers took the wrong **path**[6] **by mistake**[7] and then one of them fell and broke his leg. They were on the mountain for four days. A police officer said, "They are tired and hungry but happy to be home."

(4) متسلقين | (5) يضل الطريق | (6) ممر/طريق | (7) عن طريق الخطأ

• on Lesson 7 WB page 106

"I've always liked taking photographs. **However**[1], I never wanted to be a photographer. I have always wanted to be a camera operator. It is a great job and it is always different. Today, I am working at a **sports stadium**[2]. Tomorrow, I will be working inside. I am **filming**[3] **a meeting**[4] with some important people ! I have never met the governor of Cairo before. I am **looking forward to**[5] it !"

(1) على الرغم من | (2) استاد رياضى | (3) يصور | (4) مقابلة | (5) يتطلع إلى

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

▸ Definitions

1. WB "....." means according to what you have heard is true.
   a. Unexpectedly b. About c. Apparently d. Really

▸ Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes

2. SB We use the suffix "....." to get the noun from the verb "warn".
   a. -ing b. -ly c. -or d. -ion
3. We add the prefix "....." to give the opposite of the adjective "normal".
   a. in- b. dis- c. ab- d. ir-

(Beni Suef 2022)

4. WB The suffix "....." can be used to get the noun from the verb "pollute".
   a. -ment b. -ion c. -ed d. -ly
5. WB I don't like poets. I think they are boring. The antonym of the word "boring" is ..... .
   a. lazy b. usual c. exciting d. similar
6. SB This project is wonderful. It will help develop the village. The synonym of the word "wonderful" is ..... .
   a. awesome b. similar c. usual d. boring

Guessing the meaning from the text

7. SB Hany is clever. He has the ..... to do this amazing job. *(Damietta 2022)*
   a. skill b. skull c. silk d. mask
8. WB The movie star acted in a new film. The word "acted" means "..... ".
   a. performed b. ticked c. planned d. happened

El-Moasser Exercises

Key vocabulary

9. He is thirteen years old, he is still a/an ..... .
   a. adult b. parent c. teenager d. worker
10. The ..... fell off the mountain and hurt his leg.
   a. center b. climber c. robot d. path
11. Mohamed Salah is a sports ..... . He's very famous.
   a. centre b. star c. cast d. skill

Definitions

12. A/An ..... is a situation when groups of people meet to discuss something.
   a. competition b. match c. meeting d. festival
13. The ..... is a day or time for people to celebrate something.
   a. competition b. interview c. meeting d. festival

Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes

14. The antonym of the word "true" is "..... ".
   a. fantastic b. correct c. false d. right
15. The test was really hard. The antonym of the word "hard" is "..... ".
   a. right b. difficult c. far d. easy
16. We add the suffix "....." to get the noun from "meet".
   a. -ment b. -ed c. -ly d. -ing

Guessing the meaning from the text

17. At first, it was exciting to be on TV but it is ..... for me now.
   a. normal b. interesting c. amazing d. wonderful
18. I am not sure they are at home. That's ..... .
   a. final b. possible c. fact d. news

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

19. Children spend a long time ..... their mobiles.
   a. in b. on c. within d. of
20. The editors decide the best article to ..... on the news.
   a. hang b. make c. put d. find

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand ○ Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Ashraf is phoning his friend Mustafa to congratulate him on passing his final exams.

Ashraf : Hello, Mustafa. How are you ?

Mustafa : (1) ..... .

Ashraf : (2) ..... ?

Mustafa : Yes. I've passed my final exams.

Ashraf : (3) ..... ! What about your marks ?

Mustafa : I got full marks. I couldn't believe myself.

Ashraf : Well done ! (4) ..... ?

Mustafa : The results are on the school website.

Ashraf : Can you send me the school website ?

Mustafa : (5) ..... .

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

climbing - climber - be - interested - dangerous - was

There are different kinds of sports like football and tennis. There are some (1) ..... sports. Some people do strange and dangerous sports. For example, my friend is (2) ..... in climbing mountains. He dreams of (3) ..... Mount Everest in the future to (4) ..... like Omar Samra who did it in May, 2013.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB A / An .....is a situation when groups of people meet to discuss something.

   a. tournament b. match c. meeting d. festival

2. ..... means as said by someone or as shown by something.

   a. Different to b. According to c. Depend on d. Proud of

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

3. We add the prefix "....." to get the opposite from the adjective "able".
   a. im– b. un– c. re– d. il–
4. The test was really difficult. The synonym of the word "difficult" is ..... .
   a. easy b. right c. hard d. possible
5. They spent an exciting day on the beach. This means they had a/an ..... day.
   a. wonderful b. boring c. awful d. difficult
6. She didn't intend to break it. She did it by ..... .
   a. mistake b. path c. nature d. festival

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. LM Sagda said that she ..... (has) met the new manager.
2. My mother ..... (told) me, "I will go shopping for an hour."
3. Ola ..... (says to) Nadeen that she wants to buy a nice bag.
4. Ali said that ..... (these) books had been very interesting. *(Luxor 2022)*
5. The witness ..... (told) that the building was on fire. *(South Sinai 2023)*

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of the job of the journalist"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Vocabulary

journalist	صحفى
newsreader	قارئ الأخبار
editor	محرر صحفى
water pipe	ماسورة مياه
witness	شاهد
local	محلى
warning	تحذير
path	ممر
tournament	بطولة / دورة [مباريات]
climate change	تغير المناخ
tourism	السياحة
trust	يثق/ثقة
article	مقال
governor	محافظ
interview	مقابلة شخصية
normal	طبيعى
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
accident	حادث
apparently	على ما يبدو
sports star	نجم رياضى
the press	الصحافة
stuck	عالق

Language

• Reported speech "statement"

الجملة الخبرية فى صيغة الكلام غير المباشر

Using reporting verbs such as : say/ tell / explain

• changing tenses

* Ahmed said, "This park is the biggest in Egypt".
* Ahmed said that that park was the biggest in Egypt.

Speaking

1. Discussing types of news مناقشة أنواع الأخبار

A : Which type of media do you trust most ?

B : I prefer the newspapers and TV programmes.

2. Describing a picture from the news.

وصف صورة من الأخبار

A : What caused this flood in the city centre ?

B : The picture shows that a large water pipe burst.

3. Reporting news : تقديم تقارير إخبارية

A : Have you heard that a famous sports star is going to visit our village ?

B : Really ?

A : Yes. According to the newspaper, the famous football player is going to watch a children's match at the sports centre.

B : That's good.

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Giving details

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [معرفة التفاصيل الدقيقة فى النص].

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

Mustafa Mahmoud was an Egyptian doctor, philosopher and author. He was born in Shibin El-Kom, Monufia in 1921. His father worked as a secretary in the governorate of El-Gharbia. His father's long-time illness, patience, faith and pure nature had a great effect on his character and writings and also remained in his mind throughout his life.

- Where was Mustafa Mahmoud born ?

.....

التحدى عندما اقرأ الفقرة الإنشائية لا أستطيع الإجابة عن الأسئلة التى تطلب تفاصيل دقيقة بها.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة يفضل أن تتوقف بعد كل فقرة لتراجع ما قد فهمته عن تلك الفقرة حتى تستطيع فهم كل التفاصيل فى فقرات النص.

2 Speaking

Types of media

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة

Finish the following dialogue :

Mona is talking to her friend Amal who seems worried.

Mona : Hello Amal ! What's wrong with you ?

Amal : Hello Mona ! (1) ..... .

Mona : (2) ..... ?

Amal : Because I have an interview for a job tomorrow.

Mona : (3) ..... ?

Amal : It's a job in the media.

Mona : Really ! Which job would you like to do in the media ?

Amal : (4) ..... .

Mona : Great ! You have a good voice and you like reading. I hope you will get the job.

Amal : (5) ..... .

(Fayoum 2022)

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [وسائل الاعلام] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Writing

يختبر سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية معرفتك لقدر كاف من المفردات وقدرتك على كتابة جمل تعبر عن الموضوع.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [تقرير اخبارى عن فيضان في وسط المدينة] و [السيرة الذاتية للإذاعى فاروق شوشة] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraph
Flood in the city centre	Write the meaning : ..... عالق ..... ماسورة ..... شاهد عيان ..... يستبدل ..... وسط المدينة	Complete the sentences : 1. Yesterday morning, part of the ..... was under water for more than six hours. 2. A large water ..... burst and the road was closed all day. 3. A local ..... said that there was a lot of water in the road. 4. The witness said also that he saw a man who was ..... and angry. 5. People ..... the pipe with a new strong one.	Write a review on : *"Flood in the city centre"* ....
Farouk Shosha	..... ولد ..... تخرج ..... الشعر ..... قام بتقديم ..... مذيع راديو ..... جائزة	1. Farouk Shousha is a well-known ..... and a famous poet . 2. He was ..... in Damietta in 1936. 3. He ..... from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum in 1956. 4. He always liked ..... and Arabic literature . 5. He ..... many programmes like "Our Beautiful Language and "Cultural Evening".	Write a biography about : *"Farouk Shousha"* .... تدريب تلقائى على مهارة الكتابة

Questions collected from previous exams & longman

1. LM **Read and complete the text with words from the following list :**

do – make – for – newsreader – since – presenter

My brother Hazem hopes to find a good job. He has been thinking about media (1) ..... a long time. He doesn't like to be on TV as a (2) ..... because he would be nervous. Instead, he wants to be a radio (3) ..... ; that would be cool ! So, he will work hard to (4) ..... more success in his new job by all means.

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The ability to do something well is a ..... . *(Dakahlia 2023)*
   a. lifestyle b. research c. skill d. race
2. A/An ..... is a person who reads the news on the radio or TV. *(Beheira 2023)*
   a. designer b. journalist c. editor d. newsreader
3. That plane is enormous ! ..... is the synonym of "enormous" *(Sharkia 2023)*
   a. Little b. Huge c. Tiny d. Local
4. A/An ..... is a person who specialises in languages.
   a. astronaut b. linguist c. reporter d. programmer *(Qena 2023)*
5. LM When did the police arrive ? "Arrive" here can be replaced by "..... ".
   a. go b. get c. reach d. come
6. LM I couldn't buy the T-shirt I liked because the clothes shop was closed. "Closed" here has the opposite meaning of "..... ".
   a. late b. delayed c. broken d. open
7. LM It's probable that it will be sunny tomorrow. To change "probable" into an adverb, delete "e" and add "..... ".
   a. –ily b. –ly c. –lly d. –ies
8. LM ..... is a play for the theatre, radio, or television.
   a. Drawing b. Music
   c. Photography d. Drama
9. LM Unfortunately, the old man wasn't saved. "Unfortunately" can be replaced by "..... ".
   a. uncommonly b. unluckily
   c. interestingly d. lately
10. My friend is angry. He must be ..... about what I did.
    a. pleased b. enjoyable c. injured d. cross *(Ismailia 2022)*

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Mariam ..... (told) that she was ill the day before. *(Suez 2023)*
2. A witness ..... (said) the police that the building was on fire. *(Dakahlia 2023)*
3. Mona said she ..... (be) tired that day. *(Giza 2023)*
4. Omar ..... (told) he would come late that day. *(Beheira 2023)*
5. Noha ..... (said) us that she was busy. *(Minia 2023)*
6. Manal ..... (said) me, "I have seen this movie". *(Sharkia 2023)*
7. LM Yasser said that he ..... (is meeting) his close friends.
8. LM When my father was young, he usually ..... (walks) to school.
9. LM Did he ..... (found) your mobile ?
10. LM Sami said that they ..... (don't go) to the park the week before.

Test on unit 11

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

1 Finish the following dialogue :

قم بحل اختبار تراكمى فى الملحق

Adham is asking his cousin Jana about the job that she would like to do in the future.

Adham : Good evening !

Jana : Good evening !

Adham : Jana, we had a nice English lesson at school today.

Jana : (1) ..... ! What was it about ?

Adham : It was about jobs. (2) ..... ?

Jana : I would like to be an English teacher. (3) ..... ?

Adham : I'd like to be a doctor. Why would you like to be an English teacher ?

Jana : (4) ..... . Why would you like to be an English teacher ?

Adham : (5) ..... .

Jana : Excellent ! Helping ill people is something great.

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....

4. ..... 5. .....

2 LM Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

do – have passed – operator – had passed – designer – applied

I'm pleased to tell you some good news. Last month, I (1) ..... for a new job. Yesterday, the secretary told me that I (2) ..... the interview. I'm happy to (3) ..... the job I prefer. I'm going to work as a camera (4) ..... for a famous TV channel. What about your work ? I hope you'll have more success in your career.

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. .....

3. ..... 4. .....

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Damietta is famous for its great thinkers, writers and poets. One of them is Farouk Shousha who is a well-known poet and a famous radio presenter. He was born in Damietta in 1936. At his early age, he used to go to the local library and was able to read a lot of books in the Arabic language. In 1956 he graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum in Cairo University.

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

Farouk Shousha always liked poetry and Arabic literature. He worked as a radio and a TV presenter. He presented many famous programmes which most people liked so much like "Our Beautiful Language" and "Cultural Evening" which both lasted for about 15 years without stopping.

In his programmes, he talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and showed **its** rich literature. For this reason, he was called "the guardian of the Arabic language". Shousha won the Nile Prize for literature in 2016. We all still remember his great works even after his death.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The main idea of the passage is about ..... .
   a. New Damietta b. Cultural Evening
   c. Farouk Shousha d. Our beautiful language
2. The underlined word "**its**" in the third paragraph refers to ..... .
   a. the Arabic language b. the English language
   c. TV programs d. radio programs
3. Farouk won the Nile Prize for literature in ..... .
   a. 1936 b. 1956 c. 2016 d. 2000

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Name a famous program that Farouk Shousha presented.

   .....

5. Summarize the last paragraph in the text in one sentence.

   .....

6. Where do you think Farouk could read many books in the Arabic language when he was young ?

   .....

(Damietta 2023)

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My teacher told me not to be late again. He gave me a ..... . *(Giza 2023)*
   a. promise b. warning c. witness d. present
2. Our teacher taught us how to recycle the old plastic bottles. "Recycle" means ..... them.
   a. join b. reuse c. retire d. collect

3. A/An ..... is the person who researches and writes news articles.
   a. engineer b. journalist c. operator d. officer
4. To form the opposite of the adjective "usual", we add the prefix "..... ".
   a. ab- b. un- c. dis- d. il-
5. WB ..... is the sound that you make when you speak or sing.
   a. Voice b. Broadcast c. Career d. Media
6. The synonym of "normal" is ..... .
   a. abnormal b. usual c. unusual d. boring

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. LM Basma told me that she wouldn't go to her village the ..... (last) weekend.
2. WB When I was young, I always ..... (talk) to my teachers politely.
3. WB We ..... (paint) our house alone last week.
4. Shereen said that she ..... (didn't) watched the film the day before. *(Qalyoubia 2022)*
5. Our teacher said ..... (this) he had explained the lesson twice.

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A biography of Farouk Shousha"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 11 for Al-Azhar students اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Yara are talking about a new water park.

Mona : Hi, Yara. How are things ?

Yara : I'm fine, thanks.

Mona : Did you hear about the new water park in Cairo ?

Yara : (1) ..... . Where is it ?

Mona : It's in downtown.

Yara : (2) ..... ?

Mona : It took two years to be built.

Yara : What about spending the weekend there ?

Mona : (3) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The manager said that he ..... the clients the day after. *(Menofia Zone 202*
   a. meet b. would meet c. met d. will meet
2. The man ..... us that he would attend the meeting. *(Sohag Zone 202*
   a. said b. told c. asked d. said to
3. To ..... is to send a programme or some information by radio or TV. *(Beheira Zone 202*
   a. retire b. present c. award d. broadcast
4. We should try to get our news from trusted ..... online.
   a. websites b. situations c. operations d. locations

3 Write a paragraph of SIX sentences on :

"The job of a journalist"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :**

Sara and Nawal are talking about jobs in the media .

Sara : Would you like to have a job in the media ?

Nawal : (1) ..... .

a. Yes, of course b. No, I didn't
c. I am ten years old d. I visited the zoo

Sara : What job would you like to do ?

Nawal : (2) ..... .

a. I would like to be a dentist
b. I would like to be an engineer
c. I would like to be a journalist
d. I would like to be a teacher

Sara : (3) .....

a. Why would you like to be a teacher ?
b. Why would you like to be a journalist ?
c. Where would you like to be ?
d. When did you get up ?

Nawal : Because I love writing and I am interested in the news.

Sara : I think you will be successful.

Nawal : (4) .....

a. How old are you ?
b. Where do you live ?
c. What about you ?
d. How do you go to school ?

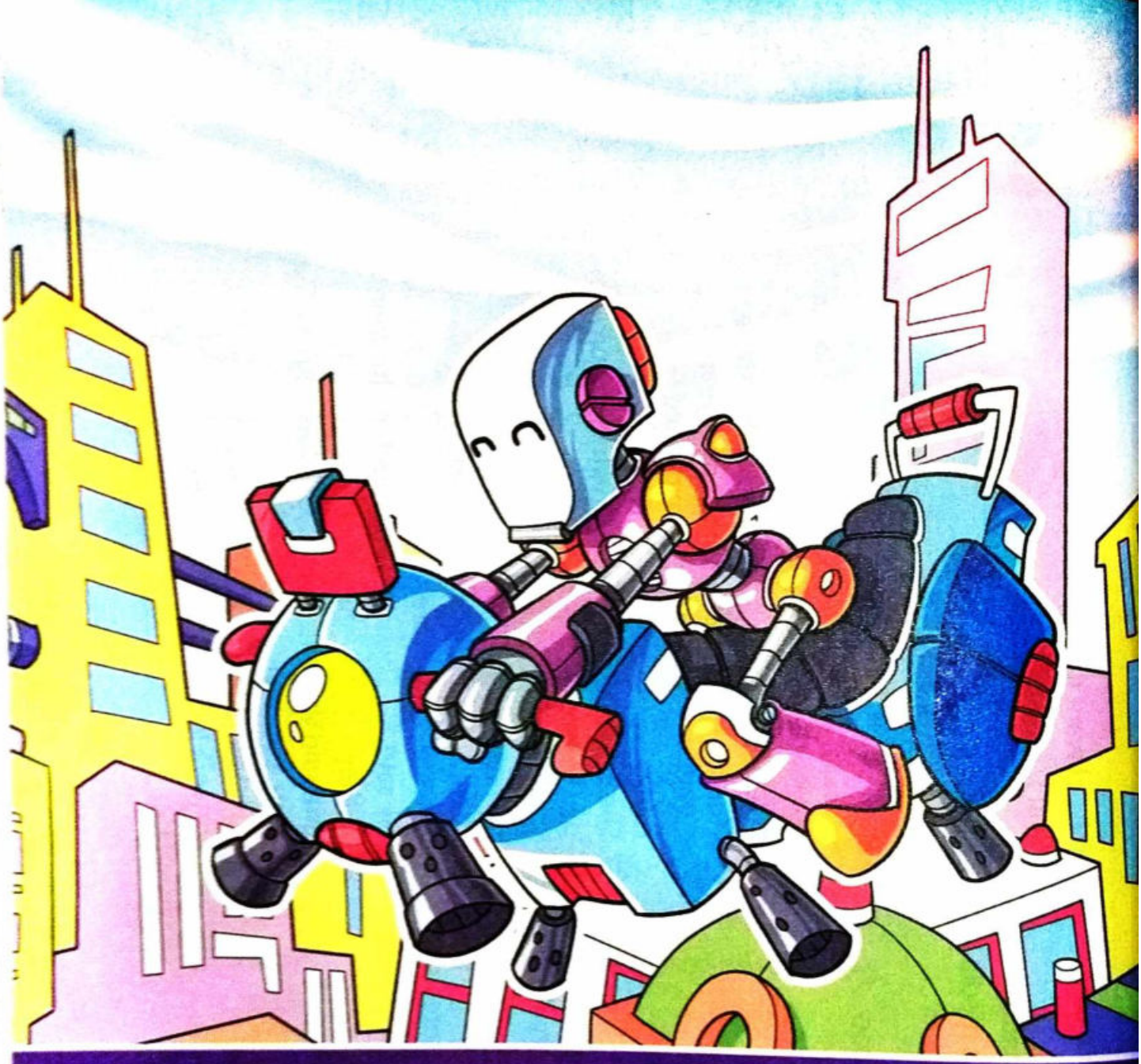
Sara : I want to be a web designer.

Nawal : (5) ..... .

a. I think it is a wonderful job
b. I would eat fish
c. I am thirsty
d. I will buy a car

* **Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :**

6. The owner ..... **(explains)** that there would be over 100 new jobs next year.
   a. told b. explained
   c. tells d. tell
7. She said that she ..... **(wins)** the prize the day before.
   a. had won b. will win
   c. wins d. have won
8. There ..... **(is)** a colour festival last week.
   a. were b. are c. was d. am
9. He said ..... **(them)** would see his friend.
   a. they b. she c. I d. he
10. She said that she ..... **(is looking)** for her keys.
   a. was looking b. looks
   c. were looking d. look



Unit 12 Into the future

SB pages 54:63 WB pages 107:113

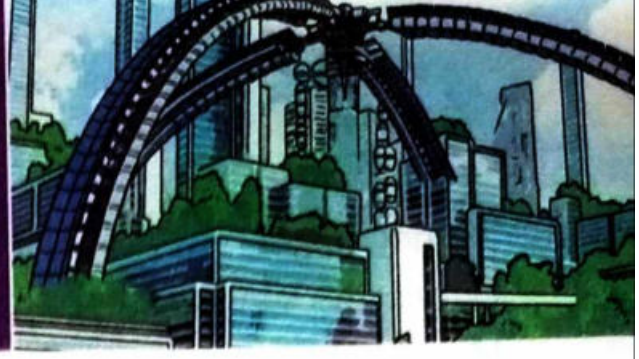
Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  A text about future technology; a blog about personal goals; an article about future cities in Africa; a text about driverless cars
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph about personal goals and ambitions; a short report about a future technology
- **Listening :**
  A conversation about future predictions; a radio programme about learning in the future; students talking about their goals; talking about a city in the future
- **Speaking :**
  Making predictions; discussing future ability; discussing personal goals; expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future
- **Language :**
  will / won't be able to
- **Life Skills :**
  Critical thinking and self-management

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 54 : 57
WB pages 107 & 108



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

cycle lane (n)	حارة ركوب الدراجات / ممشى الدراجات	robotics engineer (n)	مهندس أجهزة إنسان آلى [روبوتات]
electric bus (n)	حافلة كهربائية		
e-sports player (n)	لاعب رياضات الكترونية	3D printer (n)	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد
assistant (n)	مساعد	solution (n)	حل
device (n)	جهاز	temperature (n)	درجة حرارة
firefighter (n)	رجل إطفاء	virtual reality (n)	الواقع الافتراضى

Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

cycle lane – 3D printer – temperature – firefighters – devices

1. The ..... today is quite high.
2. Some ..... saved the young boys from the fire.
3. The cell phone is one of the most important ..... for people all over the world.
4. It's forbidden to drive a car here. It's a ..... .

Lesson 1

SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 107

Arab (n/adj)	شخص عربى - عربى [الجنسية]	prediction (n)	تنبؤ - نبوءة
lane (n)	حارة / ممشى	robot (n)	إنسان آلى
e-sports (n)	الرياضات الإلكترونية	robotics (n)	علم الروبوتات
hero (n)	بطل	3D = three - dimensional (adj)	ثلاثى الأبعاد
electricity (n)	الكهرباء	percent (n)	بالمائة

Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 108

apply(ied) (v)	يتقدم بطلب	challenge (n)	تحدى
coronavirus (n)	فيروس كورونا	print (ed) (v)	يطبع

during (prep)	أثناء	mask (n)	قناع
fabric (n)	قماش	online learning (n)	التعلم على الإنترنت
farmland (n)	أرض زراعية	price (n)	سعر / ثمن
floating (adj)	عائم	produce (d) (v)	يولد / ينتج
robot teacher (n)	مُعلِّم آلي	solar panels (n)	الخلايا الشمسية
business meeting (n)	اجتماع عمل	passport (n)	جواز سفر
seal (n)	فقمة [عجل البحر]	pandemic (n)	جائحة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
rise	يرتفع	rose	risen
hurt	يؤذي / يؤلم	hurt	hurt

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

assistant	somebody who helps a person do their job	مساعد
device	• a machine or equipment for a particular job • electric equipment that can do a special job	جهاز
e-sports player	a player of online video games	لاعب رياضات إلكترونية
online learning	education or teaching that you can have on the internet	التعلم عن بعد
robotics engineer	a person whose job is to design or work with robots	مهندس أجهزة إنسان آلي
solution	• a way to deal with or answer a puzzle or question • a way to solve a problem or answer a question	حل
3D printer	a machine that can make copies of whole objects	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد
temperature	how hot or cold something is	درجة الحرارة
virtual reality	when a computer makes you think that you are in a real place using pictures and sound	الواقع الافتراضي
cycle lane	a special place where people can cycle on roads	حارة ركوب الدراجات / ممشى الدراجات
feed	to give food to a person or an animal	يطعم

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

leave	university	ينهى الدراسة الجامعية	use	online learning يستخدم التعلم عن بعد
make	predictions	يتنبأ	do	projects يقوم بعمل مشاريع
	designs	يصنع تصميمات		presentations يقوم بأداء عرض تقديمى
	3D models	يصنع نماذج ثلاثية الأبعاد		homework يقوم بأداء الواجب المدرسى
ride	bikes	يركب الدراجات		
grow	food	يزرع محاصيل غذائية		

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
advantage	ميزة	merit	disadvantage / demerit	عيب
safe	آمن	protected	dangerous / unsafe	خطير / غير آمن
rise	يرتفع	increase	decline / decrease	يُقلِّل
check	يفحص	examine / test	ignore	يتجاهل
hurt	يؤذى / يؤلم	damage / injure	cure	يعالج
ability	القدرة	capability	inability	عجز / عدم القدرة
float	يطفو	drift	sink	يغوص (للأشياء)
leave	يغادر	depart	arrive - come	يصل

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-ic	تكون صفة من الاسم	Arabic heroic robotic	اللغة العربية بطولى آلى
-ment	تكون الاسم من الفعل	equipment	معدات
-ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	importantly	على نحو مهم
-er	تكون الاسم من الفعل	player printer	لاعب طابعة
-ant	تكون الاسم من الفعل	assistant	مساعد
-ity	تكون الاسم من الصفة	reality	حقيقة - واقع
-ion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	prediction	تنبؤ

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 advice / a device

* advice (n) — نصيحة (اسم لا يُعد)
  - My **advice** to you is to exercise more and more to get fitter.
* device — جهاز (اسم يُعد) يؤدى وظيفة معينة
  - This **device** is used to check people's temperatures.

SB page 56 - WB page 108

2 pandemic - epidemic

* pandemic — جائحة [إنتشار مرض بشكل سريع حول العالم]
  - Coronavirus **pandemic** is worrying the whole world.
* epidemic — وباء [إنتشار مرض بشكل سريع فى مكان محدد]
  - Plague مرض الطاعون has become an **epidemic** in some countries.

SB page 56

3 virtue - virtual

* virtue (n) — الفضيلة [صفات حسنة]
  - Loyalty الولاء , courage الشجاعة and respecting the old are great **virtues**.
* virtual (adj) — إفتراضى / واقعى
  - Facebook is a **virtual** world.
  - Virtual games have become popular among children and adults.

SB page 57

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
keep people safe	يحافظ على الناس آمنين	apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ
produce electricity	ينتج كهرباء	in about a year's time	خلال حوالى عام
waste less food	يضيع طعام أقل	in the same way	بنفس الطريقة
Have you heard of... ?	هل سبق لك أن سمعت عن ... ؟	move up	يرتفع/يتصاعد
That's a pity !	هذا مؤسف !	save ... from	ينقذ ... من
wear masks	يرتدى أقنعة	in the correct order	فى الترتيب الصحيح
build floating farms	يبنى مزارع عائمة	in different ways	بطرق مختلفة
		around one third of...	حوالى ثلث...

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

Definitions

1. WB A ..... is a way to deal with or answer a puzzle or question.
   a. temperature b. solution c. device d. problem
2. WB A/An ..... is a special place where people can cycle on roads.
   a. cycle lane b. bank c. airport d. station
3. WB ..... means how hot or cold something is.
   a. Culture b. Future c. Temperature d. Tradition

Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes

4. I feed my cat twice a day. The word "feed" means to "..... ".
   a. talk to b. clean up c. play with d. give food
   (The Red Sea 2023)
5. LM What are the advantages of online learning. "Advantages" is the opposite of the meaning of "..... ".
   a. demerits b. benefits c. cause d. results
6. Prices are rising all over the world. "Rise" here is similar in meaning to "..... ".
   a. improve b. move c. decrease d. increase
7. SB To get the adjective of "hero", we add the suffix "..... ". *(Dakahlia 2023)*
   a. -ern b. -ic c. -y d. -able
8. To give the opposite of the word "ability", we add the prefix "..... ".
   a. in- b. il- c. ir- d. un-
   (Suez 2022)

Guessing the meaning from the text

9. SB My mother is studying, but she doesn't visit the university. She uses ..... .
   a. equipment b. online learning c. electricity d. cycles
10. LM ..... buses don't pollute the environment.
    a. Traditional b. Electric c. Old d. Oil-powered

El-Moasser Exercises

Key vocabulary

11. He is interested in designing or working with robots. He is a/an ..... .
    a. sailor b. pilot
    c. robotics engineer d. astronaut

12. The brave ..... saved the child from the fire.
a. printer b. firefighter c. fireworks d. fabric

13. At the museum, you can see how the Ancient Egyptians lived using ..... .
a. solution b. virtual reality c. temperature d. online learning

▶ **Definitions**

14. A ..... is a machine that can make copies of whole objects.
a. 3D shop b. 3D printer c. 3D speed d. 3D market

15. A/An ..... is electric equipment that can do a special job.
a. pandemic b. device c. lane d. solution

▶ **Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes**

16. To make the noun of the verb "equip", we add the suffix "..... ".
a. -ost b. -er c. -ness d. -ment

17. The antonym of "leave" is ..... .
a. depart b. quit c. drift d. arrive

18. You should have your teeth checked by a dentist at least twice a year. The synonym of the word "checked" is ..... .
a. ignored b. examined c. decreased d. declined

▶ **Guessing the meaning from the text**

19. I can't pay the price of this bag. This means it ..... much money.
a. costs b. weighs c. talks d. writes

▶ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

20. Wind can be used to ..... electricity.
a. produce b. reduce c. introduce d. feed

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▶ **Asking and answering questions about making predictions and future ability :** توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن عمل تنبؤات والتعبير عن القدرة المستقبلية :

Questions	Answers
1. What do you think people will ride in the future ? ١. ما وسيلة المواصلات التى تعتقد سوف يقوم الأشخاص بقيادتها فى المستقبل ؟	- I think that more people will ride bikes in the future. - اعتقد أن عدد أكبر من الأشخاص سيقوم بقيادة الدراجات فى المستقبل.
2. Do you think e-sports will become more popular than football ? ٢. هل تعتقد أن الرياضات الإلكترونية سوف تصبح أكثر انتشارًا من كرة القدم ؟	- No. I think they won't be more popular than football. - لا. اعتقد أنهم لن يكونوا أكثر انتشارًا من كرة القدم.

Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية	Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث	Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابه
Read and complete : 1. What do you think the role of ..... will be in the future ? أجهزة الإنسان الآلى - There will be robot in hospitals, shops, etc. 2. Why do you think that we couldn't use robot ..... in schools ? مساعدين - Because it would be very ..... to make a robot that could teach a lesson. صعب	**Finish the following dialogue :** **Amal and Sama are talking about technology and robots.** **Amal** : Good afternoon, Sama. I watched a documentary last night. **Sama** : Good afternoon, Amal. (1) ..... ? **Amal** : It was about the future technology. **Sama** : Did it talk about robots ? **Amal** : (2) ..... . **Sama** : Do you think that we could use robot assistants in schools ? **Amal** : (3) ..... . **Sama** : (4) ..... ? **Amal** : I think so because it would be very difficult to make a robot that could teach a lesson. **Sama** : I think life will be easier in the future. **Amal** : (5)	**Write a review on :** **"The future technology"** ....

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(A) Yes / No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

Will (سوف) + subject (الفاعل) + be able to + [inf.] (مصدر الفعل) + ... ?

ex. - Will we all be able to travel to space ?
* Yes, you will. * No, you won't.

(B) Wh - question : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة إستفهام :

Question word (كلمة الاستفهام) + will (سوف) + subject (الفاعل) + be able to + [inf.] (مصدر الفعل) + ... ?

ex. - What will you be able to do in the future ?

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

1. LM Do you think we ..... (be able to) live on the moon in the future ?
2. LM Perhaps, Amani ..... (may) be the new secretary.
3. SB In the future, more people ..... (learn) online. *(Aswan 2022)*
4. SB By 2100, 95 percent of people ..... (lived) in tall buildings.
5. WB What ..... (are) the weather be like tomorrow ?
6. WB How big ..... (Cairo be) in 2050 ?
7. WB Talia speaks Japanese, so she ..... (will able) to apply for the job in Tokyo.
8. WB Hamid can't find his passport. He ..... (not be able) to travel to the business meeting in England tomorrow.
9. SB Nawal hopes that she will be able to ..... (working) as an engineer when she's older.
10. WB They ..... (not be) able to feed the monkeys tomorrow.

El-Moasser Exercises

11. The journey to Aswan will ..... (took) only 12 hours.
12. What materials will the house ..... (being) made of ?
13. What will the houses ..... (looking) like ?
14. I think there ..... (be) lots of solar panels in the future.
15. I think we will ..... (using) electric cars in the future.

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Essam and Adel are talking about next summer holiday.

Essam : Hello, Adel. Where will you go next summer holiday ?

Adel : (1) ..... .

Essam : Sharm El-Sheikh ! (2) ..... ?

Adel : I will go with my friend Asser.

Essam : (3) ..... ?

Adel : No, we will stay in a hotel.

Essam : How will you go ?

Adel : (4) ..... .

Essam : How long will you stay there ?

Adel : (5) ..... . *(Qalyoubia 2023)*

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

ride - will - drive - solution - won't - lanes

Scientists have a lot of expectations for the future. They expect they will find a (1) ..... to the problem of pollution. The government will build cycle (2) ..... . People (3) ..... do a lot of things to have a cleaner environment. They will (4) ..... modern, fast bikes and plant more trees to reduce pollution.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We add the suffix "....." to get the noun of "assist".

a. -ant b. -ment c. -al d. -ity

2. WB ..... is education or teaching that you can have on the internet.

a. Solar panel b. Virtual reality

c. Online learning d. Business meeting

● Understand ○ Apply ● Create

3. A doctor checks people who are ill. The word "checks" is the same as ..... .

a. ignores b. examines c. damages d. loses

4. It is safe to stay here. The antonym of the word "safe" is ..... .

a. dangerous b. smart c. fat d. tasty

5. He can't solve the problem easily. It is a real ..... for him.

a. change b. charge c. challenge d. fun

6. WB A/An ..... player is a player of online video games.

a. gymnastics b. handball c. e-sports d. tennis

4 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of how learning will be like in the future"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons

3 & 4

SB pages 58 : 60
WB pages 109 & 110

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

internship (n)	فترة تدريب	distance (n)	مسافة
marathon (n)	سباق الجرى [ماراثون]	set up (phr. v)	ينشئ / يُقيم
professional qualification	مؤهل مِهنى	skill (n)	مهارة
monorail(n)	قطار أحادى الخط [مونوريل]	dream(n)	حلم
business district(n)	منطقة الأعمال التجارية	cashless(adj)	غير نقدى

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

marathon – internship – distance – set up – skill

1. What is the ..... between Cairo and Alex ?
2. Mohammed Salah has a great ..... in controlling the ball.
3. My uncle ..... a new business last week.
4. The period of training to do something is called ..... .

Lesson 3

SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 109

explore (d) (v)	يستكشف	achieve(d)	ينجز
goal (n)	هدف	train(ed)(v)	يتدرب
improve (d) (v)	يُحسن - يتحسن	apartment (n)	شقة سكنية
local (adj)	محلى	architect	مهندس معمارى
online course	دورة تدريبية على الإنترنت	engineering (n)	الهندسة
professional (adj)	محترف	sports person (n)	لاعب رياضى
accountant (n)	محاسب	sports team (n)	فريق رياضى
ambitions (n)	طموحات	university (n)	الجامعة
dictionary(n)	قاموس-معجم	volunteer (n)	متطوع
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية	business person	صاحب أعمال تجارية

Lesson 4

SB pages 60 WB page 110

African (adj)	افريقى	public transport (n)	المواصلات العامة
capital (n)	العاصمة	rainwater (n)	ماء المطر
disability (n)	إعاقة	renewable (adj)	مُتجدد
disabled (adj)	من ذوى الهمم	sports stadium (n)	ستاد رياضى
link (ed) (v)	يصل / يربط	roofs (n)	أسقف
smart (adj)	ذكى	expert (n)	خبير
population (n)	تعداد السكان	wind turbine (n)	طاحونة الرياح

New places

أماكن جديدة

New Administrative Capital العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة	Green City Kigali المدينة الخضراء (فى كيجالى عاصمة روندا)
Diamniado Lake City مدينة ديامينيادو (فى داكار عاصمة السنغال)	The Gate Towers أبراج البوابة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
rewrite	يعيد كتابة	rewrote	rewritten
redo	يعيد القيام بـ	redid	redone
throw	يلقى	threw	thrown

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

distance (n)	how much space is between two places or things	مسافة
internship (n)	when you work, often without pay, to learn about a job	فترة تدريب (الامتياز)
marathon (n)	a running race of around 42 kilometres	سباق الجرى (ماراثون)
professional qualification	something that shows you have special training to do a job	مؤهل مهنى
set up (phr.v)	to start a business	ينشئ / يُقيم
skill (n)	the ability to do something well	مهارة
district	an area of a town, city or the countryside	منطقة/مقاطعة
monorail	a railway system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground	قطار أحادى الخط (مونوريل)
cashless	done without using money you can hold	غير نقدى

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

get	a professional qualification	يحصل على مؤهل مهنى	meet	new people	يقابل أشخاص جدد
	a good job	يحصل على وظيفة جيدة	start	a business	يبدأ مشروع تجارى
	an internship	يحصل على فترة تدريب	do	an online course	يحضر دورة تدريبية على الإنترنت
join	a sports team	ينضم لفريق رياضى		the marathon	يشارك فى سباق العدو
make	a plan	يُخطط		a job	يقوم بأداء وظيفة
set	a goal	يُحدد هدف		an internship	يقوم بأداء فترة التدريب
give	a home to	يعطى مأوى/ مسكن لـ			

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
improve	يحسن	develop	damage	يدمر
professional	محترف	expert	amateur	هاوٍ
set up	يؤسس	start / organize	finish / stop	ينهى / يوقف
link	يصل - يربط	connect	disconnect	يقطع الاتصال - يفصل
online	متصل بالإنترنت	connected to the internet	offline	غير متصل
succeed in	ينجح فى	pass / achieve	fail	يفشل
ask	يسأل - يطلب	inquire	give / reply	يعطى / يرد

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
mono-	تستخدم بمعنى إحادى	monorail	قطار إحادى الخط
re-	يقوم بأداء الفعل مرة ثانية	replay redo	يعيد لعب - يذيع شئ مسجل يعيد فعل شئ
dis-	تعطى عكس المعنى	disability	إعاقة
-al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	professional	إحترافى / مهنى
-ant	تحول الفعل إلى إسم	accountant	محاسب
-less	تعطى عكس المعنى	driverless cashless	بدون سائق غير نقدى
-ive	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	administrative	إدارى

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
do the Egyptian marathon	يشارك فى المارثون المصرى	get on	يركب [وسيلة مواصلات]
achieve goals	يحقق أهداف	take... away from	يأخذ... بعيدًا عن
burn fossil fuels for	يحرق الوقود الحفرى لـ	goals for the future	أهداف مستقبلية
twice as many people	ضعف عدد السكان	at the entrance to	فى مدخل/عند مدخل
set up a business	يؤسس شركة / أعمال تجارية	work without pay	يعمل بدون مقابل / أجر
		throw away	يلقى / يتخلص من

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

- on Lesson 3 SB page 58

Narrator : Taha

Taha : **First of all**(1), I want to finish my **education**(2) and do well in my exams. But when I leave school, I don't want to become a business person or an **accountant**(3). My dream is to become a **professional**(4) basketball player. I've been playing basketball since I was six and I love it. I play for my local team. I practise every evening, because I want to **improve**(5) my skills. My **ambition**(6) is to join the **national team**(7) and play for my country.

Narrator : Fatma

Fatma : My ambition is to become an architect. I think it would be amazing to look at buildings in a city that I had designed. I know it won't be easy, so I'm going to work very hard. I need to pass my exams to go to university. When I've finished university, I'm going to get an **internship**(8) with a good **company**(9).

(1) فى البداية | (2) تعليم | (3) محاسب | (4) محترف | (5) يحسن - يطور | (6) طموح | (7) الفريق القومى | (8) فترة تدريبية | (9) شركة

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB , Previous Exams & Longman

Definitions

1. WB A/An ..... is a railway system that uses a single rail, usually high above the ground.
   a. monorail b. lane c. train d. airport
2. LM A/An ..... is a person who designs building and advises on their construction.
   a. architect b. builder c. doctor d. trader
3. WB The ability of doing something well is ..... . *(Qalubia 2022)*
   a. sale b. skull c. skill d. sail
4. WB ..... is how much space is between two places or things.
   a. Assistant b. Pollution c. Distance d. Internship

Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes

5. SB You need to pass a test to get into a technical school. The synonym of the word "pass" is ..... .
   a. fail in b. look for c. look out d. succeed in
6. LM Rami qualified as an engineer. To change "qualify" into a noun, delete "y" and add "....." .
   a. -iness b. -ity c. -ication d. -cation
7. WB The antonym of "....." is offline.
   a. disconnected b. online c. delivered d. dead

Guessing the meaning from the text

8. LM I always try to make my skills better. I try to ..... them.
   a. remain b. decrease c. remove d. improve
9. SB When someone can't use a part of their body, this means he/she is ..... .
   a. professional b. disabled c. amateur d. renewable
10. Khaled would like to set up his own business, the verb "set up" means ..... . *(Aswan 2022)*
    a. finish b. start c. play d. use

El-Moasser Exercises

Key vocabulary

11. Many young people take a/an ..... in business to learn about the job.
    a. entrance b. distance c. internship d. marathon

12. My ..... job is a robotic engineer. I'll study hard to achieve it.
a. medicine b. skill c. space d. dream

Definitions

13. A ..... is a running race of around 42 kilometres.
a. team b. marathon c. canoe d. goal

14. Something that shows you have special training to do a job is called professional ..... .
a. degree b. document c. marathon d. qualification

Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes

15. The antonym of the word "professional" is ..... .
a. qualified b. amateur c. incredible d. fantastic

16. We add the suffix "....." to form the noun of "account".
a. -ship b. -ment c. -ant d. -less

Guessing the meaning from the text

17. When you travel around a place in order to learn about it, this means you ..... it.
a. create b. explore c. achieve d. set up

18. When you don't get any money for your work, this means you work as a/an ..... .
a. engineer b. architect c. volunteer d. trainer

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

19. My brother set ..... a new business in New Cairo in 2020.
a. for b. away c. on d. up

20. Buy a ticket before getting ..... the train.
a. of b. on c. out d. for

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about making predictions and future ability : توجيه أسئلة وإجاباتها عن عمل تنبؤات والتعبير عن القدرة المستقبلية :

Questions	Answers
1. What's your dream job ? ١. ما هى وظيفة أحلامك ؟	- My dream job is to be a doctor. - وظيفة أحلامى هى أن أكون طبيب.
2. What can you do to get your dream job ? ٢. ماذا تستطيع فعله لتحصل على وظيفة أحلامك ؟	- I can set up my goals first, and work hard to get them. - استطيع تحديد أهدافى أولا واعمل باجتهاد لأصل إليهم.

Step 1 Vocabulary

اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. What is your ..... ?

الوظيفة التى تحلم بها

- My dream job is to be a robotics engineer.

2. Why do you want to be a robotics engineer ?

- To ..... robots that go into space.

يبتكر

Step 2 Speaking

اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Finish the following dialogue :

Waleed is asking Tamer some questions about his life.

Waleed : Hello, Tamer. Can I ask you a few questions ?

Tamer : Yes, you can.

Waleed : (1) ..... ?

Tamer : No, I have never tried an unusual sport.

Waleed : What have you been dreaming to be since you were young ?

Tamer : (2) ..... .

Waleed : A robotics engineer ! (3) ..... ?

Tamer : Because I want to create robots that go into space.

Waleed : Well, I hope you will achieve your dreams.

Tamer : (4) ..... .

Waleed : (5) ..... .

Step 3 Writing

اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابه

Write a review on :

"Your dream job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Nada and Hany are talking about a job advertisement.

Nada : Have you read the newspaper today ?

Hany : (1) ..... . What's in the newspaper ?

Nada : (2) ..... .

Hany : What is that advertisement about ?

Nada : (3) ..... .

Hany : An accountant job is a good chance for us.

Nada : (4) ..... ?

Hany : Yes, I will. When can we apply for it ?

Nada : Next Sunday. (5) ..... ?

Hany : Of course. We can go together. *(Alexandria 2023)*

2 LM Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

renewable - popular - won't use - change - have used - charge

Nowadays, we have a hotter world than before. We should try to avoid climate (1) ..... . We have to use (2) ..... energy. So, we (3) ..... traditional means of transport. The most (4) ..... way to travel in the future won't be fast trains. Perhaps we will use electric cars or modern bikes.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I'll reread the story. The prefix "re" means to read it ..... . *(Assiut 2022)*
   a. once b. last c. before d. again
2. WB ..... is an area of a town, city or the countryside.
   a. Drought b. District c. Internship d. Skill
3. LM A/An ..... is someone who keeps records of money received, paid, and owed by a company or person.
   a. engineer b. accountant c. keeper d. manager

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

4. The opposite of ..... is "damage".
   a. destroy b. break c. improve d. die
5. He managed to set up his own business after graduation. "Set up" here means to ..... his business.
   a. arrive b. protect c. start d. finish
6. Saleem is a smart boy, he can answer difficult questions. The word "smart" here means ..... .
   a. brave b. clever c. heroic d. handsome

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. LM I am not sure our team will ..... (wins) the match.
2. LM Dalia hopes she will be able ..... (of passing) the final exam.
3. ..... (you be able) to travel into space in the future ?
4. It is raining, we ..... (not be) able to go out today.
5. Astronauts expect that they ..... (be able to) land on Mars in the future.

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of your dream job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

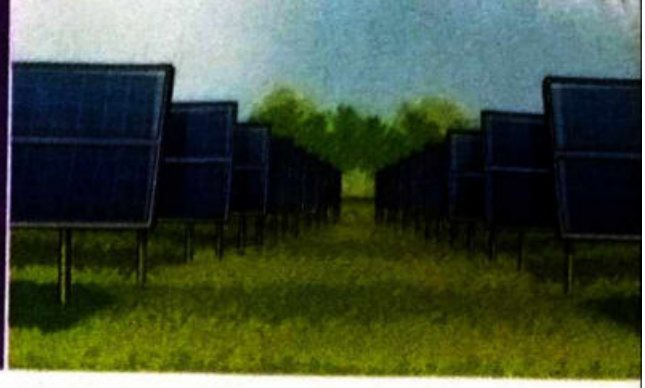
.....

.....

Lessons

5 & 6

SB pages 61 & 62
WB pages 111 & 112



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

definitely (adv)	بالتأكيد	passenger (n)	راكب / مسافر
likely (adj) (adv)	مُحتمَل / وارد	road signs (n)	إشارات الطريق
driverless (adj)	ذاتى القيادة [بدون سائق]	controls (n)	مفاتيح التحكم
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار	law (n)	القانون
engine (n)	مُحرك	device (n)	جهاز
flying car (n)	السيارة الطائرة	develop (ed) (v)	يطور

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

driverless - engine - passengers - Drones - develop

1. Students should ..... their skills regularly.
2. The ..... of the car doesn't start.
3. ..... are planes that don't need pilots.
4. In the future, cars will be ..... .

Lesson 5

SB page 61 WB page 111

agree (d) (v)	يوافق	positive (adj)	إيجابى
disagree (d) (v)	يرفض	smart apartments	شقق سكنية ذكية
negative (adj)	سلبى	completely (adv)	تمامًا / كُليًّا
perhaps (adv)	ربما	match (ed) (v)	يناسب / يلائم

Lesson 6

SB page 62 WB page 112

answer (n)	حل	introduce (d) (v)	يُقدِّم
busier (adj)	أكثر إزدحامًا	land (ed) (v), (n)	يهبط - أرض
helicopter (n)	طائرة مروحية	noisy (adj)	مُزعج
In fact,	فى الحقيقة	test (ed) (v), (n)	يختبر / اختبار
affect(ed)(v)	يؤثر على	develop (ed) (v)	يطور
company(n)	شركة	race(n)	سباق

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

definitely	certainly, without doubt	بالتأكيد
law	the rules that people in a country or place must follow	قانون
likely	probably going to happen or probably true	محتمل/وارد
probably	almost certain	من المحتمل
controls	things used to operate a vehicle or machine	مفاتيح التحكم

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make	a law	يصدر قانون	**do**	testing	يقوم بإجراء إختبارات
	less pollution	يسبب تلوث أقل			
	sure	يتأكد			

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
difference	اختلاف/ فرق	diversity	similarity	تشابه
definitely	بالتأكيد	certainly	doubtfully	مشكوك فيه
land	يهبط	come down	take off	تُقلع
agree	يوافق	accept	disagree-refuse	يرفض

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
dis–	تعطى عكس المعنى	disagree	يرفض
im–	تعطى عكس المعنى	impossible	مستحيل
–y	تكون صفة من اسم	noisy	صاخب
–ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	probably	من المحتمل
		slightly	قليلًا- بعض الشيء

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

follow rules	يتبع قواعد	centre of the city	وسط المدينة
save time	يوفر الوقت	look completely different	يبدو مختلف تمامًا
all our lives	طوال حياتنا		

Prepositions

at the earliest	على أقرب تقدير	to begin with	من البداية
land on	يهبط على	until 2030	حتى سنة ٢٠٣٠
in conclusion	الخلاصة	different to	مختلف عن
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	better for	أفضل لـ
take off	تُقلع (الطائرة)	on roads	على الطرق

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٤ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

• on Lesson 5 SB page 61

Amal : What do you think our city will be like in 2050, Huda?

Huda : Hi Amal ... Well, I think there will definitely be more people in our city.

Amal : So will there be lots of smart new **apartments**(1) in the city centre for them to live in?

Huda : Hmm… I'm not sure.

Amal : **Really**(2)? Why not?

Huda : There might be some new apartments in **the city centre**(3), but these could be very expensive.

Amal : So where will everyone live?

Huda : I think there will **probably**(4) be new apartments around the city.

Amal : And what about **shops**(5) and **restaurants**(6)?

Huda : Yes, I'm sure that there will be more of these. **Perhaps**(7) there will be a new **shopping centre**(8), too.

Amal : And what will the city **look like**(9)? Will there be more **tall buildings**(10)?

Huda : Yes, I think that's very likely. Tall buildings are a good idea in cities because there isn't much land to build on.

Amal : But with tall buildings, a new shopping centre and restaurants, our city could look **completely**(11) different.

Huda : I don't think so. There are lots of **historic**(12) buildings in the city, and it's important to protect these.

(1) شقق سكنية	(2) حقاً	(3) وسط المدينة	(4) من المحتمل	(5) محلات تجارية	(6) مطاعم
(7) ربما	(8) مركز تجارى	(9) تبدو	(10) مبان شاهقة	(11) تماماً - كليًا	(12) تاريخى

on Lesson 7 SB page 63

In the future, I think there will be new types of transport so that we will be able to travel everywhere faster. This means we will be able to save time and do more things in a day.

Magda

It's important to help protect the environment, but we won't be able to get all of our energy from solar farms and wind turbines for many years. We will need to build more of them. We will also need more cycle lanes in cities so people will be able to travel without using energy at all.

Fares

I'm sure that in the future, we will be able to send more spacecraft into space. But the planets in our solar system are too far away for people to travel to, so astronauts won't be able to visit them.

Nasser

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB & Previous Exams

Definitions

1. WB ..... means certainly, without doubt.
   a. Definitely b. Likely c. Probably d. Slightly
2. WB ..... means probably going to happen or probably true.
   a. Slightly b. Likely c. Sure d. Definitely

Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes

3. SB The suffix "....." can be used to get the adverb from the word "slight".
   a. -ful b. -able c. -ment d. -ly
4. We add the prefix "....." to the word "agree" to form the opposite. *(Sharkia 2022)*
   a. dis- b. un- c. in- d. im-
5. WB The antonym of the verb "land" is to ".....".
   a. take to b. take down c. take in d. take off
6. WB The synonym of "....." is "accept".
   a. disagree b. refuse c. reject d. agree

Guessing the meaning from the text

7. SB Driverless cars use electricity. They are ..... .
   a. electronic b. electric c. irregular d. enormous

8. WB The flying cars might be the answer to a lot of problems. "Answer" can be replaced by ..... .
a. problem b. cause c. reason d. solution

El-Moasser Exercises

Key vocabulary

9. The TV is the most important ..... in the 20th century.
a. food b. device c. engine d. effect

10. They need to buy a new ..... for their car.
a. map b. pan c. apartment d. engine

11. You can drive a car using the ..... .
a. drones b. internships c. controls d. helicopters

12. We already have the technology to make ..... and other things that can fly.
a. drones b. engines c. roofs d. floors

Definitions

13. The ..... is the rules that people in a country or place must follow.
a. engine b. law c. pollution d. company

Synonyms, antonyms, suffixes & prefixes

14. The synonym of the word "difference" is ..... .
a. diversity b. similarity c. difficulty d. fact

15. You can make an adjective from the noun "noise" by adding the suffix "..... ".
a. -ful b. -er c. -y d. -ly

16. The prefix "..... " can form the antonym of the word "possible".
a. un- b. dis- c. im- d. il-

17. The suffix "..... " means without.
a. -ful b. -ly c. -ness d. -less

Guessing the meaning from the text

18. After a long flight, the plane landed. "Landed" means ..... .
a. turned off b. came down c. got on d. got off

19. Cities are becoming ..... and traffic on the ground is becoming worse.
a. quieter b. healthier c. busier d. better

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

20. ..... sure that we have enough money for the sandwiches.
a. Make b. Do c. Give d. Take

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Hamza is late and asks his father to drive him to school.

Hamza : Good morning, dad. Can you do me a favour ?

Father : Good morning, Hamza. (1) ..... .

Hamza : I have an exam and I'm late for school. (2) ..... ?

Father : Sure. (3) ..... ?

Hamza : I'll be ready in ten minutes.

Father : I will get the car ready and wait for you.

Hamza : (4) ..... . You are really great.

Father : What time should you be at school ?

Hamza : (5) ..... .

Father : That's great. We'll be on time.

2 LM Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

wherever - disadvantage - were - online - advantage - will be

Some experts believe that education will be different in the future. Students will do more of their learning (1) ..... . This has a great (2) ..... . Students don't need lots of books. They can study anywhere and complete their schoolwork (3) ..... they go. Above all, they (4) ..... able to use 3D printers to print models or even make their own designs.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB ..... means almost certain.
   a. Strong b. Definitely c. Probably d. Likely
2. You should be ..... . Try to look for good things.
   a. negative b. passive c. positive d. lazy

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

3. It's an amazing offer. I can't refuse it. The word "refuse" means ..... .
   a. gain b. beat c. accept d. reject
4. To get the opposite meaning of the word "driver", we add the suffix "....." .
   a. –tion b. –y c. –less d. –in
5. WB ..... are things used to operate a vehicle or a machine.
   a. Matches b. Colours c. Controls d. Lamps
6. I can't find the difference between the twins. The antonym of the word "difference" is ..... .
   a. variety b. similarity c. ability d. challenge

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Do you think it ..... (be) hot tomorrow ?
2. Nader hopes that he ..... (able to) travel abroad when he graduates.
3. What will you ..... (able to) do when you leave school ?
4. LM I ..... (will) go to school tomorrow because I'm very sick.
5. What do you think robots will be able ..... (doing) in 2050 ?

5 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"A review of flying cars"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on unit 12

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary

cycle lanes	ممرات الدراجات
robotics	علم الروبوتات
renewable	متجدد
predictions	تنبؤات
floating farms	المزارع العائمة
farmland	أرض زراعية
solar panels	ألواح شمسية
devices	أجهزة
masks	أقنعة
goals	أهداف
improve	يحسن
create	يبدع - يبتكر
internship	فترة تدريب
explore	يستكشف
driverless cars	سيارات بدون سائق
laws	قوانين
flying cars	سيارات طائرة
drones	طائرات بدون طيار
electric engines	محركات كهربائية

Language

1. (will / won't) + inf.

لعمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل

ex. - By 2025, all of our energy will be renewable.

ex. - E-sports won't be popular than football.

2. (will/won't) be able to + inf.

للتحدث عن المقدرة فى المستقبل.

ex. - Scientists will be able to find solutions to some problems.

ex. - We won't be able to grow food that we need on the farmland we have.

3. (be) going to + inf.

ex. - He is going to work as a volunteer.

Speaking

1. Making prediction and talking about future ability.

1. What do you think people will use in the future ?
   - I think people will use driverless cars in the future.
2. What do you think you will be able to do at school in the future ?
   - I think we will be able to make 3D models.

2. Discussing personal goals :

1. What's your dream job ?
   - My dream is to be an astronaut.
2. What can you do to get your dream job ?
   - I can study well and work hard.

3. Expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future :

* What do you think our city will be like in 2050 ?
  - I think there will definitely be more tall buildings.

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Giving the main idea

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية للنص].

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

Damietta is famous for its great thinkers, writers and poets. One of them is Farouk Shousha who is a well-known poet and a famous radio presenter. He was born in Damietta in 1936. At his early age, he used to go to the local library and was able to read a lot of books in the Arabic language. In 1956, he graduated from the Faculty of Dar Al-Ulum in Cairo University.

Farouk Shousha always liked poetry and Arabic literature. He worked as a radio and a TV presenter. He presented many famous programs which most people liked so much like "Our Beautiful Language" and "Cultural Evening" which both lasted for about 15 years without stopping.

- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

The passage is talking about ..... .

a. Life in Damietta
b. TV and the internet
c. TV and Radio
d. Biography of Farouk Shousha

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية فى النص عندما اركز على التفاصيل التى تم ذكرها.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة يجب التوقف بعد كل فقرة منفصلة وتحديد الفكره التى تدور حولها ولاحظ أنه يمكن أن يعرض الكاتب آراء مختلفة فى فقرات متتالية.

2 Speaking

Your dream job

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Finish the following dialogue :

Tarek and Mark are talking about dream jobs.

Tarek : Hi, Mark. Do you have a plan for your dream job ?

Mark : (1) ..... .

Tarek : (2) ..... ?

Mark : My dream job is to be a doctor.

Tarek : (3) ..... ?

Mark : My role model is Dr. Magdy Yacoub. What about you ?

Tarek : (4) ..... .

Mark : A journalist ! Why do you want to do this job ?

Tarek : (5) ..... .

Mark : I hope you can achieve your goal.

(Aswan 2022)

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [الوظيفة التى تحلم بها] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Writing

يختبر سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية معرفتك لقدر كاف من المفردات وقدرتك على كتابة جمل تعبر عن الموضوع.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [حياتنا فى المستقبل] و [سيارات ذاتية القيادة] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية وكيفية استخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraph
Our life in the future	**Write the meaning :** متصل بالانترنت ..... التعليم ..... الطابعات ثلاثية الأبعاد ..... طاقة متجددة ..... رياضات الكترونية ..... يطبع	**Complete the sentences :** 1. In the future, we will use more ..... to protect the planet. 2. ..... will be different in the future. There will be more online learning. 3. ..... will be very important. Students in classes will be able to ..... models.	**Write a review on :** *"Our life in the future"* ....
Driverless Cars	أجهزة التحكم ..... ذاتية القيادة ..... خبراء ..... كهربى ..... محرك	1. In the future, ... cars will change all of our lives. 2. We will be able to travel anywhere without touching ..... or even looking at the road. 3. Driverless will be better for the environment because they will be ..... . 4. Some ..... believe that we will have to wait until 2030 to see driverless cars.	**Write an email about :** *"Driverless cars"* ....

تدريب تلقائى على مهارة الكتابة

Questions collected from previous exams & longman

1. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

will – feet – would – prepare – change – charge

Teachers play an important role in building up an educated nation. They (1) ..... their students for the future. They can (2) ..... their life. They help their students to stand on their (3) ..... . If there were not teachers, there (4) ..... not be any doctors, engineers, scientists, etc. We must respect our teachers.

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB The train doesn't use oil. It is ..... . *(North Sinai 2022)*
   a. robotic b. heroic c. electric d. pandemic
2. The prefix "....." is added to the verb "use" to mean use again. *(Giza 2023)*
   a. dis– b. re– c. un– d. in–
3. The adjective from the word "success" can be formed by adding the suffix "....." *(Suez 2022)*
   a. –ment b. –ful c. –tion d. –ness
4. Nowadays, we use modern ways of farming. The antonym of "modern" is "....." *(Cairo 2022)*
   a. expensive b. far c. near d. traditional
5. LM A ..... is a long race of about 26 miles or 42 kilometres.
   a. speed b. marathon c. competition d. way
6. LM I usually go to my village ..... the weekends, which means I go there every weekend.
   a. each b. with c. from d. at
7. LM It's ..... that my father will travel abroad next week. He will probably travel next week.
   a. impossible b. likely c. unlikely d. sure
8. LM What are the negative sides of learning at home ? "Negative" is opposite in meaning to "....."
   a. expected b. bad c. positive d. possible
9. LM I have the ability to solve this problem. "Ability" is opposite in meaning to "....."
   a. inability b. stability c. capability d. reality
10. LM To redo something is to ..... .
   a. avoid doing it b. stop doing it
   c. do it again d. do it only

3. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. LM Do you think it ..... (rained) tomorrow ?
2. LM I hope my father ..... (will) use this old car again, it always breaks down.
3. LM I am not sure our team will ..... (wins) the match.
4. In the future, more people ..... (learn) online. *(Menoufia 2022)*
5. How big ..... (be Cairo) in 2050 ? *(Qena 2022)*
6. LM ..... (We will) be able to solve the problem of pollution ?
7. LM I'm sure you ..... (will) be able to lift the heavy box; I will help you.
8. LM Perhaps, Amani ..... (may) be the new secretary.
9. Mona ..... (travel) to Cairo next Friday. *(Suez 2022)*

Test on unit 12

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

قم بحل اختبار تراكمى فى الملحق

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Walid wants to borrow his sister's calculator.

Walid : Hi, Mona. I want to borrow your calculator tomorrow morning.

Mona : Hi, Walid. (1) ..... ?

Walid : It is for tomorrow morning only because I have an exam.

Mona : Where is your calculator ?

Walid : (2) ..... . I asked my father to buy me another one, but he refused. (3) ..... ?

Mona : Yes, I will give it back to you. When will you bring it back ?

Walid : (4) ..... .

Mona : (5) ..... .

Walid : I promise you I won't forget it at school.

Mona : OK. I wish you the best for your exam.

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

sure – reuse – by – pollute – into – polluted

We must keep our environment clean to live a healthy life. We shouldn't (1) ..... it by throwing any chemical waste (2) ..... rivers and seas. We must (3) ..... rainwater and make (4) ..... that we save all kinds of energy.

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. .....
3. ..... 4. .....

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Over 65 years ago, the world's first computer was born. Scientists called it "The Baby", but it was huge. It filled a full room ! Three people made the computer and programmed math problems for it. On June 19, 1948, the computer solved its first math problem - in 52 minutes ! At that time, this was amazing.

• Understand • Apply • Create

Computers are now much smaller. With touch-screen technology, many computers don't need extra things, like a keyboard or a mouse. In the future, computers probably won't need **these** things at all. Some computers like the smartphone, can fit in one hand. Computers are also more powerful today.

How else will computers change in the future ? A computer's brain is a chip inside the computer. So, computers will be smaller and even more powerful. Perhaps they'll even think like humans ! Maybe we won't need to tell computers what to do because they'll decide for themselves !

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The first computer filled a ..... .
   a. palace b. hand c. room d. building
2. The Baby computer found the answer to ..... math problem(s) in 52 minutes.
   a. one b. two c. three d. four
3. Today, many computers don't have ..... .
   a. keyborads b. mouses c. touch screen d. a & b

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**these**" refer to ?

   .....

5. Why do you think we may not need to tell computers what to do ?

   .....

6. What is the main idea of the passage ?

   .....

(Cairo 2023)

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. " ..... " means done without using money you can hold.
   a. Hopeless b. Aimless c. Cashless d. Homeless
2. The synonym of the verb "hurt" is ..... .
   a. cure b. damage c. provide d. sail
3. The ability to do something well is a/an ..... .
   a. internship b. apartment c. dream d. skill

4. The prefix "....." changes the verb "appear" into the opposite.
   a. un- b. ir- c. im- d. dis-
5. Protecting the environment is all people's responsibility. The word "protecting" means ..... .
   a. conserving b. damaging c. designing d. boasting
6. Mo Salah is a/an ..... player. He gets money for playing.
   a. unhappy b. professional c. amateur d. lazy

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He ..... (isn't able to) join the main team unless he trains hard.
2. What will the weather ..... (is) like tomorrow ?
3. They won't ..... (able to) attend the conference this year because of coronavirus disease.
4. LM In the future, more people ..... (learn) online. *(Menofia 2022)*
5. Ali hopes he will ..... (being) able to buy that car next year.

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of driverless cars"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 12 for Al-Azhar students إختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Nader and Ziad are talking about their dream jobs.

Nader : Hi, Ziad. What is your dream job ?

Ziad : I would like to become a robotics engineer.

Nader : (1) ..... ?

Ziad : Because it is my father's job. What about you ?

Nader : (2) ..... .

Ziad : I think it is easy to work in a hospital.

Nader : (3) ..... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. ..... is something that shows you have special training to do a job.
   a. Distance b. Internship c. Skill d. Set up
2. Don't throw away this bottle. We can ..... it.
   a. replay b. rearrange c. repeat d. reuse
3. Nawal hopes that she will ..... to work as an engineer when she is older.
   a. be b. been able c. be able d. be able to
4. In the future, we will ..... able to travel in driverless cars.
   a. be b. is c. are d. been

3 Write a paragraph of SIX sentences on :

"Your dream job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

* **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :**

Manar and Eman are talking about goals and ambitions.

Manar: Do you have future goals ?

Eman : (1) ..... .

a. Yes, I do b. Yes, I did
c. Yes, he has d. Yes, I am

Manar: What is your first goal ?

Eman : I want to finish my education and join university.

Manar: (2) ..... ?

a. Which colour do you like
b. What is your hobby
c. Which faculty would you like to join
d. How old are you

Eman : I would like to join the Faculty of Medicine.

Manar: (3) ..... ?

a. Who did you meet
b. Where do you come from
c. Why would you like to join it
d. When were you born

Eman : To help sick people get better. What about you ?

Manar: (4) ..... .

a. I want to be a teacher
b. I want to be a robotics engineer
c. I want to be an artist
d. I want to be a farmer

Eman : What does a robotics engineer do ?

Manar: (5) ..... .

a. He grows plants
b. He plays football
c. He mends cars
d. He designs robots

* **Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :**

6. Ali's uncle ..... **(being)** 65 next month.
a. been b. be c. will be d. be to

7. In the future, driverless cars will..... **(changed)** all of ourlives .
a. change b. changes
c. to change d. changing

8. What ..... **(would)** the weather be like tomorrow ?
a. could b. will c. can d. is

9. People like you or me ..... **(able to)** build our country.
a. will be b. can't be
c. will be able d. will be able to

10. I think it ..... **(is)** hot and sunny tomorrow.
a. be b. will be
c. will being d. will been

Videoscript

Unit 7

on Lesson 2 SB page 5

There are some beautiful natural wonders in Egypt, such as the White Desert National Park and the Al Nayzak Lake. There are also some wonderful man-made wonders, such as the Great Pyramids and the Citadel of Qaitbay in Alexandria.

These and other places are popular places and they are visited by thousands of tourists every year.

Egypt also has some wonders that aren't visited by many tourists, like Gebel Elba. This is because it is difficult to reach. Another wonder that is difficult to reach is the Lost City of Thonis-Heracleion. This is because the city is now under the Mediterranean Sea near Alexandria. It was found by an archaeologist called Franck Goddio in 2000. Thonis-Heracleion was an important city before it was destroyed by the sea more than 1,500 years ago. When it was discovered, Franck Goddio saw lots of very old statues, temples and monuments.

Another wonder is the Great Sand Sea in the south of Egypt. This is a part of the Western desert, and here you can find lots of big sand dunes. Some unusual glass is also found in the Great Sand Sea. It is believed that this glass is more than 29 million years old. The glass is very special and some of it was found in King Tutankhamen's tomb.

Egypt's natural and man-made wonders are among the most beautiful in the world. Have you visited any of them ?

Unit 8

on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Every day, thousands of people collect rubbish from homes and the streets of Cairo. These people collect more than two million tonnes of paper, plastic, wood and metal every year. Around 85% of this rubbish is recycled or reused in many different ways. This makes it one of the most successful recycling programs in the world.

Some of the rubbish is sold to factories so that it can be used again. Some of it is used to make jewellery, bags and carpets, which are then sold in shops around Egypt and online around the world. The people who collect rubbish work with a charity called the Association for the Protection of the Environment to make these items.

There is also a project between the people who collect rubbish, the government and some international companies to help people to stop using so much plastic in Egypt. When people collect an empty plastic bottle that belongs to one of these companies, the company will pay the collector some money. So the people who collect rubbish are working hard to help to protect Egypt's environment.

We all need to recycle and reuse our rubbish. If we don't, we will destroy the planet.

Unit 9

on Lesson 5 SB page 29

The energy that is produced by the sun is called solar energy. This is good for the

environment because it is renewable. This means that it comes from natural sources.

Egypt has almost nine and a half hours of sunshine every day. The sun is nearly always shining and there aren't usually many clouds in the sky. It is one of the sunniest countries in the world. This is why Egypt is using the sun to produce energy.

Benban Solar Park is the largest solar farm in Africa and one of the biggest in the world. Benban opened in 2019 and it covers almost 38 square kilometres. It has got thousands of solar panels. It produces enough energy every year for hundreds of thousands of homes and businesses. Did you know that, if you went into space, you would be able to see Benban Solar Park?

Another type of renewable energy is wind energy. There are wind farms in Egypt, like this one in Hurghada.

Egypt uses a lot of renewable energy, and the government wants people to use more. They want 20% of all energy to come from renewable sources. If we all used more renewable energy, it would help us to save the planet.

Unit 10

on Lesson 2 SB page 37

If you look up to the sky during the day, you can see clouds and the sun. At night, you can see the moon, some planets and hundreds of thousands of stars. The sun is a star and all of the planets in our solar system move around it. It takes our planet, Earth, 365 days to orbit the sun.

We know this, and many other things about our solar system, because of the work of Islamic astronomers more than one thousand years ago.

In the tenth century, an astronomer from Iran called Abd al-Rahman al-Sufi wrote a very important book about the solar system called The Book of Fixed Stars.

This described the exact position of the stars in the night sky at different times of the year, and it also included drawings and descriptions of different groups of stars called constellations. The group of stars in a constellation can form a picture in the sky, such as the Great Bear and Orion. Nobody had described them so accurately before al-Sufi did.

A very large group of stars is called a galaxy. Earth is in a galaxy called the Milky Way. Abd al-Rahman al-Sufi wrote about other galaxies, such as the Large Magellanic Cloud and the Andromeda Galaxy, before many other people had even seen them.

An Egyptian astronomer called Ibn Yunus studied how planets moved in the solar system in the eleventh century. Later, an important European astronomer called Copernicus used these studies to suggest that planets moved around the sun. Before this, some people had thought that the sun moved around Earth.

Today, astronomers are still discovering new things about stars, planets and galaxies. What do you think they will discover in the future ?

Unit 11

on Lesson 5 SB page 51

If you look up in Cairo, you will see some

tall skyscrapers. But the tallest building of them all is Cairo Tower, which is on Gezira Island. This is 187 metres high and it is one of the tallest buildings in Africa.The tower first opened in 1961. It was built by the famous Egyptian architect Naoum Shebib.

Shebib also built another tall building in Cairo – the Thabet-Thabet building. This skyscraper is more than 100 metres high.

The design of the tower looks like a type of flower called the pharaonic lotus flower. This is the national flower of Egypt. It was very important in Ancient Egypt because it represented birth and life.

The Cairo Tower is very popular with tourists, who visit it to see all of the city from the top. Sometimes, you can even see the Pyramids of Giza in the distance. You can even have a meal at the top of the tower. My sister said that she ate fresh fish there! At night, the tower is illuminated with lights. People say that it looks very beautiful.

Soon, the tallest building in Africa will be in Egypt. The Iconic Tower in the New Administrative Capital will be more than 385 metres tall when it is built.

Are there any skyscrapers or tall buildings in your town or city?

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

More than five years ago, the government decided to build a new capital city in Egypt. It is going to be located east of Cairo. The government wanted to create this new city because the population of Egypt is very big, and it is growing. In the future, there will be more people who want to live in cities like Cairo, Alexandria and Giza.

The new city will have homes for more than six million people. These people will be able to visit parks, shops, an opera house and restaurants. There will also be jobs for these people. Lots of people will be able to work here because the government and many businesses will move here.

The new city is going to be a smart city. This means that it will use technology to do a lot of things, such as control traffic, control the energy that people use and make the city a safe place to live.

People will be able to use this technology to do many everyday things. For example, if you want to buy something in the shops, you won't need money. You will be able to use your phone to pay for things. And if you want to get around the city, you will be able to use a monorail. A monorail is a train that often travels above the ground.

Will you live and work in the new capital city when you are older?

Unit 7

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A review of a natural wonder in Egypt"

Egypt has a lot of natural wonders which cannot be seen in other places all over the world. The Kharga Oasis is one of Egypt's natural wonders. It is surrounded by desert, far from the River Nile. It is visited by more and more tourists every year. It is full of date palm trees. These dates can be exported to a lot of other places in addition to selling them in many shops in the local area.

Oases in general lie in remote places. Sometimes, it is difficult to be reached especially in extreme weather. People prefer visiting near places to remote ones. If they are visited, it is also difficult to stay in for a few days. There are no many hotels or many houses around oases; simply because oases lie in the desert!

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A short story you have read recently"

It is a story about horses; their life, their habits and their loyalty ولاء. A horse is an animal which can feel and sense like people. Black Beauty is a horse born kind and beautiful. He never kicks or bites even when people make him sad. He treats his owner gently. If there are any dangers on the road, he stops at once to save the lives of his riders. If it is owned by a poor person, he never complains. He may not get enough food and may get ill but he goes on working. Sometimes he travels to long distances and difficult destinations and stays calm. He also may feel pains as there are some bad owners who hit their horses. I think the moral of this story is that animals are not machines!

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review of mongooses"

There are a lot of kinds of mongooses in the world. A mongoose has a long body, with short legs and a long tail. Their bodies are covered by thick fur. Mongooses can see and hear very well, which helps them to find food and avoid danger. They are famous for fighting snakes. They are able to kill snakes by biting them.

There are a lot of mongooses in Africa, Asia and parts of Europe. It lives in forests, wetlands or grasslands, under the ground or rocks.

Mongooses are also very famous for killing rats, so they were taken to live in several islands in Hawaii to control the rat populations there. They also eat birds, frogs, lizards, seeds, eggs and nuts.

Unfortunately, mongooses are endangered, mainly because of deforestation and loss of habitat.

Test on unit 7

"A review of types of habitats"

There are many different habitats around the world. Coastal habitats are along the coast of the sea. Sea turtles live in the sea and visit land for egg laying. Grasslands are usually found in the centre of large areas of land between mountains and deserts. Caracals live in grasslands because they like to hide in the long grass. Warm, wet habitats that get the most rain, are called rainforests. Orangutans live in rainforests and spend nearly their entire lives in trees.

A wetland is a place where the land is often covered by water, for example the Nile Delta. Frogs are wetland animals that are able to live on land as well as in water. The areas that are covered by ice are called polar habitats. The polar bear is one of the few animals that can live in a polar habitat.

Unit 8

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A review of how to protect our planet"

Our planet is in danger and I think this is because of some global problems. One of these dangerous problems that endangers our planet is removing trees!

Trees are a source of life. They give out oxygen and take in carbon dioxide. They also absorb pollutants in the atmosphere as they act like filters to our breathing. Apart from that, we get most of our materials in life from trees like wood, paper, fruits, seeds.

The bad thing is that trees are removed for financial مالى reasons ! They are removed to make more space for building houses or hotels. They are removed to get and sell more of their wood and this, of course is a big mistake. Killing a source of life will lead to more and more global problems such as global warming, deforestation and desertification. We should control that by planting more trees.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A review of a recycling project"

We all enjoy having new mobile phones, but what should we do with our old phones ? Should we keep throwing them away ?

Mobile phones are made from many dangerous materials and these materials are of course destroying the environment. Man depends greatly on plastic on his life. Plastic is an enemy for the environment. Plastic is very difficult to be removed. It damages the sea life too.

No one can deny that it is not easy to make mobile phones. They need to have a lot of important materials inside them like plastic, iron and glass. When we throw away a phone, these materials can be very bad for the environment. I think that one day, we will not need to buy a new phone every few years. People will design phones by themselves. If we stop throwing away old materials, we will benefit our environment.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review of how to stop pollution"

Man has created a lot of things that benefit him but are harmful to nature. Man is the main reason for destroying nature and making pollution.

Pollution is caused by greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide. These are made when we burn fossil fuels such as oil. Also, pollution is created by cutting down trees. When we cut down trees, the carbon dioxide stays in the air.

The best solution to stop pollution is that we have to depend on cleaner renewable energy such as solar energy and wind power. We must start recycling more rubbish. Stopping cutting down trees and forests is a must, too If we recycle more paper, we can avoid cutting down our forests.

Finally, both the government and people should encourage planting more trees either in streets or at homes.

Test on unit 8

"A review of traditional arts in Egypt"

There are a lot of traditional arts in Egypt. Weaving is an important Egyptian tradition. However, there aren't many traditional weavers in Egypt today.
A weaver uses a machine called a loom. This machine crosses threads under and over each other to make fabric. Weavers can make very beautiful things.

Last week, I visited the Reform Studio in Cairo. It's an amazing place. I was surprised to see weavers working on traditional looms. They were using an unusual material. It was plastic from old plastic bags. They found a way to make old plastic bags into long threads, which they could make into fabric. This is a fantastic idea because it is great for the environment.

Unit 9

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A review of climate change"

Climate change can cause floods because of rising sea levels. When seawater comes onto farms, the salt in the water kills the crops. Farmers can't grow anything for many years. So, people lose their farms and their homes. In hot countries like Egypt, mangrove trees grow in the sea along the coast to protect it from rising sea levels. Mangrove trees protect farms and communities from strong winds and storms. They provide homes for plants, fish and sea animals. If there were more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A review of what you do to help the environment"

I can protect my environment ! It is always said; "A good brain is in a fit body!" and I say' "A good brain and a fit body are in a clean environment!" It is time to fight for a better future and a clean, protected environment. What we can do to our environment is much! We can stop throwing rubbish in streets. We can stop dropping waste in rivers. We will not achieve progress and be a great country without having a clean environment. We must control our complete dependence on fossil fuels to reduce carbon dioxide. It is necessary to plant more trees and save electricity. Using air conditions takes too much electricity. This is bad because it produces a huge amount of carbon dioxide. We can turn off lights and computers after using them.

At the end, I'd like to say that using recycled materials is a good solution to reduce pollution and keep our environment clean.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review of the Great Green Wall Initiative"

Desertification has become a great problem. Many countries suffer from it and we must find a solution to it. Desertification happens when green land becomes desert. The Great Green Wall is an initiative set up in 2007 by the African Union to solve the problem of desertification in the Sahel region of Africa. Sahel region suffers from droughts. People do not always farm the land well there. People also grow less amounts of food and lose their homes there.

The Great Green Wall Initiative will plant millions of trees and plants across Africa to create a growing green landscape. It is expected that this wall will be the biggest living thing in the world. It will create jobs for 10 million people. The trees and plants will improve the land for farming again. This will help in creating a clean environment and reducing desertification.

Test on unit 9

"A review of how to protect our environment"

To protect the environment, use less plastic. We used to get all our shopping in plastic bags. Now, we use reusable shopping bags. We can make our coffee in bamboo cups as bamboo is sustainable. To save electricity, we can use energy-saving light bulbs. For me, I could give up my electric toothbrush for a bamboo toothbrush. We use the air conditioning less often. I use rechargeable batteries for the TV remote control and my computer mouse. I've bought an electric car because it's greener. I also take a reusable bag when I go shopping. We're going to give up living in the city because we want to grow our own vegetables and live a simpler life.

Unit 10

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A biography of Ayman Ragab"

Ayman Ragab is an Egyptian scientist who has always been interested in space science. NASA has been trying to understand what it can do with the rubbish that space journeys produce. Astronauts use a lot of plastic, paper and other waste on their journeys to space and this of course is a big problem.

NASA started a competition asking the world's best scientists to try and find a solution. Ayman Ragab entered the competition and came second in 2019. He suggested using jets of air to make the waste smaller and then help to recycle it!

Ayman is from the village of al-Dababiya near Luxor and graduated in Engineering from Aswan University. He has worked as a teaching assistant at the same university and now works as a researcher for a university in Finland.

Since he won his prize, he has worked on NASA's Technology Transfer Project which looks at how to use the latest technology in space, and he has recently found ways to save energy when there is little gravity.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A review of satellite technology"

We couldn't live without satellite technology! If we had not discovered space, we would not have known a lot of the world secrets! Satellites allow us to study the weather all around the world. Lots of people have satellite TVS so that they can watch their favourite shows and sports matches. Satellite phones can work anywhere in the world. They help us greatly in places far from cities, such as mountains or deserts. Before satellites were invented, people had always used maps to find their way. Now most people use GPS. GPS sends signals to receivers on earth which work out where we are. We have GPS in cars, on phones and even in some modern motorbike helmets. I see that we should spend more and more money to explore more and more about space to know a lot of the universe secrets.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review of the International Space Station"

The International Space Station is a place where astronauts live and work when they go into space. It orbits the earth every day. It's one of the brightest objects in the sky and it can be seen without using a telescope. Lots of countries helped to make the Space Station and astronauts from all around the world have stayed on it.

Life on the Space Station is different from life on earth in many ways. In space, washing, sleeping and eating can be difficult ! Although life is difficult and different on space, communication is not a problem. Astronauts can send emails or make phone calls to their families and friends.

Technology has made it more and more easy for astronauts not to suffer during their travel and stay in space stations. They now find remedies علاج for most side effects that the previous astronauts have complained of.

Test on unit 10

"A biography of Dr Farouk El-Baz"

Egypt is rich in her human power and I am always proud of its famous sons who have become famous scientists known all over the world. One of those Egyptians is Dr Farouk El-Baz. He is a great scientist and a geologist. After studying the moon, Farouk started studying deserts on earth. He used satellites to find rivers that were under the sand. This work has helped Egypt and other countries to find new water. He also helped to show astronauts where they could find underground water in the desert. Before this work, he had helped to develop special cameras on the space shuttle.

Scientists had done a lot of research before the first person walked on the moon.

Farouk El-Baz helped to plan where Apollo 11 should land on the moon and taught astronauts which rocks to take from the moon.

To sum up, I'd like to say such great scientists should be valued and encouraged to help our world more and more!

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A review of a job that you would like to do in the media"

We now live in the age of open skies and media. Life has changed a lot from the past even in our choice of careers. Before now, there were journalists, newsreaders and writers but today, there are bloggers and youtubers!

I'd like to be a famous youtuber. I always have groups of new ideas from which some companies and owners are not brave enough to present. I can make my own channel on youtube application and if I succeeded, I would have a large number of views and of course I would get a lot of money. I see that social media has given a lot of job opportunities to a lot of young people to achieve their dreams. On the other hand, I cannot deny that this has also brought some disadvantages.

To sum up, I'd like to say that we should decrease the negative sides and increase the positive ones.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A biography of Safia el-Mohandes"

Safia el Mohandes was born in Cairo. Her father was a famous linguist. He encouraged her to read Arabic books and novels. Safia also studied English literature at the university and graduated from the Faculty of Arts.

The first broadcast in Africa and in the whole Arab world was the Egyptian radio broadcasting. Safia was the first female voice on the radio.

She presented programmes for women and for children. Her most famous programme was "Housewives" which presented news, educational advice and drama for the whole Egyptian family.

Safia was very kind and helpful to all radio broadcasters. She helped everyone and so she was called""the mother of broadcasters".

She was the head of the radio broadcasting until she retired in 1982.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review of the job of the journalist"

Honesty is the main quality in the job of the journalist. The job of a journalist is not an easy one. It needs hard work all around the day. This sometimes requires sleeplessness.

Meeting different people and finding out more about the world is a main part of the job. The job includes spending long time on the internet and talking to people on the phone, too. You have to be interested in the world around you. You also need to be good at listening and writing.

Unfortunately, there are some journalists who give fake news and report on unreal facts to attract more readers and earn more money. This is a misuse for the job of a journalist.

Finally, I'd like to say that honesty is the most important characteristic that remarks any job!

Test on unit 11

"A biography of Farouk Shousha"

Farouk Shousha was born in Damietta. He went to a nearby elementary school. He went to the local library at a very early age and was able to read many books in the Arabic language. He studied at Cairo University and graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum. He worked as a radio presenter and later on as a TV presenter, too.

He always liked poetry and Arabic literature. In his programmes, Shousha always talked about the beauty of the

Arabic language and its rich literature. For this reason, he was called "the guardian of the Arabic language". He won the Nile Prize for Literature in 2016.

Finally, I'd like to say; the more sincere you are at your job, the more you become successful.

Unit 12

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"A review of how learning will be like in the future"

Before now, the learning process depended on books, blackboards and classrooms. In fact, the process has developed all the time, came after that the whiteboard, CDs and DVDs. Next, came the educational programmes and the smart boards.

Today, we are in the age of online learning. The educational platforms have controlled the learning process.

I think, in the near future, the computer and the robots will develop thinking! Computers may choose what suit the mentality عقلية and the age of the learner. And they will decide on the quality and the quantity of the curriculum منهج.

To sum up, I'd like to say no one can predict where technology will lead us!

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"A review of your dream job"

To achieve your goal is to reach your dream job. My dream job is to become a famous writer. From the early age, I loved reading stories and its reviews.

Writing is a talent موهبة that requires special skills, so I started to take a course during the summer vacation. The year after the course, I joined a writing competition in my school and came second.

After I finish my school, I hope I will join the Faculty of Arts and study at the press department. My role model is Naguib Mahfouz and I'd like to not only be a writer but a man of literature as well.

I hope to win the Nobel Prize for literature one day.

At the end , I'd like to say if you have a goal, you must work for it.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review of flying cars"

Transport is very important all over the world. We now have the technology that will be able to make flying cars. Engineers think that flying cars will be like helicopters.

They will use electricity because electric engines are not very noisy. I think flying cars will be the answer to a lot of problems. If there were flying cars, people could fly to work from far away. Flying cars could land on the roofs of buildings as a result there would be more space in the streets. Electric flying cars would make less pollution, too. I think it's very likely we will see flying cars in the future.

Test on unit 12

"A review of driverless cars "

In the future, driverless cars will change all of our lives. We will be able to travel anywhere without touching the controls or even looking at the road! Driverless cars will also be better for the environment because they will be electric. However, there are still some problems. Car companies will have to do lots of testing to make sure that the cars are completely safe. We will also have to make new laws and we might even have to change some of our road signs so that the cars computers can read them.

Some experts believe that we will have to wait until 2030. Others see that driverless cars will be here much sooner. Of course it's impossible to know who is correct, but we can be sure of one thing : driverless cars will be part of our future.

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم : ١٠٣ - ١١ - ٢ - ١٠٧

EL-MOASSER GUIDE

New Hello!

SECOND TERM

IN THIS BOOK ...

- A detailed explanation for each two lessons.
- Various exercises on each part of the two lessons.
- General exercises on each two lessons.
- A brief summary of each unit.
- Writing skill.
- Mini Tests for Al- Azhar students.
- A sample test after each unit.
- General revision after each three units.

قاموس المعاصر الناطق
امسح الـ QR CODE
داخل الكتاب

GPS

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
15014 www.elmoasserbooks.com

الآن بالمكتبات

المعاصر
في الرياضيات
للمرحلة الإعدادية

GPS

أدخل كودك الشخصي
الموجود على ظهر الغلاف

يصرف مجانًا مع هذا الكتاب

- كراسة المعاصر للمراجعة والاختبارات
- كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي

6 223007 311359

/ ElMoasser.eg

EL-MOASSER GUIDE

New Hello! ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors

كـــراســـة المعـــاصر
للمراجـــعة والاخـــتبارات

داخل الملحق
مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه في ساعة واحدة قبل الامتحان

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

الصف الثالث الإعدادى
الفصـل الدراسـى الثانى

3rd Prep.
2024
SECOND TERM

PART ONE

DAY 1

Language Functions and Reading Comprehension

1. Language Functions

الوظائف اللغوية

[راجع وتدرب فى نفس الوقت] عرض لجميع الوظائف اللغوية بطريقة سهلة متبوعة بتدريبات عليها.

1. Talking about habitats of animals :

١. الحديث عن البيئات الطبيعية للحيوانات :

A : Where does the orangutan live ?

• أين يعيش إنسان الغابة ؟

B : It lives in the rainforests.

• يعيش فى الغابات الاستوائية.

A : How much of Egypt is a desert habitat ?

• كم تمثل البيئة الصحراوية من مساحة مصر ؟

B : About 95%

• حوالى ٩٥٪.

2. Asking for clarification :

٢. طلب توضيح المعلومات :

A : Go along this road and turn left. The hospital is on the right.

• سر بطول هذا الطريق واتجه يسارًا. ستجد المستشفى على اليمين.

B : I'm still confused. Could you say that in another way ?

• أنا مازلت لا أفهم. هل يمكن أن تقول ذلك بطريقة أخرى ؟

3. Discussing environmental problems :

٣. مناقشة مشاكل بيئية :

A : What do you think of recycling projects ?

• ما رأيك فى مشروعات إعادة التدوير ؟

B : They protect the environment from pollution.

• إنها تحمى البيئة من التلوث.

A : What are the bad effects of climate change ?

• ما هى الآثار السلبية للتغير المناخى ؟

B : It can cause floods in some areas.

• يمكن أن يسبب فيضانات فى بعض المناطق.

A : How can we reduce air pollution ?

• كيف يمكننا أن نقلل تلوث الهواء ؟

B : By planting more trees and riding bikes instead of vehicles.

• عن طريق زراعة المزيد من الأشجار وركوب الدراجات بدلاً من المركبات.

4. Giving and responding to opinions :

٤. الإبداء والاستجابة للآراء :

A : What do you think of solar energy projects in Africa ?

• ما رأيك فى مشروعات الطاقة الشمسية فى أفريقيا ؟

B : I think they are very useful.

• أعتقد أنها مفيدة جدًا.

A : What's your opinion about renewable energy ?

• ما رأيك فى الطاقة المتجددة ؟

B : In my opinion, it's very cheap and sustainable.

• فى رأيى أنها رخيصة ودائمة.

5. Discussing how to live more sustainable :

٥. مناقشة عن كيفية الحياة بطريقة أكثر استدامة :

A : What could you stop using or buying that is bad for the environment ?

• ما الأشياء الضارة بالبيئة التى يمكنك التوقف عن استخدامها أو شرائها ؟

B : I could stop using plastic shopping bags.

• يمكننى التوقف عن استخدام أكياس التسوق البلاستيكية.

A : What other things could you do to live a more sustainable life ?

• ما الأشياء الأخرى التى يمكنك القيام بها لتعيش حياة أكثر استدامة ؟

B : I could use energy-saving light bulbs and rechargeable batteries.

• يمكننى استخدام مصابيح موفرة للطاقة وبطاريات قابلة لإعادة الشحن.

6. Talking about life experiences :

٦. الحديث عن التجارب الحياتية :

A : Have you ever used a telescope ? • هل سبق لك واستخدمت تليسكوب ؟

B : Yes, I used a telescope on the science trip.

• نعم، لقد استخدمت تليسكوب فى رحلة علمية.

A : Have you ever tried an unusual sport ?

• هل سبق لك ومارست رياضة غير عادية ؟

B : Yes, I have tried mountain climbing. • نعم، لقد جربت تسلق الجبال.

7. Talking about satellite technology :

٧. الحديث عن تكنولوجيا الأقمار الصناعية :

A : How can satellites help us ? • كيف تساعدنا الأقمار الصناعية ؟

B : Satellites can help us to study the weather well.

• يمكن أن تساعدنا الأقمار الصناعية فى دراسة الطقس جيدًا.

8. Discussing types of news :

٨. مناقشة أنواع الأخبار :

A : What kind of media do you trust most ?

• ما هى وسائل الإعلام التى تثق فيها كثيرًا ؟

B : I trust radio broadcasting so much. • أنا أثق فى إذاعة الراديو كثيرًا.

A : What job do you like in media ? • ما هى الوظيفة التى تحبها فى الإعلام ؟

B : I like the job of the photographer. • أحب وظيفة المصور.

9. Asking and answering questions about media :

٩. توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن الصحافة والإعلام :

A : Would you like to work in the media ? • هل تود العمل فى مجال الإعلام ؟

B : Yes. • نعم.

A : Which jobs would you like to do in the media ? Why ?

• أى الوظائف تود العمل بها فى مجال الإعلام ؟ ولماذا ؟

B : I would like to be a journalist as I like researching and writing news articles.

• أود أن أعمل صحفيًا لأننى أحب البحث وكتابة المقالات الصحفية.

A : Which jobs wouldn't you like to do in the media ? Why ?

• أى الوظائف لا تود العمل بها فى مجال الإعلام ؟ ولماذا ؟

B : I wouldn't like to be a camera operator as it needs a lot of time.

• لا أود أن أعمل مصور تليفزيونى لأنها تحتاج للكثير من الوقت.

10. Discussing types of news :

١٠. مناقشة أنواع الأخبار :

A : Which type of media do you trust the most ?

• أى نوع من وسائل الإعلام تثق به أكثر ؟

B : I prefer the newspapers and TV programmes.

• أفضل الصحف والبرامج التليفزيونية.

A : What type of media do you think is most interesting for news ?

• أى نوع من وسائل الإعلام تعتقد أنها أكثر إهتمامًا بالأخبار ؟

B : I think TV.

• أعتقد التلفاز.

11. Describing a picture from the news :

١١. وصف صورة من الأخبار :

A : What caused this flood in the city centre ?

• ما الذى تسبب فى هذا الفيضان فى وسط المدينة ؟

B : The picture shows that a large water pipe burst.

• توضيح الصورة أن ما سورة مياة ضخمة انفجرت.

12. Making predictions and discussing personal goals :

١٢. عمل تنبؤات ومناقشة الأهداف الشخصية :

A : Do you think e-sports will become more popular than football ?

• هل تعتقد أن الرياضة الإلكترونية ستكون أكثر شعبية من كرة القدم ؟

B : I don't think so.

• لا أعتقد ذلك.

A : What's your dream job ?

• ما هى الوظيفة التى تحلم بها ؟

B : My dream job is to be an engineer.

• أحلم بأن أكون مهندس.

13. Expressing certainty and uncertainty about the future :

١٣. التعبير عن التأكد وعدم التأكد فى المستقبل :

A : What do you think your city will be like in 2050 ?

• فى اعتقادك كيف سيكون شكل مدينتك فى عام ٢٠٥٠ ؟

B : I think there will definitely be more tall buildings.

• أعتقد أنه سيكون هناك بالتأكيد مزيدًا من المبانى العالية.

Exercise on Language Functions

السؤال الأول في ورقة الامتحان

Finish the following dialogue :

A. *Ahmed and Ayman are talking about natural habitats.*

Ahmed : Hello, Ayman. What are you doing ?
Ayman : Hello, Ahmed. (1) ..... .
Ahmed : (2) ..... ?
Ayman : The book is about animals in rainforests.
Ahmed : (3) ..... ?
Ayman : The orangutan is my favourite rainforest animal.
Ahmed : What is the problem that affects rainforests badly ?
Ayman : (4) ..... .
Ahmed : What does deforestation mean ?
Ayman : (5) ..... .

B. *Ayman and Ashraf are talking about renewable energy.*

Ayman: Hello Ashraf. What are you reading ?
Ashraf : Hello, Ayman. (1) ..... .
Ayman: (2) ..... ?
Ashraf : It is about renewable energy.
Ayman: (3) ..... ?
Ashraf : In my opinion, it's our hope in the future.
Ayman: What are the forms of renewable energy ?
Ashraf : (4) ..... .
Ayman: What do you think of solar energy projects in Egypt ?
Ashraf : (5) ..... .

C. *Ahmed and Hassan are talking about their future jobs.*

Ahmed : Hi, Hassan. Can I ask you some questions ?
Hassan : Hi, Ahmed. (1) ..... .
Ahmed : (2) ..... ?
Hassan : Yes, I like media so much.
Ahmed : (3) ..... ?
Hassan : I like the job of a newsreader so much.
Ahmed : What are the skills needed for this job ?
Hassan : (4) ..... . What about your favourite future job ?
Ahmed : (5) ..... .
Hassan : Great. The photographer is a great job.

2. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

السؤال الثانى فى ورقة الامتحان

believed - million - wonders - believes - period - Desert

A Egypt has some wonders. The great Sand Sea is one of these (1) ..... . This is a part of the Western (2) ....., and here you can find lots of big sand mountains and some unusual glass. It is (3) ..... that the glass is more than 29 (4) ..... years old. *(Cairo 2022)*

fly - place - hard - flew - ways - weather

B Winter is cold in some places. It can be (1) ..... for animals and birds to find food during winter. They get through this time in many (2) ..... . For example, birds and butterflies can (3) ..... so many of them do not stick around for the winter. They go to another (4) ..... with nice weather. Then, they come home in the spring. We call this migration. *(Alexandria 2022)*

language - has - have - online - articles - jobs

C I studied English and media at university. I work as an editor. I work for an English (1) ..... website. Nowadays more people read news (2) ..... . I like this job. Lots of different journalists send me their (3) ..... and I (4) ..... to decide which ones are the most important. It's one of the most interesting jobs. *(Giza 2022)*

products - will - energy-saving - meteorite - rechargeable - would

D We have to care for the planet on which we live. There are many ways to be green. This can be done by using sustainable (1) ..... . We can use (2) ..... light bulbs that do not use much electricity. We can also use (3) ..... batteries which can be charged many times. If we didn't help the environment, our life (4) ..... be more difficult. *(Gharbia 2022)*

I - funny - called - me - name - likes

E I work in a tourist information office. Three other people work with (1) ..... . They are (2) ..... Nada, Samar and Omar. Nada is a very (3) ..... girl and she always makes jokes. Samar is an older woman and I don't know her very well. Omar is a friendly man and everyone (4) ..... him because he's very helpful. *(Sohag 2022)*

3. Reading Comprehension

قطع الفهم

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

وهو عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال وثلاثة أسئلة بأداة استفهام.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Until the 1960s, the Aral Sea was one of the biggest seas in the world. Today, you can walk across a lot of it. It looks like a desert. There are boats now lying on sand that was once the bottom of the sea.

The problem started in the 1960s when people started to **irrigate** the land around the Aral Sea to grow cotton. Every year after that, there was less and less water and the sea became smaller. Today, there is little water left in parts of the sea. In the east part, there is no water at all.

In the 1980s, the fishing village of Muynat was next to the sea. Today, the nearest sea water is about 70 kilometres away. Few people in the village have the same jobs now. They have to find different jobs.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The word "**irrigate**" means ..... .
   a. water b. give up c. wake up d. break down
2. The fishing village of Muynat wasn't ..... the sea.
   a. near b. far from c. next to d. above
3. The suitable title for this passage is "....." .
   a. The Sahara Desert b. The Aral Sea
   c. The Red Sea d. The Black Sea

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Why is the sea smaller now than in the past ?

   .....

5. Why do you think people in Muynat have different jobs today ?

   .....

6. Summarise the third paragraph in your own words.

   .....

DAYS 2 & 3

Vocabulary, Language, Writing & Accumulative Tests

قم بحل اختبار على كل وحدتان
من الاختبارات التراكمية

1. General Revision on Vocabulary

مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

Unit 7

I Important Vocabulary

coastal	ساحلى	explain	يشرح/يفسر
grassland	أرض عشبية - مرعى	understand	يفهم
rainforests	غابات مطيرة	directions	اتجاهات
turtles	سلاحف بحرية	fur	فرو الحيوان
oasis - oases	واحة - واحات	species	فصائل / أنواع
protect	يحمى	poem	قصيدة شعرية
continue	يستمر	fight	يتشاجر
deforestation	إزالة الغابات [التصحر]	mainly	بشكل رئيسى
endangered	معرض للخطر	forests	غابات
orangutan	إنسان الغابة	frogs	ضفادع
palm oil	زيت النخيل	lizards	سحالى
appearance	مظهر	habitat	بيئة طبيعية - موطن
publish	ينشر	lifestyle	أسلوب حياة
personification	تشخيص - تجسيد	spring	ينبوع [مياه]
pollute	يلوّث	mountains	جبال
newsagent	بائع صحف	furniture	أثاث المنزل

II Definitions

coastal habitat	these habitats are next to the sea or the ocean. You often find rocks there	بيئة ساحلية
mountain	a very high area of land	جبل
rainforest	this habitat has a lot of trees	غابة مطيرة
species	a group of animals or plants of the same kind	نوع / سلالة
deforestation	when all the trees in one area are cut down	إزالة الغابات

confused	unable to understand something clearly	التشخيص/التجسيد
caracal	a wild cat with long legs and big ears lives in Africa and Asia	حيوان الوشق المصرى [الكاركال]

III Synonyms المترادفات

word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف
cause	سبب	reason
strange	غريب	unusual
suitable	مناسب	appropriate
organise	ينتظم - يرتب	arrange

IV Antonyms المضادات

word الكلمة		Antonym المضاد	
bright	فاتح اللون	dark	داكن اللون
cause	سبب	result	نتيجة
fill	يملأ	empty	يُفرغ

V Prefixes, suffixes

* en-	→	endanger	يُعرض للخطر
* -er	→	owner	مالك

VI Important expressions & prepositions

symbol of	رمز لـ	carry out	يُنفذ
kind of	نوع من	ask for directions	يسأل عن الاتجاهات
a three-hour drive	قيادة لمدة ٣ ساعات	give an example	يطرح مثالاً
fall into	يسقط فى	get from ... to ...	... يصل من ... إلى
cut out of	منحوت فى	live for up to ...	... يعيش فيما يزيد على
in the shape of	على شكل	famous for	مشهور بـ
(be) surrounded by	مُحاط بـ	(be) covered by	مغطى بـ
in danger	فى خطر	worried about	قلق بشأن

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. There are a lot of trees in the ..... and it rains a lot there.
   a. rainforests b. deserts c. poles d. coasts

2. Our house is ..... by a fence of trees.
   a. blocked b. surrounded c. clicked d. stood
3. "....." is the antonym of the word "protect".
   a. Keep b. Damage c. Develop d. Save
4. A ..... is something that makes you feel it is beautiful or amazing.
   a. wander b. wonder c. border d. palm
5. Cutting down all trees in one area is called ..... .
   a. condensation b. evaporation c. deforestation d. space station
6. "....." means being put in a dangerous situation.
   a. Safe b. Great c. Surrounded d. Endangered
7. Students in the Faculty of Science study many ..... of plants and animals.
   a. spaces b. species c. poles d. pieces
8. The synonym of the word "famous" is ".....".
   a. unknown b. well-known c. unclear d. strange
9. The doctor advised me to change my ..... to get better.
   a. lifestyle b. clothes c. town d. friends
10. The coastal habitat is found next to the ..... .
   a. desert b. sea c. North Pole d. lake

Unit 8

I Important Vocabulary

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	absorb	يمتص
melting ice	انصهار الجليد	renewable energy	طاقة متجددة
landfill sites	أماكن تجمع القمامة	avoid	يتجنب
carbon dioxide	ثانى أكسيد الكربون	climate change	تغير مناخى
fossil fuels	وقود حفرى	solar energy	طاقة شمسية
methane	غاز الميثان	electricity	كهرباء
printer	طابعة	recycle	يعيد تدوير
deforestation	إزالة الغابات	traditions	تقاليد
weavers	نساجون	threads	خيوط
fabric	قماش	carpets	سجاد
seagrass	عشب البحر	disappear	يختفى
environmental	بيئى	coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية

volunteer	متطوع	rubbish	قمامة
Antarctic	المنطقة القطبية الجنوبية	breathe	يتنفس
university	جامعة	equipment	معدات
transport	النقل	discussion	مناقشة
connected	متصل	factories	مصانع

II Definitions

air pollution	damage caused by chemicals and waste	تلوث الهواء
landfill site	a place where people leave rubbish on the land	موقع مكب نفايات
absorb	to take in	يمتص
deforestation	when all tree in an area are cut down	إزالة الغابات
solar energy	the energy we get from the sun	طاقة شمسية

III Synonyms

المترادفات

word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف
pass	يجتاز / ينجح	succeed in
breathe in	يأخذ شهيق - يستنشق	inhale
breathe out	يطلق زفير	exhale
fabric	قماش	cloth

IV Antonyms

المضادات

word الكلمة		Antonym المضاد	
pass	يمر / يجتاز	fail	يفشل
keep	يستمر	stop	يتوقف
breathe in	يستنشق	breathe out	يُخرج زفير
below	أسفل	above	أعلى

V Prefixes, suffixes

* dis-	→	disappear	يختفى
* -able	→	renewable	متجدد
* -al	→	traditional	تقليدى

VI Important expressions & prepositions

find out	يكتشف	slow down	يبطئ
get worse	يزداد سوء	keep ... clean	يحافظ على ... نظيف
get hotter	يزداد حرارة	type of	نوع من
reason for	سبب / مبرر لـ	connected to	متصل / مرتبط بـ
take turns	يتبادل الأدوار	bad for	سيىء لـ
throw away	يرمى / يلقى	that's why	لهذا السبب
make into	يحول إلى	move to	ينتقل إلى
forms of	أشكال لـ	according to	طبقًا لـ / وفقًا لـ
decide to	يقرر أن	agree with	يتفق مع [شخص]
cut down trees	يقطع الأشجار	give a speech	يُلقى خطاب

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. ..... are forms of non-renewable energy.
   a. Solar energy b. Fossil fuels
   c. Hydroelectric power d. Wind turbines
2. Trees ..... in carbon dioxide and give out oxygen.
   a. move b. breathe c. make d. turn
3. ..... sites are dangerous for the environment. We should recycle rubbish instead.
   a. Landfill b. Factories c. Hospitals d. Parks
4. ..... are used for covering floors.
   a. Sofas b. Carpets c. Curtains d. Blankets
5. "Take in" can be replaced by the word "..... ".
   a. give out b. absorb c. repeat d. recycle
6. The headmaster ..... a speech about the importance of recycling old things.
   a. spoke b. gave c. took d. left
7. You should ..... making bad friends.
   a. suggest b. avoid c. prefer d. practise
8. We can get ..... energy from the sun.
   a. wind b. solar
   c. lunar d. non-renewable
9. What are the ..... for climate changes in the world ?
   a. causes b. reasons c. seasons d. advantages
10. "..... " is the antonym of the word "decrease".
    a. Reduce b. Increase c. Slow down d. Interrupt

Unit 9

I Important Vocabulary

light bulb	مصباح كهربائى	greenhouse	بيت زجاجى لزراعة النباتات
energy - saving	موفر للطاقة	initiative	مبادرة
waste	نفايات / يُهدر	sea level	مستوى البحر
toothbrush	فرشاة أسنان	communities	مجتمعات
remote	بعيد	inexpensive	رخيص الثمن
businesses	شركات	simple	بسيط
private	خاص / ملاكى	wind turbines	طواحين الهواء
solar panels	خلايا شمسية	water wheels	سواقى
remote control	جهاز تحكم عن بعد	air conditioning	تكييف الهواء
reusable	قابل لإعادة الاستخدام	totally	بشكل كامل
personally	شخصيًا	opinions	آراء
farmland	أرض زراعية	desertification	التصحر
permission	إذن	landscape	صور الطبيعة / منظر طبيعى
create	يبْدع / يختلق	bamboo	نبات الخيزران
region	منطقة	seedling	نبتة - شجرة صغيرة
products	منتجات	sustainable	مستدام
earthquake	زلزال	forests	غابات

II Definitions

air conditioning	a machine that makes air in a room stay cool or warm	تكييف الهواء
reusable	able to be used again	يمكن إعادة استخدامه
sustainable	able to continue without causing little or no damage to the environment	مستدام / صديق للبيئة
bamboo cup	a cup made from a tall, strong grass	كوب بامبو (مصنوع من الخيزرات)
rechargeable	can be filled again with an electrical power	قابل لإعادة الشحن

III Synonyms

المترادفات

word الكلمة		**Synonym** المرادف
provide	يزود - يمد بـ	give / supply
give up	يُقلع عن	stop

frightened	خائف	afraid	
inexpensive	رخيص الثمن	cheap	
reduce	بعيد	decrease	

IV Antonyms المضادات

word الكلمة		Antonym المضاد	
lower	أكثر انخفاضًا	higher	أكثر ارتفاعًا
easy	سهل	complicated	معقد
remote	بعيد	near	قريب
ugly	قبيح	beautiful	جميل

V Prefixes, suffixes

* -in	→	inexpensive	رخيص [الثمن]
* -able	→	rechargeable	قابل للشحن
* dis-	→	disadvantages	عيوب / سلبيات

VI Important expressions & prepositions

turn off	يغلق / يفصل	protect from	يحمى من
give up	يتوقف عن - يستسلم	come out	يغمر
along coast	بامتداد الساحل	far away from	بعيدًا عن
move to	ينتقل إلى	(be) used for	يُستخدم فى
think about	يفكر فى	set up	يؤسس / ينشىء
the whole world	العالم بأكمله	do a survey on	يقوم بدراسة على
write up	يكتب بالتفصيل	worried about	قلق بشأن
In my opinion	فى رأيى	plan to	يخطط لـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. Coal and petrol are not ..... sources of energy.
   a. non-renewable b. useful
   c. sustainable d. colorful
2. Melting ice in the North Pole causes an increase in the sea ..... .
   a. fish b. pollution c. level d. weeds
3. The word "inexpensive" gives the same meaning as "..... ".
   a. dangerous b. cheap c. simple d. hard

4. The antonym of the word "simple" is "……".
   a. easy b. complicated c. comfortable d. useful
5. The synonym of the word "remote" is "……".
   a. near b. far c. close d. hard
6. This factory …… dairy products such as cheese and yogurt.
   a. reduces b. increases c. produces d. pollutes
7. My uncle has a …… that makes parts of cars.
   a. shop b. business c. hotel d. café
8. "Fantastic" can be replaced with "……".
   a. terrible b. awesome c. dangerous d. ugly
9. You should …… off your computer at night before sleeping.
   a. take b. turn c. make d. put
10. We should …… reusable things to protect the environment and save energy.
   a. cycle b. rewrite c. recycle d. rearrange

Unit 10

I Important Vocabulary

toiler	عامل مكافح	flood	فيضان
gravity	الجاذبية الأرضية	century	قرن [١٠٠ عام]
author	كاتب - مؤلف	trainers	حزاء رياضى
age	عصر	in vain	عبثا - بلاجدوى
space station	محطة فضائية	organise	ينظم
telescope	تليسكوب	solar system	المجموعة الشمسية
disability	عدم القدرة / العجز	lenses	عدسات
orbit	يدور حول	astronomer	عالم فلك
satellite	قمر صناعى	improve	يُحسن
weather	طقس	publish	ينشر
allow	يسمح	signal	إشارة
helmet	خوذة	receiver	جهاز استقبال
newspapers	جرائد	mountains	جبال
communication	اتصال	old-fashioned	موضة قديمة
explore	يستكشف	astronaut	رائد فضاء
researcher	باحث / دارس	planetarium	القبة السماوية

directions	اتجاهات	carefully	بحرص
wireless	هوائى بدون سلك	prepare	يُجهز / يعد
Mars	كوكب المريخ		

II Definitions

astronaut	a person who travels into space	رائد فضاء
astronomer	a person who studies the stars and planets	عالم فلكى
spacecraft	a machine that travels through space with or without people	مركبة فضاء
telescope	a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away	تلسكوب
space station	a large spacecraft where people live and work	محطة فضاء

III Synonyms

المترادفات

word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف
allow	يسمح	let
popular	شائع / محبوب	common
alive	على قيد الحياة / حى	living
specific	معين / محدد	particular / certain
far away	بعيد - ناء	remote
comfortable	مريح	relaxing

IV Antonyms

المضادات

word الكلمة		Antonym المضاد	
useful	مفيد	useless	غير مفيد
alive	على قيد الحياة	dead	ميت
stay	يبقى / يظل	leave	يغادر
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح

V Prefixes, suffixes

* un-	→	uncomfortable / unpopular	غير مريح / غير محبوب
* -er	→	researcher	باحث
* -ly	→	successfully	بنجاح

VI Important expressions & prepositions

go into space	يسافر للفضاء الخارجى	come true	يتحقق
interested in	مهتم بـ	look for	يبحث عن
find out	يكتشف	learn more about	يتعلم الكثير عن
by the end of	قبل نهاية	take notes	يسجل ملاحظات
communicate with	يتواصل مع	belong to	ينتمى إلى / يخص
by the door	بجوار الباب	talk to	يتحدث إلى
land on	يهبط على	make a phone call	يجرى مكالمة هاتفية
different from	مختلف عن	do a research	يقوم ببحث
dream of	يحلم بـ	go around	يدور حول

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. Many astronomers studied the planets in our solar ..... .
   a. party b. group c. system d. team
2. Scientists use the ..... to make things nearer.
   a. telescope b. helmet c. receiver d. drawer
3. Satellites send ..... to the internet to help us.
   a. signs b. signals c. scenes d. slices
4. You can take summer courses in English to ..... your language.
   a. prove b. approve c. improve d. move
5. You can see a lot of satellites ..... the Earth.
   a. orbit b. leave c. hit d. build
6. "....." is the synonym of "let".
   a. Arrive b. Allow c. Come d. Take
7. The person who studies the stars and planets is called a/an ..... .
   a. astronaut b. astronomer c. vet d. teacher
8. ..... is called the red planet.
   a. Earth b. Mars c. Pluto d. March
9. To get the opposite of the word "popular" we add the prefix ..... .
   a. in- b. un- c. im- d. dis-
10. You can make an adverb from the adjective "successful" by adding the suffix "..... ".
    a. -al b. -ly c. -er d. -y

Unit 11

I Important Vocabulary

retire	يتقاعد	stuck	عالق
trust	يثق - ثقة	festival	مهرجان
traffic	حركة المرور	recently	حديث / مؤخرا
guardian	حارس	summarise	يلخص
linguist	عالم باللغة - لغوى	path	طريق - ممر
journalist	صحفى	wooden	خشبى
newsreader	قارئ النشرة	article	مقال
photographer	مصور	radio presenter	مقدم برامج إذاعى
witness	شاهد	editor	محرر
local	محلى	normally	طبيعيًا
warning	تحذير	pipe	ماسورة
interesting	شيق	fix	يصلح
football tournament	دورى كرة القدم	tourism	سياحة
recycling	إعادة التدوير	teenagers	مراهقين
government	حكومة	climbers	متسلقين الجبال
apparently	بوضوح	motorbike	دراجة نارية
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية	whale	حوت

II Definitions

camera operator	a person who controls a television camera	مصور تلفزيونى
journalist	a person who researches and writes news articles	صحفى
photographer	a person whose job is to take photographs	مصور
web designer	a person who decides how a webpage should look	مصمم مواقع
radio presenter	a person who talks on a radio programme	مقدم برامج إذاعية

III Synonyms

المترادفات

word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف
normally	بشكل معتاد	ordinarily/regularly
cross	غاضب	angry / furious
large	[كبير [الحجم	very big / huge
wear	يرتدى	put on
pleased	سعيد	happy

IV Antonyms

المضادات

word الكلمة		Antonym المضاد	
normally	طبيعيًا / بشكل معتاد	untypically	بشكل غير نمطى
online	متصل بالإنترنت	offline	غير متصل بالإنترنت
large	كبير	tiny	دقيق / صغير جدًا
noisy	صاخب	quiet	هادئ
win	يفوز	lose	يخسر

V Prefixes, suffixes

* un-	→	unable	غير قادر
* -er	→	photographer/presenter	مصور / مقدم برامج
* ab-	→	abnormal	غير طبيعى

VI Important expressions & prepositions

rather than	فضلًا عن / بدلًا من	in the middle of	فى منتصف
welcome to	يرحب بـ	for free	مجانًا
type of	نوع من	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
on fire	مشتعل فيه النيران	have a picnic	يخرج فى نزهة
get lost	يضل الطريق	by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ
on a radio programme	فى برنامج إذاعى	get news	يعرف الأخبار
give reasons for	يعطى أسباب لـ	as quickly as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. The person who researches and writes news articles is called a ..... .
   a. photographer b. presenter
   c. journalist d. vet
2. "Ordinarily" can be replaced by the word "..... ".
   a. abnormally b. normally
   c. logically d. exceptionally
3. "Quiet" is the antonym of the word "..... ".
   a. noisy b. pleased c. unhappy d. sad

4. My uncle reads the news on TV. He is a ..... .
   a. web designer b. newsreader
   c. camera operator d. teacher
5. The writers usually get photographs from ..... .
   a. journalists b. photographers c. designers d. doctors
6. A ..... is the person who sees the event first and reports it.
   a. criminal b. barber c. witness d. baker
7. We add the suffix "....." to give the adjective of the word "wood".
   a. –ness b. –ly c. –en d. –tion
8. My grandfather ..... from his work at the age of 65.
   a. joined b. retired c. prepared d. graduated
9. ..... means not able to be moved.
   a. Stuck b. Open c. Stoled d. Seem
10. He ordered me not to come late again. He gave a/an ..... .
   a. warning b. idea c. prize d. price

Unit 12

I Important Vocabulary

device	جهاز	driverless	ذاتى القيادة (بدون سائق)
drone	طائرة بدون طيار	cashless	غير نقدى
passenger	راكب / مسافر	qualification	مؤهل
lane	حارة	capital	عاصمة
firefighter	رجل إطفاء	expert	خبير
hero	بطل	disabled	معاق
percent	فى المائة	electric	كهربى
farmland	أرض زراعية	prediction	تنبؤ
assistant	مساعد	ability	قدرة
mask	قناع	fabric	قماش
temperature	درجة الحرارة	challenge	تحدى / يتحدى
accountant	محاسب	engineering	هندسة
distance	مسافة	professional	محترف
marathon	ماراثون (سباق جرى طويل)	robotics	علم الروبوتات
qualification	مؤهل	succeed	ينجح
internship	فترة تدريب	African	أفريقى

II Definitions

distance	how much space between two places or things	مسافة
internship	when you work, often without being paid, to learn about a job	فترة تدريب
marathon	a running race of around 42 km	سباق الجرى
set up	to start a business	يُقيم / يُنشئ
skill	the ability to do something well	مهارة

III Synonyms المترادفات

word الكلمة		**Synonym** المرادف
ability	قدرة	capability
rise	يرتفع / يزداد	increase
succeed in	ينجح	pass
leave school	ينتهى من الدراسة	finish school

IV Antonyms المضادات

word الكلمة		**Antonym** المضاد	
ability	قدرة	inability	عدم القدرة
rise	يرتفع	fall	يسقط
professional	محترف	amateur	هاو
professional	محترف	expert	يفشل

V Prefixes, suffixes

* in-	→	inability	عدم القدرة
* im-	→	impossible	مستحيل
* -less	→	driverless	بلا سائق
* -or	→	governor	محافظ

VI Important expressions & prepositions

make prediction	يتنبأ	hear of / about	يسمع عن
do project	يقوم بمشروع	one third	ثلث
do testing	يقوم بإجراء إختبارات	throw away	يُلقى / يرمى

apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة	work as	يعمل كـ
do a course	يقوم بدورة تدريبية	goals for the future	أهداف مستقبلية
do a marathon	يشارك فى سباق جرى	against the law	ضد القانون
take ... away from	يأخذ ... بعيدًا عن	take off	تقلع (الطائرة) / يخلع (ملابس)
for example	على سبيل المثال	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
make sure	يتأكد	break the law	يخالف القانون

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. Mohamed Salah is my ..... . I admire him so much.
   a. hire b. hero c. worker d. baker
2. Mona works as a/an ..... at a supermarket.
   a. carpenter b. nurse c. assistant d. vet
3. The synonym of the word "....." is "rise"
   a. reduce b. increase c. break d. knock
4. "....." is the antonym of the word "professional".
   a. Amateur b. Client c. Hero d. Clerk
5. The suffix "....." gives the noun of the word "disable".
   a. -ity b. -ment c. -ness d. -tion
6. The prefix "....." gives the opposite of the word "possible".
   a. dis- b. non- c. un- d. im-
7. The High Dam helped us a lot to ..... the water of the Nile.
   a. damage b. control c. waste d. leave
8. ..... is the ability of doing something well.
   a. Skull b. Skill c. Sail d. Sell
9. The train doesn't use oil. It is ..... .
   a. robotic b. heroic c. electric d. pandemic
10. The suffix "....." means without.
   a. -ful b. -ly c. -ness d. -less

2. General Revision on Language

مراجعة على أهم القواعد اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

Unit 7

* Present and Past Simple Passive with and without "by" :

صيغة المبنى للمجهول فى زمنى المضارع والماضى البسيط باستخدام أو بدون استخدام "by"

1. Present Simple Passive :

نائب الفاعل [المفعول الذى حل محل الفاعل] + am / is / are + p.p.

- **We use it when the action is more important than who does it.**

- يستخدم عندما يكون الحدث أكثر أهمية من فاعله.

ex. - Warm wet areas are called a rainforest.
ex. - These habitats are found at the top and the bottom of Earth.
ex. - Gebel Elba isn't visited by many tourists.

2. The passive with (by) :

- **We use the passive with (by) when you need to talk about the person or thing doing the action.**

- يستخدم المبنى للمجهول مع **(by)** عندما نحتاج التحدث عن الشخص أو الشئ الذى يفعل الحدث.

ex. - Egypt is visited by more than 14 million tourists every year.
ex. - The national park is surrounded by grasslands.
ex. - The goals are scored by Mohamed Salah.

3. Past Simple Passive :

نائب الفاعل [المفعول الذى حل محل الفاعل] + was / were + p.p.

ex. - This house was built in 1996.
ex. - The Pyramids were built thousands of years ago.
ex. - 14% of the rainforests were lost because of deforestation.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets :

1. The lake is ..... (fill) with the bright blue water.
2. Last year, many homes ..... (are) built near the river.

3. Who was this wall ..... (painting) by ?
4. The news ..... (are) watched by Ali.
5. The beaches are ..... (cleaning) every day.
6. Some of turtles' eggs are ..... (eat) by birds and animals.
7. The pyramids ..... (is) visited by tourists.
8. The e-mail ..... (is) sent by Ali yesterday.
9. Many roads were ..... (build) in our city.
10. Who was the telephone ..... (invent) by ?

Unit 8

1. "The first conditional" (if) : حالة [if] الشرطية الأولى :

وتستخدم للتعبير عن الأشياء الممكن حدوثها مستقبلًا:

ex. - If you study hard, you'll pass the exam.

[If / when] present simple , Condition جملة الشرط	+	will [not] + [inf] Result النتيجة

ex. - If we recycle our rubbish, our environment will be cleaner.
Coral reefs will die if our seas become warmer.

2. Verb +(to + inf) or (–ing) :

- **Use (verb + to) with verbs such as** need , plan , choose , decide
  ex. - We need to use clean renewable energy.
  ex. - Salma decided to travel abroad.
- **Use (verb + –ing) with verbs such as** keep , avoid , enjoy
  ex. - Do you enjoy playing the piano ?
  ex. - We can avoid cutting down trees.

Expressing reasons and contrast : التعبير عن الأسباب والتناقض :

1. Reason : التعبير عن السبب :

because لأن / بسبب [Subject فاعل] + [verb فعل] **because +** [Subject فاعل] + [verb فعل]

ex. - Baby fish and sea animals live in seagrass because it is a safe place.

This is because هذا بسبب .... Subject فاعل + verb فعل ..... . **This is because** Subject فاعل + verb فعل

ex. - Seagrass helps keep the sea healthy and it can help stop climate change. This is because seagrass absorbs 10% of the ocean's carbon dioxide every year.

That is why لذلك / ولهذا السبب .... جملة كاملة . **That is why** Subject فاعل + verb فعل

ex. - Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than rainforests. That is why seagrass can help stop climate change.

2. Contrast : التعبير عن التناقض :

However ومع ذلك .... Subject فاعل + verb فعل ..... . **However,** Subject فاعل + verb فعل

ex. - About 90% of all seagrass has disappeared from the UK's coast in the last 100 years. However , there is an environmental project in the UK that is growing new seagrass.

Nevertheless ولكن / ومع ذلك / غير أن .... Subject فاعل + verb فعل ..... . **Nevertheless,** Subject فاعل + verb فعل

ex. - The plants will still be quite small. Nevertheless , they will grow into 20,000 square metres of seagrass.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If we burn plastic rubbish, it ..... (would) pollute the air.
2. What will ..... (happens) if we don't train well ?
3. A good student needs ..... (studying) hard to get high marks.
4. Tamer should avoid ..... (to eat) unhealthy food.
5. Nour decided ..... (visiting) her brother Hassan.
6. Sama enjoys ..... (play) video games.

7. How ..... (would) Tamer feel if he goes to the park ?
8. Our school wants ..... (starting) a recycling project at school.
9. The girl ran ..... (so) she was afraid.
10. He was feeling ill. ..... (because), he went to school.

Unit 9

1. "used to" for regular past habits and routines :

تستخدم [used to] للتعبير عن العادات والأعمال الروتينية فى الماضى

Formation التكوين

A

Affirmative statement
الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

إعتاد أن

subject الفاعل + used to + inf. مصدر الفعل ...

ex. - I used to play basketball.

B

Negative statement
الجملة الخبرية المنفية

للنفى نستخدم [didn't use to] :

subject الفاعل + didn't + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل ...

ex. - I didn't use to play tennis.

Interrogative : **صيغة الاستفهام :**

a. Yes / No question : أ. السؤال بـ [هل] :

• فى حالة صيغة الاستفهام بـ [هل] تستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Did + subject الفاعل + use to + inf. المصدر ?

ex. - Did your mother use to read to you when you were young ?
- No, she didn't. - Yes, she did. - وللإجابة المختصرة :

b. Wh - question : ب. السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام:

• فى حالة صيغة الاستفهام بـ [كلمة استفهام] تستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Question word كلمة استفهام + did + subject الفاعل + use to + inf. المصدر ?

ex. - Where did you use to live before you moved to this city ?
- We used to live in a village.

2. "The second conditional" (if) : حالة [if] الشرطية الثانية :

If + Past simple ماضى بسيط ,	would [not] + inf.
Condition جملة الشرط	Result النتيجة

تستخدم للتعبير عن الأشياء الغير حقيقية أو التخيلية فى الوقت الحاضر:

ex. - If I had money , I would buy a car.
ex. - If there were more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.
ex. - We would have fewer storms if climate change stopped.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. What did Mohamed ..... (used) to do when he was young ?
2. If Sara ..... (gets) up early, she would catch the bus.
3. Hala used to ..... (rode) a bike, but now she doesn't.
4. What ..... (will) you do if you had a lot of money ?
5. Abdullah didn't use ..... (play) in the street when he was young.
6. If we ..... (live) in Alexandria, we would go to the beach.
7. They ..... (don't) use to have clean water when they were young.
8. Did Salma ..... (used) to watch video games when she was five ?
9. They would ..... (won) the match if they played well.
10. Youssef used to ..... (gets) up early.

Unit 10

1. The Present Perfect Tense : زمن المضارع التام :

Formation التكوين

He, She, It,	اسم مفرد	→	has	+	p.p.
I, We, You, They,	اسم جمع	→	have		

ex. - She has tried lots of different sports.
- Have you ever used a telescope ?
- She has written the lessons.
- They have swept the floor.

2. The Present Perfect Continuous : المضارع التام المستمر :

Formation التكوين

Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة → Subject فاعل + have ['ve] / has ['s] + been + [inf. + ing] ... .

- للتعبير عن حدث بدأ فى الماضى ومازال مستمرًا حتى الآن.

ex. - Nora Al Matrooshi has been dreaming of going into space all her life.

3. The Past Perfect Tense : زمن الماضى التام :

Formation التكوين Subject فاعل + had ['d] + p.p.

Usage الاستخدام

It expresses an action that happened before another one in the past.

- يعبر هذا الزمن عن حدث تم قبل حدث آخر فى الماضى [الحدث الأول هو الماضى التام والحدث الثانى هو الماضى البسيط].

ex. - He had done his homework before he **watched** TV.
- They **had** their lunch after they had studied English.

ex. - He hadn't published his ideas until just before he **died**.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets :

1. ..... (Have) she ever used a telescope ?
2. Omar had ..... (finishes) his homework before watching TV.
3. Judy and Lamar have ..... (being) in Alexandria for 3 days.
4. Has Shahd ..... (never) visited Cairo ?
5. What ..... (has) you been doing at school this week ?
6. Salma has ..... (did) her English homework.
7. Nour has been ..... (study) all day.
8. Has Hassan ..... (visits) France before ?
9. My friends ..... (has) started a recycling project.
10. Have you ever ..... (be) to Alexandria ?

Unit 11

The past simple tense : زمن الماضى البسيط :

◀ قد سبق دراسته فى الأعوام السابقة

Affirmative Statements
الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

There was (كان يوجد [للمفرد]) + singular noun (اسم مفرد [يعد / لا يعد])

ex. - There was a party at Ali's house yesterday.

There were (كان يوجد [للجمع]) + plural noun (اسم جمع)

ex. - There were a lot of people in the park last week.

Negative statement
الجملة الخبرية المنفية

There was not [wasn't]

ex. - There wasn't any milk in the fridge.

There were not [weren't]

ex. - There weren't any pens on the table.

Interrogative
صيغة الاستفهام

Was there ..... ? (اسم مفرد)

ex. - Was there a nice place in our city ?
- Yes, there was.
- No, there wasn't.

Were there ..... ? (اسم جمع)

ex. - Were there any pictures on the wall ?
- Yes, there were.
- No, there weren't.

Reported Speech :

- الكلام المباشر "Direct Speech" هو الكلام الذى يأتى على لسان أحد ما مباشرة أو نصًا ويكون الكلام موضوعًا بين علامتى تنصيص " ..... " :

- "I am ill", said Ali.

- الكلام الغير مباشر "Reported Speech" هو الكلام الذى ينقله شخص ما عن شخص آخر، ولا يوضع الكلام غير المباشر بين علامتى تنصيص :

- Ali said (that) he was ill.

Statement : الجملة الخبرية :

Speaker المتحدث	فعل القول	(that)	subject	Past Simple	باقى الجملة
Ali	said / reported told + object مفعول	that	الفاعل he	فعل ماضى was	ill.
الشخص الذى قال الكلام المباشر		يمكن حذفها	يتم تحويل الضمائر بما يتناسب مع المتكلم والمخاطب	يتحول الزمن الى الأبعد	

- تحويل فعل القول كالتالى :

say / says تبقى كما هى → "say / says"

say to / says to تحول إلى → "tell / tells"

said تبقى كما هى → "said"

said to تحول إلى → "told"

said لا يأتى بعدها مفعول

ex. - Ali said, "I like rice." ⟶ Ali said that he liked rice.

told لابد أن يأتى بعدها مفعول

ex. - " I like rice." Ali said to me. ⟶ Ali told me that he liked rice.

- تحذف الأقواس وتربط بكلمة that ويمكن حذفها

promised / explained / admitted - يمكن تحويل فعل القول إلى الكلمات الاتية ولا يأتي بعدهم مفعول

ex. - The owner explained (that) there would be over 100 new jobs.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets :

1. There ..... (was) many people in the zoo last Friday.
2. The teacher told Mona that he ..... (checks) her homework.
3. Yesterday, Youssef ..... (finds) his lost keys.
4. Salma said that they ..... (don't) go to the park on Monday.
5. What ..... (do) you do last Monday ?
6. The little boy said that the factory ..... (is) on fire.
7. Was there a bank near the school ? - Yes, there ..... (is).
8. Adel said that he ..... (wants) to visit the water park.
9. Salma didn't ..... (ate) crisps yesterday.
10. The young girl said that she ..... (doesn't) go to the cinema.

Unit 12

1. (will / won't) + inf. المصدر

To talk about future predictions - للتحدث عن تنبؤات مستقبلية.

ex. - By 2050, all of our energy will be renewable.

ex. - E-sports won't be more popular than football.

2. (will / won't) be able to+ inf.

To talk about ability in the future. - يستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة فى المستقبل.

ex. - In the future, scientists will be able to find good solutions to some challenges.

ex. - We won't be able to grow the food we need on the farmland we have.

3. (be) going to for future plans

- استخدم [be] going to للخطط المستقبلية

Formation التكوين

Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

- I → am
- He, She, It, أو اسم مفرد → is + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
- You, We, They, أو اسم جمع → are

ex. - When I'm older, I'm going to work as a volunteer at weekends.

Exercise on Language

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets :

1. In the future, all of our energy will ..... (been) renewable.
2. Salma hopes that she ..... (work) as a doctor when she's older.
3. Ali won't be able ..... (achieve) his goal.
4. When Abdullah is older, he is going to ..... (works) as an engineer.
5. How will driverless cars ..... (improves) our lives ?
6. The man is going ..... (water) the plants.
7. Our team won't ..... (been) able to win the match.
8. What will scientists be able to ..... (doing) in the future ?
9. I think the weather will ..... (being) hot tomorrow.
10. Are you going ..... (visit) your aunt tomorrow ?

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

يكتب الطالب موضوعا إنشائيا من حوالى ١١٠ كلمة ويعتبر هذا السؤال من الأسئلة التى تحتاج إلى مزيد من التدريب ولذلك نقدم لك موضوعات إنشائية هامة لكل وحدة كما يمكنك مراجعة موضوعات أخرى بإجاباتها النموذجية فى نهاية كتاب الشرح.

Unit 7

"A review of a natural wonder in Egypt"

Egypt has a lot of natural wonders which cannot be seen in other places all over the world. The Kharga Oasis is one of Egypt's natural wonders. It is surrounded by desert, far from the River Nile. It is visited by more and more tourists every year. It is full of date palm trees. These dates can be exported to a lot of other places in addition to selling them in many shops in the local area.

Oases in general lie in remote places. Sometimes it is difficult to be reached especially in extreme weather. People prefer visiting near places to remote ones. If they are visited, it is also difficult to stay in for a few days. There are no many hotels or many houses around oases; simply because oases lie in the desert!

"A short story you have read recently"

It is a story about horses; their life, their habits and their loyalty. A horse is an animal which can feel and sense like people. Black Beauty is a horse born kind and beautiful. He never kicks or bites even when people make him sad. He treats his owner gently. If there are any dangers on the road, he stops at once to save the lives of his riders. If it is owned by a poor person, he never complains. He may not get enough food and may get ill but he goes on working. Sometimes he travels to long distances and difficult destinations and stays calm. He also may feel pains as there are some bad owners who hit their horses. I think the moral of this story is that animals are not machines!

Unit 8

"A review of how to protect our planet"

Our planet is in danger and I think this is because of some global issues قضايا . One of these dangerous problems that endanger our planet is removing trees!

Trees are a source of life. They give out oxygen and take in carbon dioxide. They also absorb pollutants in the atmosphere as they act like filters to our breathing. Apart from that, we get most of our materials in life from trees like wood, paper, fruits, seeds ... etc.

The bad thing is that trees are removed for financial مالى reasons! They are removed to make more space for building houses or hotels. They are removed to get and sell more of their wood and this, of course is a big mistake. Killing a source of life will lead to more and more global problems such as global warming, deforestation and desertification. We should control that by planting more trees.

"A biography about a famous person I admire"

My friend Magdi is the person I admire. Magdi was born by nature sociable and beloved by all people. Getting in touch with a lot of people has pros and cons. One of its cons is that there are weak people who hate seeing you in good condition and at the same time dealing with them in the same kind way. Magdi has made mistakes because of dealing with those people but the good thing is that Magdi admits يعترف his mistakes and says he learns lessons and messages from his mistakes. His best wise saying is "It is not a blame to make mistakes but the blame is not to be taught from your mistakes!"

He says his mistakes never stopped him dealing with all kinds of people but never repeat your former mistakes. I believe in his words and I see he is a role model because he touched something we all suffer from. I have learned from him that we live and learn!

Unit 9

"A review of a day I spent in a place I will never forget"

Last summer, I read an advertisement about a three -day holiday in Sharm El-Sheikh. The idea was new because I had never stayed in a hotel before. I booked and set off. In fact, I enjoyed the journey from the very recent time. The hotel was fantastic and the service was very good. The hotel had almost everything you need. Moreover, the city is very beautiful. It has a lot of activities. I enjoyed the sea and the water sports. I went snorkelling and saw the coral reefs.

I also visited Dahab and Ras Mohamed National Park which has rare kinds of fish.

The one and only disadvantage of this journey was the long distance as the journey look about seven hours but I recommend visiting Sharm El-Sheikh one day.

"A review of the Great Green Wall"

Desertification has become a great problem many countries suffer from and we must find a solution to it. Desertification happens when green land becomes desert. The Great Green Wall is an initiative set up in 2007 by the African Union to solve the problem of desertification in the Sahel region of Africa. Sahel region suffers from يعانى من droughts. People do not always farm the land well there. People also grow less amounts of food and lose their homes there.

The Great Green Wall will plant millions of trees and plants across Africa to create a growing green landscape. It is expected that this wall will be the biggest living thing in the world. It will create jobs for 10 million people. The trees and plants will improve the land for farming again.

This will help in creating a clean environment and reducing desertification.

"A review of how to be a successful person"

Success is not given on a silver plate! If you want to be a successful person, you have to work for it. There are some points you have to go through if you want to be successful. First, working hard is a golden key making you successful. A man with no goal is a man with nothing!

Second, believing in yourself and having confidence ثقة. Self-confidence is an important factor in achieving one's goal. Third, never look at what distracts يشتت you. As you are going for your goal, you meet some people who may distract and disturb what you are doing. The best piece of advice is to leave them and go on !

Don't forget that hanging around positive people is also a tool to be successful. Reading and knowledge are weapons to defend yourself against failure.

Finally, I'd like to say that failure is not the opposite of success but it is a step to success!

Unit 10

"A biography of Ayman Ragab"

Ayman Ragab is an Egyptian scientist who has always been interested in space science. NASA has been trying to understand what it can do with the rubbish that space journeys produce. Astronauts use a lot of plastic, paper and other waste on their journeys to space and this of course is a big problem.

NASA started a competition asking the world's best scientists to try and find a solution. Ayman Ragab entered the competition and came second in 2019. He suggested using jets of air to make the waste smaller and then help to recycle it!

Ayman is from the village of al-Dababiya near Luxor and graduated in Engineering from Aswan University. He has worked as a teaching assistant at the same university and now works as a researcher for a university in Finland.

Since he won his prize, he has worked on NASA's Technology Transfer Project which looks at how to use the latest technology in space, and he has recently found ways to save energy when there is little gravity.

"A biography of Dr Farouk El-Baz"

Egypt is rich in her human power and I am always proud of their worldwide sons who have become worldwide scientists known all over the world. One of those Egyptians is Dr Farouk El-Baz. He is a great scientist and a geologist. After studying the moon, Farouk started studying deserts on earth. He used satellites to find rivers that were under the sand. This work has helped Egypt and other countries to find new water. He also helped to show astronauts where they could find underground water in the desert. Before this work, he had helped to develop special cameras on the space shuttle.

Scientists had done a lot of research before the first person walked on the moon. Farouk El-Baz helped to plan where Apollo 11 should land on the moon and taught astronauts which rocks to take from the moon.

To sum up, I'd like to say such great scientists should be valued and encouraged to help our world more and more!

Unit 11

"A biography of Safia el-Mohandes"

Safia el Mohandes was born in Cairo. Her father was a famous linguist. He encouraged her to read Arabic books and novels. Safia also studied English literature at the university and graduated from the Faculty of Arts.

The first broadcast in Africa and in the whole Arab world was the Egyptian radio broadcasting. Safia was the first female voice on the radio.

She presented programmes for women and for children. Her most famous programme was "Housewives" which presented news, educational advice and drama for the whole Egyptian family.

Safia was very kind and helpful to all radio broadcasters. She helped everyone and so she was called""The mother of broadcasters". She was the head of the radio broadcasting until she retired in 1982.

"A review of the job of the journalist"

Honesty is the main quality in the job of the journalist. The job of a journalist is not an easy one. It needs hard work all around the day. This sometimes requires sleeplessness.

Meeting different people and finding out more about the world is a main part of the job. The job includes spending long time on the internet and talking to people on the phone too. You have to be interested in the world around you.

You also need to be good at listening and writing.

Unfortunately, there are some journalists who give fake news and report on unreal facts to attract more readers and earn more money. This is a misuse for the job of a journalist.

Finally, I'd like to say that honesty is the most important characteristic that remarks any job!

"A biography of Farouk Shousha"

Farouk Shousha was born in Damietta. He went to a nearby elementary school. He went to the local library at a very early age and was able to read many books in the Arabic language.

Now, he is a well-known radio presenter and a famous poet. He studied at Cairo University and graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum. He worked as a radio presenter and later on as a TV presenter too.

He always liked poetry and Arabic literature. In his programmes, Shousha always talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and its rich literature. For this reason, he was called "The guardian of the Arabic language". He won the Nile Prize for Literature in 2016.

Finally, I'd like to say; the more sincere you are at your job, the more you become successful.

Unit 12

"A review of your dream job"

To achieve your goal is to reach your dream job. My dream job is to become a famous writer. From the early age, I loved reading stories and its reviews.

Writing is a talent موهبة that requires special skills, so I started to take a course during the summer vacation. The year after the course, I joined a writing competition in my school and came the second.

After I finish my school, I hope I will join the Faculty of Arts and study at the press department. My role model is Naguib Mahfouz and I'd like to not only be a writer but a man of literature as well.
I hope to win the Nobel Prize for literature one day.

At the end , I'd like to say if you have a goal, you must work for it.

"A review of future homes"

Technological development is a never-ending process. Every day technology offers us surprises that appear at first amazing and as soon as time passes it becomes a part of history.

I think future homes will be connected to the internet and our mobile phones. If there were no persons at home, I would manage to open my home and begin getting my meal ready through my mobile. I think technological applications will have a great role at home. There will be an application that adjusts يضبط the temperature so we will of course dispense with نستغنى عن air conditioning. There will be an application that cooks meals. There will be an application that organises the demands of the home and puts them in the correct order. I think there will be also an application that washes clothes and dishes. Technology may not surprise us if it develops an application for teaching our children instead of schools and teachers !

3. Accumulative Tests

اختبارات تراكمية على الوحدات طبقًا لنظام البوكلت
للصف الثالث الإعدادى

Units 7 & 8

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Ashraf and Helmi are talking about animals and the environment.

Ashraf : Hi, Helmi. What are you watching ?

Helmi : Hi, Ashraf. I'm watching a documentary.

Ashraf : (1) ..... ?

Helmi : It talks about some natural habitats.

Ashraf : (2) ..... ?

Helmi : I prefer the rainforest animals. What about you ?

Ashraf : (3) ..... .

Helmi : You're right. Desert animals are amazing, but (4) ..... .

Ashraf : You can watch a documentary about them. Do you know any desert animals ?

Helmi : (5) ..... .

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

Great - building - built - walls - rocks - builders

The pyramids were (1)..... in Giza thousands of years ago. The Ancient Egyptians used great (2)..... to build them. Large (3)..... were used for building them. The (4)..... Pyramid is about 137 metres high. Egyptian people are so proud of their history. We should protect it well and children should know it.

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. ..... 4. .....

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

There are many serious problems that face the environment nowadays. Our survival on the earth as human beings and animals is highly related

with keeping these natural habitats well. The increase of population and lack of planning caused some dangerous problems. Deforestation is one of these problems that endanger thousands of species of animals and plants.

The worst effect of deforestation is reducing the green area. Hence, it affects climate changes. The ratio of carbon dioxide will increase in air. Namely, the temperature of the earth will increase as well. In addition, we will lose a large amount of oxygen and we'll destroy the natural habitats of many animals and birds. This affects the natural balance in the environment.

Great efforts have been done by many countries to save the situation. Some countries began to encourage planting new kinds of trees that grow quickly to face the problem of deforestation. Others tried to prevent cutting down trees.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The main idea of this passage is ..... .
   a. keeping the environment b. species of animals
   c. increasing temperature d. planning for future
2. Preventing cutting down trees is a ..... .
   a. problem b. solution c. deforestation d. pollution
3. Climate changes may lead to ..... .
   a. earthquakes b. increasing carbon dioxide
   c. increasing oxygen d. balance in the environment

b. Answer the following questions :

4. How can you infer from the text that many animals are in danger ?
   .....
5. Do you think that deforestation is the only problem that causes climate change ? How ?
   .....
6. Summarize the first paragraph of the text in one sentence.
   .....

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "Strange" has the same meaning of "..... ".
   a. usual b. normal c. unusual d. regular
2. To form the adjective of the word "tradition", we add the suffix "..... ".
   a. -able b. -al c. -ment d. -ness
3. He took 3 hours to get to his house. His house is ..... .
   a. busy b. lazy c. remote d. near
4. I can't buy that ..... mobile. I don't have enough money.
   a. free b. cheap c. expensive d. weak
5. A ..... is a person who makes cloth by weaving.
   a. diver b. thief c. weaver d. passenger
6. A ..... land is the land that is next to the sea or the ocean.
   a. forest b. desert c. coastal d. polar

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The pyramids ..... (build) by many workers.
2. Homework ..... (doesn't do) by Ahmed.
3. Who was the television ..... (invent) by ?
4. Ayman wants ..... (studying) hard to get high marks.
5. How ..... (would) Hoda feel if she visits Alexandria ?

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

6 Write ONE Hundred and TEN (110) words on the following :

"A review on the problem of deforestation"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Units 9 & 10

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Hassan and Salma are talking about sources of energy.

Hassan : Hi, Salma. What are you doing ?

Salma : Hi, Hassan. (1) ..... .

Hassan : A programme about sustainable energy ! (2) ..... ?

Salma : The word "sustainable" means causing little or no damage to the environment.

Hassan : (3) ..... ?

Salma : Yes, a lot of countries try to use these sources of energy nowadays.

Hassan : What are the kinds of these sustainable energy ?

Salma : (4) ..... .

Hassan : What do you think of using solar energy in Egypt ?

Salma : (5) ..... .

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

countryside - sustainable - solar - turned - save - turn

There are many ways to help the environment and (1)..... energy. If we (2)..... off lights before sleeping, we would save electricity. We can use (3)..... forms of energy such as (4)..... energy. Many countries nowadays try to use new forms of renewable energy. Egypt has great projects of solar farms.

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. ..... 4. .....

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Many countries in the world now welcome tourists because of the money they bring. Many countries make great efforts to encourage tourism and many also depend on what they earn from it to keep their economies going. People who travel as tourists can choose the form

of tourism that suits them. Some people like adventure tourism. While others prefer cultural tourism. People who have an illness can choose the medical tourism. Others prefer ecotourism.

Most tourists try to choose whichever places have fairly comfortable, cheap hotels, quiet, good food, safety, sunny weather or unusual things to see. They don't prefer places of bad weather or lack of safety.

One big problem for a country wishing to attract tourists is the high cost of building hotels for them. Building good hotels costs a lot of money, and many of the countries that need tourists are poor. What they spend on building has to be borrowed from foreign banks. Another problem is that big companies that build these hotels take large profits from them, so these countries don't make use of them at all.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The suitable title for this passage is "……".
   a. The dangers of tourism b. Poor countries and tourism
   c. Building hotels d. Saving the environment
2. Some people don't go to a place for a holiday although they like it because …… .
   a. it is very pleasant b. it is very comfortable
   c. of bad weather d. they might be treated well
3. Young people would be likely to choose …… tourism.
   a. adventure b. medical c. conference d. cultural

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Infer which types of tourism suit Egypt.

   ……

5. Which tourist places do you think are suitable for tourists in Egypt ?

   ……

6. Summarize the third paragraph in one sentence.

   ……

The Answers :

1. …… 2. …… 3. ……
4. …… 5. …… 6. ……

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "....." is the antonym of "alive"
   a. Common b. Weak c. Dead d. Living
2. You can take summer courses in English to ..... your language.
   a. prove b. approve c. improve d. move
3. We can get the opposite of the word "advantages" by adding the prefix "..... ".
   a. un- b. dis- c. ir- d. im-
4. "..... " means able to be used again.
   a. Reduced b. Rechargeable c. Reusable d. Replaced
5. Someone who studies planets and stars is called an ..... .
   a. astronaut b. astronomer c. astronomy d. asteroid
6. We should protect our environment, not ..... it.
   a. cycle b. recycle c. damage d. manage

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. What did Hassan ..... (used) to do when he was young ?
2. If Ayman ..... (studies) well, he would pass the exam.
3. Salma has ..... (sweep) the floor already.
4. My neighbours ..... (has) started a recycling project.
5. Has she ever ..... (be) to Hurghada ?

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. .....

6 Write ONE Hundred and TEN (110) words on the following :

"A review about the problem of desertification in Africa "

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Units 11 & 12

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Mohamed is talking to Sara who is a space engineer.

Mohamed : Welcome Sara. Can you tell us about your job ?

Sara : (1) ..... .

Mohamed : When did you want to be a space engineer ?

Sara : (2) ..... .

Mohamed : That's, great ! (3) ..... ?

Sara : I studied space engineering in Zagazig University.

Mohamed : (4) ..... ?

Sara : Yes, I won a space technology competition in London.

Mohamed : Are your parents proud of you ?

Sara : (5) ..... .

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....

4. ..... 5. .....

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

started - online - have - has - English - offline

My daughter Salma works for an (1)..... language news website. She (2)..... at a newspaper, but she thinks that more people read news (3)..... now, so she prefers this job. Many different people send her their articles and she (4)..... to decide which ones are the most important.

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. ..... 4. .....

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Alfred Nobel was born on 21st October 1833 in Sweden for a poor family. He was a chemist and a great inventor. Alfred couldn't go to school for many years because his father couldn't have enough money. Later, he was able to study because his father got a good job. Alfred was a very intelligent person. He was able to speak different languages. He also liked to read scientific books and to write stories. After his death in Italy in 1896, he left a lot of money, so people could start the Nobel Prize.

These are awards for people's great achievements all over the world in different fields such as medicine, science and literature. The winner gets both a small trophy and money. To remember Alfred Nobel, the awards are given on December 10th which is the day he died.

Two Egyptian people won the Nobel Prize : Naguib Mahfouz in 1988 for writing. He wrote 34 novels and more than 300 short stories. Ahmed Zewail got it in 1999 for chemistry. He invented the femto second.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The main idea of the passage is about the life of ..... .
   a. Naguib Mahfouz b. Ahmed Zewail
   c. Alfred Nobel d. Alfred's father
2. Alfred Nobel died in ..... when he was 63.
   a. Egypt b. Sweden c. England d. Italy
3. Naguib Mahfouz was the ..... Egyptian to get Nobel prize.
   a. second b. last c. first d. only

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Do you think that Nobel prizes are important ? Why / Why not ?

   .....

5. What would happen if Alfred's father didn't get a good job ?

   .....

6. Summarize the last paragraph of the text in one sentence.

   .....

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My father is my ..... . I admire him so much.
   a. hire b. worker c. hero d. worker
2. The ..... is the person who sees the event first and reports it.
   a. witness b. cook c. nurse d. carpenter
3. The synonym of the word "....." is "reduce".
   a. increase b. decrease c. knock d. rise
4. The prefix "..... " can give the antonym of the word "ability".
   a. im- b. re- c. ir- d. dis-

5. A ..... is a way to deal with or answer a puzzle or question.
   a. temperature b. solution c. device d. problem
6. He doesn't have any energy to do anything. He is ..... now.
   a. powerful b. tired c. clever d. heavy

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The boy said that he ..... (doesn't) go to the club the day before.
2. In the future, I think we won't ..... (had) as many cars on the roads.
3. My friend ..... (are) going to work as a teacher when he is older.
4. Mr Ayman said that it ..... (has) been fantastic.
5. Our team will be able ..... (win) the match.

The Answers :

1. ..... 2. ..... 3. .....
4. ..... 5. ..... 6. .....

6 Write ONE Hundred and TEN (110) words on the following :

"A review about your dream job "

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

DAY 4

1. General Exercises collected from SB & WB

ا. تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب و كتاب التدريبات.

1 Vocabulary

Unit 7 — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. ..... means that there are fewer trees in rainforests. *(SB page 6)*
   a. Evaporation b. Cultivation c. Deforestation d. Civilization
2. There are more than 7,000 different ..... animals in the world, such as the orangutan. *(SB page 6)*
   a. dangerous b. endangered c. destroyed d. difficult
3. The bodies of the mongooses are covered by thick ..... . *(SB page 10)*
   a. skin b. fur c. cotton d. leather
4. Remember to ..... your bottles with water before we go to the desert.
   a. fall b. fill c. feel d. fail *(WB page 71)*
5. A group of animals or plants of the same kind is called ..... . *(WB page 72)*
   a. space b. species c. spoon d. spade

Unit 8 — Student's Book & Workbook

1. Solar energy and wind power are types of ..... energy. *(SB page 14)*
   a. non-renewable b. renewable c. polluted d. expensive
2. We can avoid ..... down the trees by building the road in a different place. *(SB page 15)*
   a. taking b. cutting c. making d. giving
3. Rubbish that isn't recycled is put into ..... sites. *(SB page 21)*
   a. stations b. landfill c. ovens d. pipes
4. Egypt is usually sunny, so it is a great place to use ..... . *(WB page 78)*
   a. rubbish b. solar energy c. wind energy d. water energy
5. I'm going to ..... a speech about the environment. *(WB page 81)*
   a. talk b. take c. give d. decide

Unit 9 — Student's Book & Workbook

1. I use the rechargeable batteries for the TV ..... control. *(SB page 28)*
   a. far b. fast c. near d. remote
2. ..... conditioning makes the air inside a building cold. *(SB page 28)*
   a. Smoke b. Air c. Oil d. Water

3. This cup is made from a tall plant called ..... . *(WB page 84)*
   a. wheat b. corn c. bamboo d. reed
4. We cannot continue to use petrol for cars because it is not ..... .
   a. sustainable b. polluted c. important d. old *(WB page 84)*
5. The answer to this question is ..... . We all got it right ! *(WB page 86)*
   a. remote b. hard c. simple d. far

Unit 10 — Student's Book & Workbook

1. A lot of satellites ..... the Earth. *(SB page 43)*
   a. keep b. protect c. orbit d. prevent
2. A satellite sends a ..... to a receiver on Earth. *(SB page 43)*
   a. sign b. signal c. seal d. seat
3. There are eight planets in our ..... system. *(SB page 43)*
   a. digestive b. solar c. normal d. total
4. A person who travels into space is called a/an ..... . *(WB page 93)*
   a. teacher b. engineer c. surgeon d. astronaut
5. A ..... is a rock that flies through space. *(WB page 93)*
   a. comet b. telescope c. plane d. rocket

Unit 11 — Student's Book & Workbook

1. The workers will ..... the pipe today with a new strong one. *(SB page 46)*
   a. cut b. place c. replace d. damage
2. A big, old red car is ..... in the middle of the road. *(SB page 47)*
   a. stick b. steak c. stuck d. tick
3. The ..... is the person who researches and writes news articles. *(WB page 100)*
   a. vet b. journalist c. lawyer d. photographer
4. Ahmed loves taking photographs, so he wants to be a ..... .
   a. presenter b. photographer
   c. journalist d. vet
5. We can't play football because the ball has ..... ! *(WB page 101)*
   a. cut b. burst c. piped d. pumped

Unit 12 — Student's Book & Workbook

1. Malak 'd like to help people or help to ..... the environment. She's going to work as a volunteer. *(SB page 58)*
   a. damage b. prepare c. protect d. destroy

2. Many young people take a/an ..... in a business to learn about the job. *(SB page 63)*

a. friendship b. scholarship c. internship d. spaceship

3. Don't throw this bottle away, we can ..... it. *(SB page 63)*

a. damage b. burn c. reuse d. rewrite

4. ..... up means to start a business. *(WB page 109)*

a. Make b. Set c. Build d. Give

5. The space between two things is called the ..... between them. *(WB page 109)*

a. distance b. skill c. internship d. marathon

2 Language

Unit 7 — *Student's Book & Workbook*

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. These habitats ..... (is) found at the top and the bottom of Earth. *(SB page 3)*
2. A lot of our rainforests are ..... (cuts) down every year. *(WB page 70)*
3. Trees were ..... (planting) on the land to use for palm oil. *(SB page 6)*
4. How ..... (was) the stones for the pyramids carried to Giza ? *(WB page 72)*
5. Long ago, camels ..... (are) called "ships of the desert". *(SB page 11)*

Unit 8 — *Student's Book & Workbook*

1. Our environment will be cleaner if we ..... (recycled) our rubbish. *(SB page 13)*
2. What ..... (would) you do if you don't understand the homework ? *(WB page 77)*
3. If our oceans keep ..... (to get) warmer, some coral reefs will die. *(SB page 15)*
4. I will ..... (worked) harder next year. *(WB page 77)*
5. They need ..... (having) a lot of important materials inside them. *(WB page 79)*

Unit 9 — *Student's Book & Workbook*

1. In the past, people didn't ..... (used) to use energy-saving light bulbs. *(SB page 23)*

2. If we had more money, we ..... (can) buy that new phone in the shop window. *(WB page 85)*
3. Those farmers ..... (move) if there was another flood. *(SB page 25)*
4. Which food do you like that you didn't use ..... (like) when you were young ? *(WB page 84)*
5. If more villages ..... (have) electricity, more people would have better lives. *(SB page 25)*

Unit 10 — Student's Book & Workbook

1. She has ..... (trying) lots of different sports. *(SB page 35)*
2. I haven't ..... (be) to this restaurant before. *(WB page 93)*
3. Have you ..... (never) helped to organise a sports event ? *(SB page 35)*
4. They had ..... (doing) a lot of research. *(WB page 95)*
5. What have you been ..... (learn) at school this week ? *(WB page 99)*

Unit 11 — Student's Book & Workbook

1. There ..... (is) a dangerous accident on the road to our school yesterday. *(SB page 47)*
2. Marwa's father ..... (buys) a big motorbike last week. *(WB page 101)*
3. The man told us that the football tournament ..... (will) start the following day. *(SB page 48)*
4. Lama said that she ..... (wants) to go to the new water park. *(WB page 102)*
5. Taha Hussein ..... (bear) in 1889. *(WB page 101)*

Unit 12 — Student's Book & Workbook

1. By 2100, 95 percent of people will ..... (lived) in tall buildings. *(SB page 55)*
2. I think it will ..... (being) hot and sunny. *(WB page 107)*
3. The farms will be able ..... (make) their own electricity *(SB page 57)*
4. They won't be able to ..... (feeding) the monkeys. *(WB page 108)*
5. When I am older, I am going to ..... (works) as a volunteer at weekends. *(SB page 59)*

2. End of Term Practice

٢. تدريبات من كتاب التدريبات

A. Language Functions

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Baher and Marwan are talking about where people will live in the future.

Baher : In the future, I think we will be able to live in houses under the ground.

Marwan : But, (1) ..... . Did you know that every year, buildings get taller and taller ?

Baher : That's right. What kind of energy will they use ?

Marwan : (2) ..... .

Baher : (3) ..... ?

Marwan : They will use things like wind turbines to produce renewable energy.

Baher : (4) ..... ?

Marwan : Yes, we'll all live in tall buildings with solar energy, too.

Baher : I think this won't cause pollution.

Marwan : (5) ..... .

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

will - renewable - fuels - won't - recycle - cut

We should do our best to keep the environment clean. We mustn't (1) ..... down trees because they absorb carbon dioxide. Also, we mustn't burn fossil (2) ..... to avoid climate change. That's why we should use (3) ..... energy such as solar energy and wind power. So, we (4) ..... be able to live in a safe environment.

3 Read the following text. Then answer the questions :

If someone asked you to **name** a famous trip to the moon, you would probably say the Apollo 11 trip in 1969. But did you know that when Apollo 17 went there in 1972, there had been five other trips to the moon ? There have been no trips since 1972.

We all know Neil Armstrong was the first person to walk on the moon, but who was the last person ? That was Eugene Cernan. He was on a 12-day trip on Apollo 17 which brought the largest moon rock to Earth! When Neil Armstrong walked on the moon, he said it had been one small step for a man, but a very big step for all of us. When Eugene Cernan left the moon, he said, "We shall return, with peace and hope." So why were trips to the moon stopped ? It was too expensive, but today, as technology gets better, there are plans to send spacecraft to the moon again.

a. Choose the correct answer from :

1. What is the text mainly about ?
   a. It's not expensive to land on the moon.
   b. Trips to the moon.
   c. Neil Armstrong was the first person to walk on the moon.
   d. Trips to other planets.
2. What does the underlined word **name** mean ?
   a. mention b. speak c. explain d. travel
3. Trips to the moon stopped because they ..... .
   a. were dangerous. b. were not useful.
   c. cost a lot of money. d. caused a lot of damage.

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What did Eugene Cernan bring to Earth ?

   .....

5. When Eugene Cernan left the moon, he said, "We shall return, with peace and hope." What did this show ?

   .....

6. When was the last trip to the moon ?

   .....

C. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Rewrite your composition again. The prefix -re means to do it ..... .
   a. next b. again c. first d. last
2. We should protect our planet. Protect is similar in meaning to ..... .
   a. increase b. damage c. collect from d. keep safe

3. The person who studies space is a space ..... .
   a. dentist b. scientist c. artist d. pharmacist
4. A ..... is an instrument used to make distant objects appear nearer.
   a. thermometer b. telescope
   c. mirror d. microscope
5. In the past, we used traditional ways of farming. The antonym of traditional is ..... .
   a. old b. expensive c. modern d. far
6. The fossils were preserved well for further study. This means they were ..... well.
   a. discovered b. kept c. chosen d. sold

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The island ..... (surround) by deep, blue sea.
2. If I ..... (be) in trouble, would you help me ?
3. We plan ..... (spend) the weekend in our village.
4. Samir told me that he ..... (travel) to London next Friday.
5. I didn't go to the theatre until I ..... (finish) my work.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on one of the following :

1. **A report on a habitat you visited. Write where it is, some facts about it, and how to protect it.**
2. **A biography of a person you like. Write about his/her early life, career and what he/she did.**
3. **A paragraph on life in the future. Write about transport, food and the environment.**

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

DAYS

5, 6 & 7

20 Governorates Exams

٢٠ اختبار من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة

1 Cairo Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Two friends are talking about planting trees.

Amr : What shall we do this summer ?

Yasser : (1) ..... .

Amr : Good, planting trees is a good idea.

Yasser : (2) ..... ?

Amr : My brother will help us and we can ask some friends, too.

Yasser : (3) ..... , they will be happy to do so.

Amr : Where can we start ?

Yasser : (4) ..... .

Amr : (5) ..... ?

Yasser : We will start after our exams.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

fur - who - famous - safe - which - short

A mongoose has a long body, with (1) ..... legs and a long tail. Their bodies are covered by thick (2) ..... . Mongooses can see and hear very well, (3) ..... helps them to find food and avoid danger. Mongooses are (4) ..... for fighting snakes. They are able to kill snakes by biting them.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Over 65 years ago, the world's first computer was born. Scientists called it "The Baby", but it was huge. It filled a full room! Three people made the computer and programmed math problems for it. On June 19, 1948, the computer solved its first math problem - in 52 minutes! At that time, this was amazing.

Computers are now much smaller. With touch-screen technology, many computers don't need extra things, like a keyboard or a mouse. In the future, computers probably won't need **these** things at all. Some computers, like the smartphone, can fit in one hand. Computers are also more powerful today.

How else will computers change in the future ? A computer's brain is a chip inside the computer. So, computers will be smaller and even more powerful. Perhaps they'll even think like humans! Maybe we won't need to tell computers what to do because they'll decide for themselves!

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The first computer filled a ..... .
   a. palace b. hand c. room d. building
2. The Baby computer found the answer to ..... math problem(s) in 52 minutes.
   a. one b. two c. three d. four
3. Today, many computers **don't** have ..... .
   a. keyboards b. mouses c. touch screens d. a & b

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**these**" refer to ?
   .....
5. Why do you think we may not need to tell computers what to do ?
   .....
6. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   .....

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We should protect our planet. "Protect" is similar in meaning to ..... .
   a. increase b. damage c. collect from d. keep safe
2. Many ancient ..... are found in Fayum Depression. These are bones of animals.
   a. carriages b. fossils c. owners d. ingredients
3. People in Egypt plant mangrove seedlings along the Red Sea ..... .
   a. rocks b. cost c. coast d. ponds
4. The ..... is a large natural area of land which is mostly green.
   a. shape b. grassland c. desert d. coastal
5. We can add the prefix "....." to the word "scope" to mean an instrument that makes distant things nearer.
   a. fore– b. inter– c. pre– d. tele–
6. A ..... is the person who has seen an accident, a crime and can tell the police about it.
   a. witness b. sailor c. tailor d. designer

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. We need ..... (using) cleaner renewable energy.
2. If we lived in Hurghada, we ..... (go) to the beach.

3. They ..... (study) English for 3 hours now.
4. The housewife ..... (say) the thief had stolen the house last night.
5. No one ..... (see) a photo of the far side of the moon before astronauts landed on it.

D. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"Keeping our air clean"

.....
.....
.....
.....

2 Giza Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Faten and Huda are talking about spending their last Mid-year holiday.

Faten : Good morning, Huda.
Huda : Good morning, Faten. Where did you go last Mid-year holiday ?
Faten : (1) ..... .
Huda : Alexandria! Which places did you visit there ?
Faten : (2) ..... .
Huda : (3) ..... ?
Faten : I went with my family.
Huda : (4) ..... ?
Faten : Of course, you can come with us next holiday.
Huda : (5) ..... .

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

years - cats - has - tourists - have - hotel

A new water park opened in Sharm El-Sheikh nowadays. It is the biggest park in Egypt. It (1) ..... many restaurants and the owner is going to build a new (2) ..... next year. He said that it had taken over three (3) ..... to build. Many Egyptians and (4) ..... visit it.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

There are some beautiful natural wonders in Egypt, such as the White Desert, National Park and Al-Nayzak Lake. There are also some wonderful man-made wonders, such as the Great Pyramid and the Citadel of Qaitbay in Alexandria.

Egypt also has some wonders that aren't visited by many tourists like Gabel Elba. This is because it is difficult to reach. Another wonder that is difficult to reach is the Lost City because **it** is now under the Mediterranean Sea near Alexandria. When the Lost City was discovered, Frank Goddio saw lots of very old statues, temples and monuments there.

Another wonder is the Great Sand Sea in the south of Egypt. This is a part of the Western Desert where you can find lots of big sand dunes. Some unusual glass is also found in the Great Sand Sea. Egypt's natural and man-made wonders are among the most beautiful wonders in the world.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is ..... .
   a. The Egyptian seas b. The Egyptian monuments
   c. The Egyptian wonders d. The Egyptian people
2. The Great Pyramid is a ..... wonder.
   a. man-made b. modern
   c. natural d. new
3. Some unusual glass is found in ..... .
   a. the Great Pyramid b. the Great Sand Sea
   c. the Nayzak Lake d. the Citadel

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?

   .....

5. Summarize the wonders which are mentioned in the text. (At least 4 wonders)

   .....

6. Have you visited any of these wonders before ?

   .....

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Trees absorb ..... dioxide from the air.
   a. liquid b. carbon c. gas d. oxygen

2. We add " ..... " to the word "national" to give the opposite.
   a. pre– b. un– c. dis– d. inter–
3. ..... is the sound produced by a person when he speaks.
   a. Voice b. Playing c. Running d. Vibration
4. My teacher told me not to be late again. He gave me a ..... .
   a. promise b. warning c. witness d. present
5. A/An ..... is a person who travels into space.
   a. doctor b. player c. astronaut d. nurse
6. The Iron woman was enormous. The word "enormous" means very ..... .
   a. small b. ugly c. tiny d. big

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If we had more money, we ..... (can) buy a new mobile.
2. We should keep ..... (build) new schools.
3. The Kharga Oasis ..... (visit) by many tourists every year.
4. Mona said she ..... (be) tired that day.
5. Rami had tidied his room before he ..... (start) studying.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review about "Your new smart phone".

.....
.....
.....
.....

3 Alexandria Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ehab and Ahmed are talking about the environment.

Ehab : Hello, Ahmed. What are you doing ?
Ahmed : Hello, Ehab (1) ..... .
Ehab : What is this article about ?
Ahmed : (2) ..... .
Ehab : Our environment is being polluted severely. (3) ..... ?
Ahmed : We can plant more trees to prevent that.
Ehab : (4) ..... ?

Ahmed : Yes, we can use less plastic.
Ehab : (5) ..... !
Ahmed : Actually, this will help save the environment.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

live - plants - describe - lived - beach - colourful

The reef is a beautiful place. Some people (1) ..... it as an underwater garden. The corals that form the reef are very (2) ..... . Some of them look like (3) ..... , but they are not. They are made of thousands of tiny animals that are joined together. Corals can only (4) ..... in warm clean sea water with lots of light.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Elephants live in families. When a baby elephant is born, the family is very excited. They come close to the baby to welcome it and the mother helps the baby to stand up.

The mother elephant looks after her baby very carefully. If **it** moves away from her, she brings it back. If the sun is very hot, she moves the baby under her body. If a baby can't climb over something, its mother helps it with her trunk. Sometimes, other young elephants help a mother elephant look after her baby. This is how young elephants learn to take care of babies.

Elephants walk from place to place looking for food and water. When the elephants are walking, the baby sometimes holds its mother's tail. If a lion comes close to them, all the elephants stop and stand close together with the babies in the middle. It is an amazing world !

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The passage is about ..... .
   a. what baby elephants look like
   b. how mother and baby elephants live
   c. why people hate elephants
   d. when lions help elephants
2. The elephants walk to different places to ..... .
   a. be excited
   b. find other animals
   c. look for food and water
   d. live in cold weather
3. If a lion comes close, all the elephants ..... .
   a. protect baby elephants
   b. run away
   c. kill the lion
   d. move to another place

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?

.....

5. What can we learn from the life of elephants ?

.....

6. Do you think elephants prefer to be in a zoo ? Why / Why not ?

.....

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An ..... is a person who travels into space.
   a. astronomer b. astronaut c. astrologer d. sailor
2. A ..... is the natural home of an animal or a plant.
   a. habitat b. coast c. rock d. rainforest
3. " ....." is the synonym of "angry".
   a. Happy b. Bad c. Glad d. Cross
4. The prefix "....." gives the opposite of "appear".
   a. un– b. im– c. dis– d. il–
5. The whale is really ..... . It is about 150 tons.
   a. small b. enormous c. tiny d. slim
6. We cannot continue to use petrol for cars because it is not ..... .
   a. sustainable b. fantastic c. rechargeable d. remote

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Ice ..... (cover) large areas of wetlands.
2. That bird keeps ..... (make) a loud noise!
3. I ..... (plant) more trees if I were in your position.
4. No one had ..... (see) a photo of the far side of the moon before 1959.
5. "Lots of mobile phones ..... (steel) this year," the police said.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review on social media"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4 Qalyoubia Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Essam and Adel are talking about next summer holiday.

Essam : Hello, Adel. Where will you go next summer holiday ?

Adel : (1) ..... .

Essam : Sharm ElSheikh ! (2) ..... ?

Adel : I will go with my friend, Asser.

Essam : (3) ..... ?

Adel : No, we will stay in a hotel.

Essam : How will you go ?

Adel : (4) ..... .

Essam : How long will you stay ?

Adel : (5) ..... .

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

if - full - wealth - unless - fill - valuable

Health is better than (1) ..... . One cannot exchange health for all the money in the world because health is the most (2) ..... gift from Allah. A sick person lives a bad life (3) ..... of pain, weakness and suffering. He feels that he is a real trouble to his family. He loses the nice taste of food. You can't enjoy good health (4) ..... you practise suitable exercises.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Have you ever imagined life without cell phones ? People who are fifty or more will find this question surprising as they used to live without mobile phones. Younger generations, on the other hand, think that they cannot do without mobile phones.

50 years ago, if someone had said that people would be walking around with small wireless telephones in their hands, we would have called him or her mad. However, almost everyone now has at least one of **them**.

People everywhere are walking around talking on their mobile phones. The phones are even being used for more than just communication.

People use them for many different purposes. Mobile phones are used to play games, watch films, listen to music, pay money online and find information. They have become a very important part of our lives.

Mobile phones have not only made our lives more comfortable but they have changed the way we live. Before we had mobile phones, it was hard to reach a friend that was away from home. But thanks to these small devices, people can now get in touch with anyone at any place and at any time. To conclude, they have made us reachable wherever we are and whenever anyone likes.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Thanks to mobile phones, ...
   a. we cannot find information b. our lives are shorter
   c. it is hard to reach a friend d. our lives are easier
2. About fifty years ago, we ..... .
   a. did not have mobiles b. had mobile phones
   c. used mobiles d. were mad
3. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ..... .
   a. younger generation b. mad people
   c. wireless telephones d. old people

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the best title for this passage ?

   .....

5. How was life before we had mobile phones ?

   .....

6. What are mobile phones used for ?

   .....

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. " ..... " is the synonym of the word "strange".
   a. Familiar b. Usual c. Similar d. Unusual
2. ..... is cutting down all the trees in an area.
   a. Air pollution b. Deforestation c. Weaving d. Farming
3. We add the prefix " ..... " to get the opposite of the word "expensive".
   a. dis- b. un- c. in- d. im-
4. A .....is a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away.
   a. telescope b. satellite c. sensor d. map

5. The planets go around the sun. The word "go around" means ..... the sun.
   a. receive b. orbit c. remove d. cross
6. The fossils were preserved well for further study. This means they were ..... .
   a. kept b. discovered c. sold d. chosen

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He ..... (does) his homework by the time he slept.
2. Fatma said that she ..... (is) tired the day before.
3. If I were a millionaire, I ..... (help) the poor.
4. English language ..... (speak) all over the world.
5. Students should avoid ..... (make) noise in the class.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"A review about modern life in the future, write about transport, food and learning"

.....
.....
.....
.....

5 Sharkia Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ebrahim is at the library to borrow a book.

Ebrahim : Good morning, sir.
Librarian : Good morning. (1) ..... ?
Ebrahim : I'd like to borrow a book.
Librarian : Ok. (2) ..... ?
Ebrahim : I enjoy reading books about nature.
Librarian : (3) ..... . Have you got a borrowing card ?
Ebrahim : (4) ..... . How can I get one ?
Librarian : Just give me a recent personal photo of you.
Ebrahim : (5) ..... .
Librarian : You are most welcome at any time.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

will - feet - would - prepare - change - charge

Teachers play an important role in building up an educated nation. They (1) ..... their students for the future. They can (2) ..... their life. They enable their students to stand on their (3) ..... . If there were not teachers, there (4) ..... not be any doctors, engineers, scientists etc. We must respect our teachers.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

There was once a poor boy who spent his days going from door to door selling newspapers to pay for school. One day, the poor boy was hungry, so he decided to ask for food when he came to the next door.

The poor boy reached the door of a girl . He asked for a glass of water, but seeing his poor state, the girl came back with a glass of milk. The boy wanted to pay for the milk, but the girl refused to take any money.

Years later, the girl fell sick. She went to many doctors, but no one was able to cure her. Finally, she went to the best doctor in town. The doctor spent weeks treating her in a private hospital until she was finally cured. She was happy, however, she was afraid she couldn't afford to pay the bill. But, when the hospital handed her the bill, it read, "Paid in full, with a glass on milk."

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the passage is that we must ..... .
   a. give people milk b. always do good
   c. pay the bill d. help the rich
2. The boy had a poor ..... .
   a. mind b. sight c. appearance d. brain
3. Later on, the poor boy became a/an ..... doctor.
   a. had b. unknown c. cruel d. well-known

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Summarize the second paragraph in ONE sentence of your own words.
   .....
5. How do you think the girl felt when she left the hospital ?
   .....
6. Did the girl know why the doctor paid the bill ? How ?
   .....

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Plants often ..... pollution in the air, making it cleaner for us.
   a. produce b. protect c. increase d. absorb
2. " ..... " is the place where a plant or animals naturally live and grow.
   a. Habit b. Habitant c. Habitat d. Assistant
3. They live on the east coast. "Coast" can be an adjective by adding " ..... ".
   a. -ous b. -al c. -ive d. -ce
4. A/An ..... is something to improve a difficult situation.
   a. initiative b. fight c. war d. tour
5. You don't have to plug it in because it is ..... .
   a. wireless b. careless c. leafless d. useless
6. That plane is enormous! " ..... " is the synonym of "enormous".
   a. Little b. Huge c. Tiny d. Local

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ..... (Did) you finished your homework before you went to the cinema?
2. Egypt ..... (visit) by more than fourteen million tourists every year.
3. We ..... (use) to use energy - saving light bulbs, but we do now.
4. The colours make the picture beautiful ..... (look) at.
5. Manal ..... (said) me, "I have seen this movie."

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on:

A review about : "The new projects will improve the lives of everyone living all around Egypt".

.....
.....
.....
.....

6 Menofia Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Shady is talking with his friend Nader about a trip to Luxor.

Shady : You seem busy, Nader.
Nader : Yes, I'm very busy. (1) ..... .
Shady : What list are you making ?
Nader : The things we need for our trip .

Shady : (2) ..... ?
Nader : To Luxor. (3) ..... .
Shady : I don't think three days is enough to visit all the tourist places there. (4) ..... .
Nader : But we can't get the money for a complete month.
Shady : Ok, I'd like to come with you. (5) ..... ?
Nader : Two thousand pounds.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

people - cleaner - protection - energy - batteries - protect

The environment needs our help. We can do a lot of things to (1) ..... the environment. We can build solar farms to create green (2) ..... . At home, we may use rechargeable (3) ..... . There are projects to plant trees to give us (4) ..... air. It is very helpful to use air conditioning less often.

3 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

For 99% of people's history, they took their food from the world around them. They ate all that they could find, and then they moved on to another place. For 1.0% of their history, people learned to farm the land and control their environment. People living in different places eat different kinds of food. For example, people in China eat a lot of rice and noodles. People in Japan and Taiwan eat a lot of fish and other seafood. People living away from the sea don't eat so much fish. They eat more meat and chicken.

At present, it is possible to transport food from one part of the world to another. Our bananas come from Central America or Africa. Our rice comes from Thailand. We can eat what we like, when we like, at any time of the year. Food has become very big business.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The passage is about ..... .
   a. animals b. prices c. food d. cooking
2. For ..... of their history, people didn't farm the land.
   a. 99% b. 1.0 % c. no time d. all the time
3. People in China and people in Japan eat ..... kinds of food.
   a. the same b. different c. cheaper d. fewer

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What do people who live away from the sea usually eat ?

.....

5. Where do our bananas come from ?

.....

6. Why can we now eat any kind of food at any time of the year ?

.....

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "....." are warm, wet areas of land where many kinds of plants, animals, and birds can grow and live.
   a. Deserts b. Rivers c. Rainforests d. Lakes
2. A/An "....." is a person who travels to space.
   a. astronaut b. researcher c. assistant d. driver
3. I thought I lost my new calculator, but I ..... it in my school bag.
   a. found b. wrote c. gave d. sent
4. Positive people do not look ..... happy.
   a. dis- b. im- c. mis- d. un-
5. The Earth orbits the sun. "**Orbits**" here is near in meaning to ..... .
   a. moves around b. turns into
   c. switches on d. sits down
6. In our school, it is normal to do activities that help our local community. "**Normal**" here is like ..... .
   a. difficult b. usual c. remote d. dark

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The national park ..... (visit) by many people every year.
2. If it ..... (rain) heavily, we will use umbrellas.
3. You should keep ..... (work) hard to get your goals.
4. In the past, people ..... (use to) send letters, now send emails.
5. For three years, I ..... (learn) French Language.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"Write a review about a film you watched"

.....

.....

.....

.....

7 Gharbia Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Rana and Sama are talking about a story.

Rana : What are you busy doing ?
Sama : I am reading a story.
Rana : (1) ..... ?
Sama : It is about a rabbit telling the story of his life.
Rana : (2) ..... ?
Sama : No, animals can't talk but this is only a story.
Rana : Did that rabbit live alone ?
Sama : (3) ..... .
Rana : This means he has a family. Did the story end happily for the rabbit ?
Sama : (4) ..... .
Rana : I think it is an exciting story. Can I borrow this story to read ?
Sama : (5) ..... .

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

safe - weather - change - finds - sea - found

Seagrass is very important. It is (1) ..... in the sea along the coast of many countries. A lot of (2) ..... animals feed on it. Baby fish live in seagrass because it is a (3) ..... place. Seagrass absorbs carbon dioxide 35 times faster than rainforests. That is why it can help stop climate (4) ..... .

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Basim and his friend, Ahmed spend a long time using their smart phones. They always wanted to try new apps. One day, they got a message from a stranger. He said **it** was a wonderful one, and that they could get that app for free. They thought it was not dangerous to do so. After that, they discovered that he could get all the information on their phones. Then, to their surprise, the stranger stopped sending them any messages. They forgot about it. However, he sent them a message saying that he can control their mobile phones. He asked for money or he would hurt them. They didn't know what to do, but their friend Kareem advised

them to tell the police. The police followed the stranger's phone and arrested him. They decided to warn all their friends about how to keep safe online.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The stranger stopped sending messages ..... getting their information.
   a. after b. before c. without d. for
2. The underlined pronoun **it** refers to ..... .
   a. phone b. information c. message d. app
3. The friends got worried when the stranger ..... .
   a. stopped talking b. asked for money
   c. told the police d. sent them apps.

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

   .....

5. Why did the two friends agree to send their information to someone they didn't know ?

   .....

6. Do you think Basim and Ahmed were right to talk to the stranger ? Why ?

   .....

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A person who travels into space is called a/an ..... .
   a. astronomer b. scientist c. astronaut d. pilot
2. The prefix "....." is used to add the meaning 'do again'.
   a. bi- b. re- c. di- d. in-
3. A group of animals or plants of the same kind are called ..... .
   a. species b. spices c. spicing d. spicy
4. The moon ..... the earth once every 27 days.
   a. cycles b. arms c. orbits d. dives
5. After the rain, the streets were wet. The antonym of the word "wet" is ..... .
   a. dry b. rainy c. warm d. muddy
6. Water comes from the roof to the ground floor through a ..... .
   a. wire b. pipe c. line d. pile

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. This book ..... (write) years ago by a famous writer.
2. My brother asks me to stop ..... (run) on the grass.
3. If he studied well, he ..... (get) better marks.
4. He ..... (not publish) his book until he printed it.
5. They said that their team ..... (win) the match the day before.

D. Writing

6 **Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:**

"A review on how life will be like in the future"

.....

.....

.....

.....

8 Dakahlia Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 **Finish the following dialogue:**

Malak has been sick and Salma is talking to her on the phone.

Salma : Hi, Malak. You haven't been to school for a week.
Malak : (1) ..... . I had the flu.
Salma : (2) ..... ?
Malak : Yes, I feel much better now.
Salma : (3) ..... ?
Malak : I am going back to school next Sunday.
Salma : (4) ..... . We all missed you.
Malak : Did I miss a lot of school work ?
Salma : Yes, we had homework every day and we have a test on Monday.
Malak : Oh, no. That makes me worry.
Salma : (5) ..... . I will help you, my friend.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 **Read and complete the text with words from the following list :**

change - made - gases - droughts - make - energy

Our planet is getting hotter and our weather is changing. There are more floods, (1) ..... and forest fires than any time in history. One of the reasons for that is climate (2) ..... which is caused by greenhouse (3) ..... such as carbon dioxide. These are (4) ..... when we burn fossil fuels.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Happiness is something which we feel when we are full of joy. On a cloudy day, the clouds hide the sun, but the sun is always there. Happiness is like the sun, it is often hidden by the clouds of worries. We have to forget **them** to feel happy. It is close to us but hidden and covered from sight, by our worries like a treasure at the bottom of a muddy lake. It is always there whether you see it or not. You don't have to create happiness. All you have to do is calm down your mind because when there are a quiet mind and inner peace, there is happiness. Happiness makes us positive. All of us try to get happiness all the time. When a person does something really good, he feels happy. If we hurt others, we become unhappy in the end. A happy mood gives us the energy to work our best but an unhappy mood takes always the energy. Happiness is **related** to the world in which we live. If we live in a bad world most of the time, we remain unhappy. One alone cannot be happy if others are unhappy. It comes from our own actions. Happiness doesn't come from others. Living the present is happiness.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What is a good title for the passage ?
   a. Sadness b. Happiness
   c. Happiness in the family d. Happiness at work
2. In line 4 the pronoun **them** refers to ..... .
   a. feelings b. others c. worries d. actions
3. What could the word "**related**" mean in this reading text ?
   a. linked b. unconnected c. single d. remote

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Why has happiness been compared to the sun ?
   .....
5. What should we do to feel happy ?
   .....
6. How is happiness related to the world in which we live ?
   .....

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The ability to do something well is a ..... .
   a. lifestyle b. research c. skill d. race
2. A/An ..... is a machine that makes the air in a room stay cool or warm.
   a. air conditioning b. computer c. kettle d. battery

3. The earth orbits the sun. The verb "orbits" means ..... .
   a. destroys b. discovers c. studies d. moves around
4. The word "..... " gives the opposite meaning of "tiny".
   a. small b. huge c. lesser d. little
5. To get the adjective from the word "hero", we add the suffix "..... ".
   a. -ment b. -ly c. - ic d. -ful
6. She has been working at a school for free for more than 8 years. She is ..... .
   a. an employee b. a volunteer c. the boss d. the manager

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If we ..... (have) more time, we would visit our teacher.
2. She didn't go to bed until she ..... (finish) her homework.
3. We need ..... (use) renewable energy.
4. Fewer magazines are ..... (sell) today because of the internet.
5. A witness ..... (said) the police that the building was on fire.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"Things you can do to help save the Earth"

.....
.....
.....
.....

9 Fayoum Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Hagar is talking to Reem about some interesting animals.

Hagar : Are you interested in animals, Reem ?
Reem : (1) ..... .
Hagar : (2) ..... ?
Reem : I like orangutans most.
Hagar : (3) ..... ?
Reem : They live in rainforests. Have you ever seen an orangutan ?
Hagar : (4) ..... .
Reem : What about you ? Which animal do you like most ?
Hagar : (5) ..... . They live in polar habitats.
Reem : I wonder how the polar bears can live there.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

will send - advantage - mobile phone - would send - disadvantage - talk

In my opinion, the most important invention of the last hundred years is the (1) ..... . I can put numbers into my phone and (2) ..... to people anywhere. If I do not have much time, I (3) ..... a text message. The (4) ..... is that the cost of international calls can be expensive.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Nothing can live without energy. People, animals and plants need energy to live and machines need energy to work. Most of the energy we use still comes from fossil fuels like coal, oil and gas. We call these non-renewable forms of energy because they are limited and expensive. The use of fuels increases the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere and pollutes the environment.

Now water and wind are used to produce electricity. They are inexpensive, clean and do not pollute the environment. We call them renewable forms of energy. But energy from the sun is probably the best form of renewable energy. Life on earth depends on the sun. Without the sun, plants wouldn't be able to make food. Animals wouldn't have food. The earth would be cold and uninhabited.

That is why there is a great interest in solar energy. It is important for us to save energy in our homes and workplaces in order to stop using up non-renewable sources of energy.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is " ..... ".
   a. Renewable energy b. Solar energy
   c. Energy d. Non-renewable energy
2. The amount of carbon dioxide rises in the atmosphere when we use energy from the ..... .
   a. water b. fossil fuels c. wind d. sun
3. ..... are two sources of non-renewable energy.
   a. Plants and animals b. Water and wind
   c. Sun and gas d. Coal and oil

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Infer why the sun, the wind and the water are friends to the environment.

.....

5. In two sentences summarize the first paragraph in your own words.

.....

6. It is necessary to use the solar energy. Give reasons.

.....

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The ..... is a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away.
   a. satellite b. mirror c. telescope d. lens
2. ..... is the art of making cloth by crossing threads using special machine.
   a. Farming b. Weaving c. Sailing d. Baking
3. Another word for "make" or "create" is ..... .
   a. present b. promise c. protect d. produce
4. We add the prefix "....." to get the opposite of the word "popular".
   a. in- b. un- c. en- d. im-
5. There are more floods in many countries because of rising sea ..... .
   a. leaves b. reefs c. levels d. rocks
6. Newspapers, magazines, television, the internet and other forms of communication are all types of ..... .
   a. mountain b. medicine c. meteorite d. media

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Fewer magazines ..... (sell) today by newsagents because of the internet.
2. Heba ..... (do) her housework for two hours. She has not finished yet.
3. He had dinner after he ..... (tidy) his room.
4. Youssef said that he ..... (visit) his uncle the following day.
5. They ..... (catch) thousands of fish from the sea yesterday.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following:

"Write a review about some natural wonders in Egypt"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

10 El-Beheira Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Hani are talking about doing a school project.

Ahmed : Hello Hani.

Hani : Hello Ahmed, What are you doing ?

Ahmed : (1) .....

Hani : (2) ..... ?

Ahmed : It's about "the bamboo".

Hani : (3) ..... ?

Ahmed : Because my teacher asked me to do this project.

Hani : What do you think of this plant ?

Ahmed : (4) .....

Hani : I agree with you. It's a very useful plant.

Ahmed : Do you need any help ?

Hani : (5) ..... .

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

burn - cycle - wind - rubbish - environment - burning

It is important to save our (1) ..... and keep it clean. We must recycle more paper so that we can avoid cutting down our forests. We can also stop putting (2) ..... in the landfill sites. When we keep (3) ..... fossil fuels, climate change will get worse. We need to use cleaner renewable energy such as solar energy and (4) ..... power.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Reem is a student at a prep school. Her mother owns a bookshop. The shop is near their house. Sometimes, Reem goes to the shop to help her mom. There are a lot of different books at the shop. Reem likes stories the best. The shop is usually calm during the week but it gets very busy on Fridays. A lot of people go to the shop on that day to buy books for themselves and for their children. Reem often sits with the children and reads them some stories. The children enjoy the stories a lot and they usually buy them.

There are also some toys at the shop. Reem's mother lets the children play with the toys. She asks Reem to take care of the toys and make sure that the children don't damage them. The girls mostly like dolls but the boys like cars and guns. The children spend a lovely time at the shop and their parents are very thankful to Reem and her mom.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Reem goes to the shop to ..... her mother.
   a. visit b. play with c. help d. meet
2. The shop sells books and ..... .
   a. toys b. sweets c. fruits d. chairs
3. The best title to this passage is " ..... "
   a. The Dolls b. The Bookshop c. The Girls d. The Boys

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What kind of books does Reem like ?
   .....
5. Why do people go to shop ?
   .....
6. Why, do you think, the shop gets busy on Fridays ?
   .....

C. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We add "....." to form the adjective of the word "tradition".
   a. -ible b. -able c. -al d. -ful
2. Ziad loves studying stars and planets. He wants to be a/an "....." .
   a. doctor b. astronomer c. officer d. photographer
3. New ideas can be very strange for people. "Strange" here means "....." .
   a. boring b. usual c. unusual d. common
4. A/An ..... is a person who reads the news on the radio or TV.
   a. designer b. journalist c. editor d. newsreader
5. I was ..... when my little baby brother made so much noise.
   a. cross b. across c. happy d. calm
6. A ..... is a small container of ink to use in a printer.
   a. cup b. carriage c. glass d. cartridge

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I ..... (visit) this restaurant three times this week. I like it.
2. If he came to the club, I ..... (play) with him.
3. Omar ..... (told) he would come late that day.

4. Adam came first in the race because he ..... (train) well.
5. My little brother ..... (take) to hospital yesterday.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"A review about satellites technology"

.....
.....
.....
.....

11 Kafr El Sheikh Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Adel wants to buy a suit.

Shop assistant : Can I help you ?
Adel : (1) ..... .
Shop assistant : I've got different styles of suits. (2) ..... ?
Adel : I'd like the blue one.
Shop assistant : It's the colour you like and it's fashionable.
Adel : Yes, blue is nice and it is fashionable, too. (3) ..... ?
Shop assistant : Two thousand pounds. It's imported from France.
Adel : Oh! (4) ..... . I'd like one made in Egypt, please.
Shop assistant : (5) ..... . It's only nine hundred pounds. It's cheap, isn't it ?
Adel : Yes, it is and of good quality as well.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

turn - life - carefully - turns - safe - save

Children need to know how and when to use water (1) ..... . Parents and teachers have to teach their children that water means our (2) ..... . It can help us (3) ..... the desert into green land to grow more crops. Nowadays, the modern ways of watering plants (4) ..... much water and improve the crop growth.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Online learning is another option for the traditional way of studies. Students can easily download applications and attend online classes, but classroom learning is as important as before. Nowadays, many universities and schools are moving towards online learning. They share their materials and subject online. Many universities served their studies online **for free** and some of them offered some online scholarships.

Every way of learning has some advantages and disadvantages. With technology, everyone has ease with the online study, but some people are still against it. Some people complain that they are more comfortable with the offline learning. For people who are working and want to complete their studies from home, online learning can be the best option for them. In offline classes, it is easy to pay attention to students. Finally, it is important to create a balance between online and offline studies.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The passage is mainly about ..... .
   a. Universities Study b. Online Study
   c. Offline Study d. The best ways of learning
2. Thanks to technology, online learning became ..... than before.
   a. easier b. more difficult
   c. more impossible d. worse
3. The underlined word "**for free**" means ..... .
   a. very expensive b. not paying any money
   c. pay an amount of money d. a & c

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Why isn't the online learning the best way to learning ?

   .....

5. Summarise the second paragraph in one sentence.

   .....

6. Which kind of learning do you prefer ? Why ?

   .....

C. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. ..... is the cutting down of trees in a large area, or the destruction of forests by people.
   a. Freezing b. Cooling
   c. Deforestation d. Production
2. A/An ..... is someone who studies a subject carefully in order to discover new facts or test new ideas.
   a. researcher b. retired c. astronaut d. assistant

3. My father was cross because my young brothers made so much noise. The synonym of "cross" is ..... .
   a. happy b. relaxed c. witness d. angry
4. The word "expensive" can be the opposite by adding the prefix "..... ".
   a. sur- b. in- c. un- d. dis-
5. I'm still ..... . Could you say that another way ?
   a. happy b. tall c. confused d. coastal
6. There are many green ..... across the world which are helping to protect the environment.
   a. air conditionings b. initiatives c. bamboo d. energy

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. These trees ..... (plant) by clever school boys last summer.
2. You can choose ..... (recycle) your plastic bottles.
3. When I was young, I always ..... (talk) to my teachers politely.
4. I ..... (don't send) the report until I had revised it.
5. If Ramy read the story, he ..... (enjoy) it.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"A short story you have read"

.....
.....
.....
.....

12 Damietta Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Atef is talking to a tourist about his visit to Egypt.

Atef : Hello.
Tourist : Hello.
Atef : Is it your first visit to Egypt ?
Tourist : (1) ..... . I came here with my wife before.
Atef : (2) ..... ?
Tourist : I come from Ireland.
Atef : (3) ..... ?
Tourist : I will stay in Egypt for two weeks.

Atef : What cities are you going to visit ?
Tourist : (4) ..... .
Atef : Sure, Aswan and Luxor are interesting places to visit. I wish you an enjoyable visit.
Tourist : (5) ..... .

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

plane - calls - for - astronauts - since - spacecraft

The international space station is a huge (1) ..... 70 Km above the Earth. It is a place where (2) ..... live and work when they go into space. Most astronauts stay on the space station (3) ..... about six months. They can send-mails or make phone (4) ..... to the Earth.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Damietta is famous for its great thinkers, writers and poets. One of them is Farouk Shousha who is a well-known poet and a famous radio presenter. He was born in Damietta in 1936. At his early age, he used to go to the local library and was able to read a lot of books in the Arabic language. In 1956, he graduated from the faculty of Dar Al-Ulum in Cairo University.

Farouk Shousha always liked poetry and Arabic literature. He worked as a radio and a TV presenter. He presented many famous programs which most people liked so much like "Our Beautiful Language" and "Cultural Evening" which both lasted for about 15 years without stopping.

In his programs, he talked about the beauty of the Arabic language and showed **its** rich literature. For this reason, he was called "the guardian of the Arabic language". Shousha won the Nile Prize for literature in 2016. We all still remember his great works even after his death.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the passage is about ..... .
   a. New Damietta b. Cultural Evening
   c. Farouk Shousha d. Our beautiful language
2. The underlined word "**its**" in the third paragraph refers to ..... .
   a. the Arabic language b. the English language
   c. TV programs d. radio programs
3. Farouk won the Nile Prize for literature in ..... .
   a. 1936 b. 1956 c. 2016 d. 2000

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Name a famous program that Farouk Shousha presented.

.....

5. Summarize the last paragraph in the text in one sentence.

.....

6. Where do you think Farouk could read many books in the Arabic language when he was young ?

.....

C. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. ..... is a force which attracts things or people to the center of the Earth.
   a. Space b. Telescope c. Gravity d. The sun
2. A ..... is a person who reads the news on the radio or on television.
   a. designer b. newsreader c. photographer d. journalist
3. My father is so kind. The antonym of "kind" is ..... .
   a. calm b. clean c. clever d. cruel
4. We can get an adjective from the verb "renew" by adding the suffix "..... ".
   a. -ness b. -able c. -tion d. -y
5. Trees breathe in carbon dioxide and breathe out oxygen so, they are ..... for us.
   a. bad b. harmful c. useful d. useless
6. The land is ..... as it was raining all night yesterday.
   a. wet b. warm c. hard d. dry

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The land is ..... (cover) with ice in polar habitats.
2. We must avoid ..... (pollute) the environment.
3. If I had more time, I ..... (will) read more books.
4. We ..... (use) to get our shopping in plastic bags. Now, we don't.
5. I did not send the report until I ..... (revise) it.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"A review of your dream job."

.....

.....

.....

.....

13 Matrouh Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Hamza is at a mobile phone shop looking for a good mobile phone to buy.

Assistant : Good evening. Can I help you ?
Hamza : Good evening. (1) ..... .
Assistant : We have a good collection of new mobile phones. (2) ..... ?
Hamza : It's a great one! (3) ..... ?
Assistant : It's 8000 pounds.
Hamza : It's very expensive. (4) ..... .
Assistant : This mobile is cheaper. It is made in America.
Hamza : Really ! (5) ..... .
Assistant : That's a good choice.
Hamza : Thanks a lot.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

visited - country - places - visit - natural - city

Egypt is a great (1) ..... in North Africa. It has many beaches and (2) ..... wonders near the Red Sea area. It also has wonderful historic (3) ..... , like the pyramids at Giza and the temples in Luxor and Aswan. Egypt is (4) ..... by 14 milion tourists every year.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Water is one of the most valuable gifts in our life. It can also be called "life" because life on earth can never go on without water. Earth is called the "blue planet" because **it** is the only planet in the solar system where there is enough amount of usable water. About 71 percent of the earth's surface is water. Most of the water on earth is found in oceans and seas. This water cannot be used because it is salty. Fresh water comes mostly from rain which forms rivers and lakes. In some parts of the world, people have to travel long distances to get pure water. But in other parts, people do not understand the value of water because they have a lot. They use water carelessly and a large amount of water is regularly wasted every year. We need to spread awareness among people to avoid wasting water.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Earth is called the ..... planet.
   a. white b. green c. blue d. black
2. The underlined word "**it**" refers to ..... .
   a. Water b. Waste c. Life d. Earth
3. What is the best title for this passage ?
   a. The importance of water b. How to waste water
   c. The amount of water d. Types of planets

b. Answer the following questions :

4. How do some people waste water ?
   .....
5. Why can't we use the water of the oceans and seas ?
   .....
6. What advice does the writer give us at the end of the text ?
   .....

C. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An ..... is someone who studies the stars and planets.
   a. astronaut b. astronomer c. receiver d. scientist
2. ..... is special ability to do something.
   a. Project b. Energy c. Power d. Crop
3. Solar energy never ends. That means, it is ..... .
   a. renewable b. melting c. warm d. changing
4. To turn the word "colour" into an adjective, we add the suffix "..... " .
   a. -ful b. -ment c. -er d. -tion
5. Alexandria is next to the sea. That means, it is a ..... city.
   a. coastal b. grassland c. wetland d. rainforest
6. " ..... " is the synonym of the word "fix".
   a. Prepare b. Pair c. Repair d. Produce

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If we lived in Hurghada, we ..... (go) to the beach every week.
2. The letter ..... (deliver) by the postman yesterday.
3. The teacher said that in 2010, that park ..... (is) the biggest in Egypt.
4. Rami ..... (clean) his room before he started studying.
5. They plan ..... (grow) a lot of trees along the side of streets.

D. Writing

6 **Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :**

A review about : "Air pollution"

.....

.....

.....

.....

14 Port Said Governorate

A. Language Functions

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed has met his friend Hatem at the club after a long time.

Ahmed : I haven't seen you for a long time.

Hatem : You are right. I'm busy doing a new course nowadays.

Ahmed : (1) ..... ?

a. When did you start it
b. Why did you join it
c. Where are you doing it
d. Which subject do you like

Hatem : At the new Academy of Technology.

Ahmed : (2) ..... ?

a. How are you studying it
b. Why are you studying it
c. When are you studying it
d. What are you studying

Hatem : Computer software.

Ahmed : How often do you go to this course ?

Hatem : (3) ..... .

a. Three stories a week
b. Three books a week
c. Three days a week
d. Three comments a week

Ahmed : How much have you paid ?

Hatem : (4) ..... . The course is amazing, you should join it.

a. One thousand pounds
b. Too much time
c. Once per month
d. Two times per day

Ahmed : (5) ..... . Computer study is so important.

a. I don't think so
b. I will think about it
c. You're welcome
d. Not at all

B. Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

6. This area is full of different ..... of animals. There are different kinds of them.

a. spices
b. species
c. pieces
d. spaces

7. Satellites send lots of signals. The antonym of the word "send" is " ..... ".
   a. deliver b. allow c. pass d. receive
8. We add the suffix "....." to get the adjective from the word "colour".
   a. -en b. -ness c. -ful d. -ment
9. The ink inside a printer ..... is very bad for the environment.
   a. screen b. cartridge c. carriage d. keyboard
10. A person who specialises in languages is a ..... .
   a. linguist b. presenter c. journalist d. photographer
11. To " ..... " is to take in liquids or gases through a surface.
   a. fill b. protect c. absorb d. produce

⊙ Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

12. He ..... (publish) his ideas until just before he died.
   a. hadn't published b. won't publish
   c. hasn't published d. doesn't publish
13. If there ..... (to be) more mangrove trees, there would be fewer floods.
   a. be b. are c. was d. were
14. She is short. ..... (Because), she is a good basketball player.
   a. So b. However c. That's why d. So that
15. These places ..... (know) as grassland habitats.
   a. is known b. knows c. are known d. knew

C. Reading Comprehension

⊙ Read the following text, then answer the questions :

The Chinese invented paper, and they were the first to use paper banknotes for money. Before paper banknotes were invented in the seventh century, wealthy Chinese traders had used metal coins. These had a hole in the middle so that traders could carry them on a piece of materials. But these were very heavy to carry. As a result, traders left the money with someone they trusted.

People in Europe only started to use paper banknotes in the seventeenth century in England. The King needed money to help fight a war with France. Banks encouraged people to leave money with them and gave them handwritten notes saying how much they had.

The paper used for banknotes is usually made from a mixture of paper and cotton, and sometimes other materials. Although these other materials make them stronger than normal paper, most paper banknotes only last for two years. For this reason, some countries tried using plastic banknotes in 1983.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

16. Paper banknotes were first used in ..... .
    a. Japan b. America c. Russia d. China
17. The main idea of the text is " ..... " .
    a. Why we use money b. Why we use banks
    c. The history of paper banknotes d. The history of trade
18. Banks in England first wanted people to leave their money with them because ..... .
    a. the King needed money to fight a war
    b. people preferred banknotes to coins
    c. people wanted their money to be safe
    d. banks opened for the first time.

b. Answer the following questions :

19. Why did Chinese traders first use banknotes instead of coins ?

    .....

20. How do you think most people will pay for goods in the future ? Why ?

    .....

21. Summarize the third paragraph of the passage.

    .....

Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

solution - teach - teaching - recycling

There is a great project in our city. It is (22) ..... people how to protect the environment. Many families collect their rubbish and send it for (23) ..... . It's a great (24) ..... to a big problem because these families help the environment and get some money.

D. Writing

25. **Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words to :**
    Your friend Amir telling him about your plans for next summer holiday. Your email address is Atef@student.com and his email address is Amir@student.com.

    .....
    .....
    .....
    .....

15 Suez Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Sabah is talking to Maged who is painting a tree.

Sabah : Hello, Maged (1) ..... ?

Maged : I'm planting a tree.

Sabah : Do you know how to plant a tree ?

Maged : (2) ..... .

Sabah : Who taught you how to plant a tree ?

Maged : (3) ..... .

Sabah : Are trees useful for our environment ?

Maged : (4) ..... .

Sabah : (5) ..... ?

Maged : Trees are useful because they keep the air clean.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

above - satellites - under - moon - space - sun

Dr Farouk El Baz is one of the most important scientists. He was a (1) ..... scientist and geologist. He worked with NASA. He helped to plan where Apollo II should land on the (2) ..... . He also started studying deserts on the Earth. He used (3) ..... to find rivers that were (4) ..... the sand.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Keeping the environment clean is important for everyone who lives on the Earth. Man has invented a lot of useful things that save all people but at the same time, they are harmful to the environment. Cars are useful because they carry us from place to place, but they are harmful to the environment because **they** give out the burning fuel which causes pollution to the air, man and animals. Factories make things to people and to the country as they help increase the country money. But there are some factories that throw their waste and rubbish in water and this kills huge numbers of fish too. So, we should plant more trees and stop cutting them down because they are a source of life as they **absorb** carbon dioxide and keep the air clean.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Keeping the environment ..... is important for everyone
   a. dirty b. polluted c. clean d. harmful
2. The underlined word "**they**" refers to ..... .
   a. cars b. factories c. trees d. plants
3. The underlined word "**absorb**" here means ..... .
   a. throw away b. take off c. take in d. put into

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   .....
5. Why do you think cars are harmful to the environment ?
   .....
6. Where do some factories throw their waste and rubbish ?
   .....

C. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A group of animals or plants of the same kind is ..... .
   a. spaces b. spices c. species d. spade
2. The verb "avoid" means to ..... from doing something.
   a. keep way b. keep away c. stay way d. stay a way
3. To get the adjective of "sustain" you add the suffix " ..... ".
   a. -able b. -al c. -ment d. -tion
4. The moon moves around the Earth. The verb "moves" here means " ..... ".
   a. stop b. controls c. orbits d. preserves
5. The antonym of "hard" is ..... .
   a. remote b. difficult c. simple d. far
6. A person who travels into space is called a/an ..... .
   a. astronaut b. engineer c. surgeon d. architect

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Mariam ..... (told) that she was ill the day before.
2. My grandparents ..... (use) to live on a farm when they were young.
3. We should avoid ..... (eat) unhealthy food.
4. If I ..... (have) more time, I would read more books.
5. Noha ..... (doesn't allow) to answer until her teacher had said "Yes".

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"How can we keep our environment clean ?"

.....

.....

.....

.....

16 Ismailia Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Ali is at a café. He is asking for some coffee.

Waiter : Excuse me. Are your ready to order, sir ?

Ali : Yes, please. I'd like some coffee.

Waiter : (1) ..... ?

Ali : I'd like it black, please.

Waiter : (2) ..... ?

Ali : Yes, I'd like a little piece of chocolate.

Waiter : Anything else, sir ?

Ali : (3) .....

Waiter : A newspaper ? Sorry. (4) ..... .

Ali : (5) ..... I'll check the news on the internet.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

teach - free - get - click - do - teaches

Some people like doing voluntary work. This work is for (1) ..... as they don't (2) ..... any money for it. It is really a great feeling to (3) ..... such work. We should (4) ..... our children the importance of voluntary work.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Ismailia is a city in the north east of Egypt. It's known in Egypt as "the City of Beauty and enchantment". Ismailia is on the west bank of the Suez Canal. It is the capital of the Ismailia governorate. The city has a

good weather. It has a population of 1,402,132 as of 2021. It is half way between Port Said to the north and Suez to the south. It was founded in 1863 by Khaedive Ismail, so **it** is named after him. The head office of the Suez Canal is in Ismailia at the shore of lake Timsah. It has a large number of buildings. Ismailia has several public and private schools. Ismailia is the home of Suez canal university, built in 1967 with the help of the Chinese Government to serve the region of The Suez Canal and Sinai. Ismailia owns a successful football club Ismaily SC. The team has won the Egyptian league three times (1967 - 1991, 2002), the Egyptian Cup twice (1997 , 2000) , and the African Champions league once (1969) as the first Egyptian Arab club team won this league.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The passage is talking about ..... .
   a. Giza b. Alexandria c. Cairo d. Ismailia
2. Ismailia is ..... Port Said and Suez.
   a. behind b. opposite c. between d. next to
3. Ismaily SC has won the Egyptian League ..... .
   a. 4 times b. 3 times c. 5 times d. 7 times

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?

   .....

5. Why was the Suez Canal University built ?

   .....

6. Why do you think people visit Ismailia ?

   .....

C. Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. ..... is the thick hair that covers the body of an animal.
   a. Feather b. Fur c. Skin d. Leather
2. The ..... is a force which attracts things or people to the center of the earth.
   a. gravity b. space c. satellite d. jet
3. My parents don't allow me to watch TV late. The synonym of the word "allow" is ..... .
   a. find b. protect c. prevent d. let

4. To get the adverb of "complete", we add the suffix "..... ".
   a. -tion b. -ly c. -y d. -ment
5. He can't go to anywhere. He is ..... in his house because of the flood.
   a. busy b. full c. stuck d. free
6. If something is ..... , you don't need to plug it in.
   a. wireless b. fatherless c. saddened d. powerless

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. How would you behave if you ..... (lose) your mobile phone ?
2. The government plans ..... (plant) a lot of trees along the sides of streets.
3. Mona ..... (do) her homework for two hours. She hasn't finished yet.
4. After they ..... (win) the match, they celebrated.
5. The owner explained that there ..... (will) be over 100 new jobs.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"A review of the things you dream of achieving in the near future."

.....
.....
.....
.....

17 Beni Suef Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Adel are talking about the next holiday.

Ahmed : Hello Adel. Where will you spend the holiday ?
Adel : (1) ..... .
Ahmed : How long will you stay there ?
Adel : (2) ..... .
Ahmed : (3) ..... ?
Adel : No, I won't stay in a hotel.
Ahmed : Where will you stay ?
Adel : (4) ..... .
Ahmed : (5) ..... ?
Adel : I will go there with my family .

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

so - solar - climate - because - recycle - environment

We should do our best to keep the environment clean. We mustn't cut down trees (1) ..... they absorb carbon dioxide. Also, we mustn't burn fossil fuels to avoid (2) ..... change. That's why we should use renewable energy such as (3) ..... energy and wind power. So, we will be able to live in a safe (4) ..... .

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Ahmed loves to go with his mother when she goes grocery shopping. In fact, he likes to visit only one place where he can find what he loves most. It is the Children's Book Shop. Ahmed goes straight to the bookshop when they get to the grocery store. Mom buys groceries while he is **there** looking for his favourite thing. Ahmed's favourite hobby is reading about sports activity. In this shop, they have all kinds of books about sports. There are magazines that tell everything about sports events and famous athletes.

Ahmed likes sports and he spends a lot of time looking at the books and magazines in this place. He likes the area with children's books, too. Ahmed always waits in the bookstore for mom to come and get him. He chooses one book or a magazine and mom buys it for him. It is a nice way to spend a Saturday afternoon.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What's the text mainly about ?
   a. Sports day b. Ahmed's mother
   c. Ahmed's hobby d. Sporting events
2. What does the underlined word "**there**" refer to ?
   a. the bookshop b. grocery shop
   c. street d. library
3. Which of the following best describes the boy's feeling at the end of the day ?
   a. sad b. happy c. scared d. nervous

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Do you think Ahmed has bought what he wants ?

.....

5. Why does Ahmed like to go grocery shopping with his mom ?

.....

6. What do you think Ahmed will do with the book or the magazine ?

.....

C. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. To be ..... is something causing little or no damage to the environment.
   a. inexpensive b. sustainable c. remote d. special
2. Whales are enormous sea animals. The word "enormous" is synonymous to ..... .
   a. high b. tiny c. thin d. big
3. The suffix "....." turns the verb "appear" into a noun.
   a. -ment b. -tion c. -ance d. -ity
4. We should protect our environment. This means that we should ..... it clean.
   a. increase b. damage c. collect d. keep
5. A/An ..... is a person who travels into space.
   a. astronaut b. speaker c. engineer d. doctor
6. My father was angry because of the noise. This gives the idea that he was ..... .
   a. happy b. cross c. bad d. worried

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The National Park ..... (visit) by many people every year.
2. If you call me, I ..... (would) go to the party with you tonight.
3. Ayman has always ..... (be) interested in space science.
4. Heba said that she ..... (have) a shop in town.
5. Would you mind ..... (open) the door, please ?

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"A review about how to protect our planet"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

18 Minia Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue :

Ashraf is telling Adel about his tennis training.

Adel : Where are you going, Ashraf ?
Ashraf : (1) ..... .
Adel : What will you do there ?
Ashraf : (2) ..... .
Adel : (3) ..... ?
Ashraf : Yes. I like tennis.
Adel : (4) ..... ?
Ashraf : Captain Mohammed is my trainer.
Adel : May I come with you next training ?
Ashraf : (5) ..... .

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

presenter - media - study - studying - designer - satellites

Sara, Nada and Reem are friends. They have been (1) ..... social (2) ..... for three years. Both Sara and Nada are interested in the news. Sara wants to be a journalist. Nada is a very good newsreader. However, she hates to be on TV. She wants to be a radio (3) ..... . Reem is interested in websites. She wants to be a web (4) ..... .

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Every year the United Nations organize a conference called COP, conference of parties, in a selected country. 27 COPs were organized in different countries. The last one was in Sharm El Sheikh, the city of peace, in November 2022. It was about the dangerous effects of climate change; floods, drought and forests fires.

About 197 countries shared in this COP to find solutions for these bad effects **They**'ve decided to reduce the greenhouse gases, use renewable energy such as solar energy and wind power. Rich countries must help poor countries by money or by technology. People should do their best to reduce climate change. They should avoid cutting more trees or using more electricity, oil and fossil fuels.

In the end of the conference, the United Nations thanked Egypt a lot for its great efforts and hospitality which made the COP27 very successful.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Which of the following is the best title for this passage ?
   a. Floods b. Drought c. COP27 d. Forest fires
2. The underlined word "**They**" refers to ..... .
   a. the countries b. the effects
   c. the conferences d. The climate changes
3. The ..... COP was in Egypt in November 2022.
   a. first b. second c. third d. last

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is Sharm El Sheikh known as ?

   .....

5. Why did the 197 countries share in COP 27 ?

   .....

6. How can you reduce climate change ?

   .....

C. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An ..... is an area in the desert where you can find water and it's always green.
   a. forest b. oasis c. coast d. lake
2. To "grow" and to "plant" are ..... .
   a. synonyms b. antonyms c. suffixes d. opposites
3. We use the prefix " ..... " when we mean "to do some actions again."
   a. il- b. un- c. dis- d. re-
4. A/An ..... is a person who travels into space.
   a. actress b. sailor c. astronaut d. assistant
5. The floods broke down some coastal hotels in Thailand. The words "broke down" here mean ..... .
   a. destroyed b. designed c. built d. made
6. I saw an enormous elephant. The word "enormous" means ..... .
   a. Tiny b. easy c. huge d. small

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I enjoy ..... (read) in the library.
2. Football ..... (plays) all over the world.
3. She'd get a present if she ..... (succeed).
4. Noha ..... (said) us that she was busy.
5. I'd ..... (write) my homework before I went to bed.

D. Writing

6 **Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :**

"A biography of your hero."

.....

.....

.....

.....

19 Assiut Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 **Finish the following dialogue:**

Heba and Sara are talking in the library

Heba : Hello Sara, what are you doing here ?

Sara : Hello Heba, (1) ..... .

Heba : Reading a book ! (2) ..... ?

Sara : It's about the Pyramids at Giza.

Heba : Have you ever visited the Pyramids ?

Sara : (3) ..... .

Heba : (4) ..... ?

Sara : I visited them last holiday.

Heba : How did you go there ?

Sara : (5) ..... .

B. Reading Comprehension

2 **Read and complete the text with words from the following list :**

absorb - burn - environment - fuels - burning - electricity

We should do our best to keep the (1) ..... safe and clean. We shouldn't cut down trees because they (2) ..... carbon dioxide. We should reduce using fossil (3) ..... . We also should use cleaner forms of energy. We must avoid (4) ..... rubbish. This may protect our planet.

3 **Read the following text, then answer the questions :**

An e-mail that starts with : "I love you" seems to be a wonderful message that surely attracts you and makes you excited to open and read **it**. You may think that it was sent by close friend, a kind relative or an honest wife who reminds you of her love and respect. That was exactly what I had thought.

However, the fact was completely different. This e-mail was a source of much trouble for me. It made me lose my job in a big company for selling electric goods. It wasn't really a nice message from someone who admires me but it was a dangerous computer virus sent from an unknown address. It destroyed all the files and documents saved on my computer which had the accounts and data of my company's customers. This caused a great damage for the company so my employer asked me to leave my job.

Now, I'm jobless. It was my mistake, but I learned the lesson. I'll never open an e-mail from addresses I don't know.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This passage teaches you to ..... .
   a. destroy all files saved on your computer.
   b. stop sending and receiving e-mails.
   c. leave your work and be free.
   d. check your e-mails carefully.
2. The underlined word "**it**" refers to ..... .
   a. the e-mail b. the job c. the company d. the computer
3. "I love you" was really a/an ..... .
   a. present b. computer virus
   c. invitation d. nice message

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Where did the writer receive this e-mail from ?
   .....
5. What did the writer lose because of this e-mail ?
   .....
6. In your opinion, how does the writer feel now ?
   .....

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A ..... is the land that is below the area around it.
   a. forest b. depression c. mountain d. tower
2. There are a lot of traditional arts in Egypt. The word "traditional" here means ..... .
   a. modern b. difficult c. ancient d. new
3. A ..... is a small plant which has started to grow from a seed.
   a. seedling b. planet c. grain d. star

4. To make the adjective from the word "success", we add the suffix " ..... ".
   a. -al b. -ion c. -ness d. -ful
5. To be famous and rich, you should be a toiler. The word "toiler" means someone who ..... .
   a. never works b. works hard c. sleeps a lot d. eats much
6. The synonym of the word "true" is ..... .
   a. sad b. incorrect c. remote d. correct

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. A list of modern wonders ..... (write) in 2007.
2. I didn't go to the theatre until I ..... (finish) my work.
3. If he ..... (not hate) flying, he would travel by plane.
4. He told me that it ..... (will be) a holiday the next day.
5. My family plan ..... (spend) the weekend in Alexandria.

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"A review of the things you are dreaming of"

.....
.....
.....
.....

20 Sohag Governorate

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Nader are talking about social media.

Ahmed : Hi Nader! I see you are using social media so much.
Nader : Of course. (1) ..... ?
Ahmed : Yes, I think they are very useful. What's your favourite social media ?
Nader : (2) ..... .
Ahmed : (3) ..... ?
Nader : I spend two hours daily.
Ahmed : I think that (4) ..... .
Nader : For me, that is enough. I don't want to waste my time.
Ahmed : Thank you, Nader.
Nader : (5) ..... .

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

interrupt - will - renewable - cut - won't - fossil

We should do our best to keep our environment clean. We mustn't (1) ..... down trees because they absorb carbon dioxide. Also, we mustn't burn (2) ..... fuels to stop climate change. That's why we should use (3) ..... energy that comes from the sun and the wind. So, we (4) ..... be able to live in a safe planet.

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Over twenty million people work in the coffee industry. They grow and sell enough coffee beans for four hundred million cups of coffee a year. Coffee is worth more money than any other industry in the world except oil. In Brazil alone, about three thousand coffee plants are looked after every year. Coffee was discovered in Ethiopia. A man called Khalid, who was looking after his goats and sheep, noticed that they were very **energetic** after eating a certain kind of beans. They ate more grass and ran fast everywhere. He decided to taste the beans himself and found that they gave him a lot of energy.

The coffee drink we know today was first made in Turkey in 1555. Since then, coffee drinking has become a daily routine in Turkish life. By the 18th century, coffee had become an important part of the European life. In England, the coffee houses of London became famous meeting places for writers, artists and men working in the government.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of this passage is about ..... .
   a. the types of coffee b. the history of coffee
   c. how to make coffee d. coffee houses
2. The underlined word "**energetic**" mean very ..... .
   a. active b. lazy c. weak d. hot
3. Khalid looked after goats and sheep. He was a ..... .
   a. mechanic b. pilot c. driver d. shepherd

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Which country grows the most coffee in the word ?

.....

5. Why were the coffee houses in London famous in the past ?

.....

6. Do you think Khalid is clever ? Why / Why not ?

.....

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A ..... habitat is next to the sea and you find rocks there.
   a. mountain b. coastal c. polar d. rainforest
2. You should ..... making bad friends.
   a. set up b. avoid c. retire d. keep
3. The Great Pyramid in Giza is a very big building. It's ..... .
   a. expensive b. tiny c. normal d. enormous
4. A ..... is a tall plant which we can use to make cups and chairs.
   a. mangrove b. seagrass c. bamboo d. seeding
5. The ink in my printer is low. I have to change the ..... .
   a. cartridge b. brace c. battery d. fabric
6. We add the prefix "....." to the word "cycle" to mean "use something again".
   a. im- b. un- c. re- d. dis-

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The governor said that the tower ..... (will) be the tallest in Africa.
2. Adel ran fast ..... (so) he was late for school.
3. I didn't use ..... (playing) chess when I was young.
4. The news ..... (be) watched by Omar yesterday.
5. After Salma ..... (write) the e-mail, she sent it

D. Writing

6 Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"A biography of a person your like"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

PART TWO For Al-Azhar students & inclusive students

جزء خاص لطلاب الازهر الشريف وطلاب الدمج

تنويه تم تعديل الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣ / ٢٠٢٤

1. Models paragraphs for Al-Azhar students

١. نماذج فقرات إنشائية لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

Unit 7

1. "Natural habitats"

The habitat is the natural home of an animal or plant. There are different habitats on Earth. For example, coastal, polar, grassland rainforest habitats. Pollution destroys these habitats so many animals became endangered. We should work hard to protect them. This will save our planet.

2. "Fossils of Wadi al-Hitan"

"The Valley of the Whales" is a desert area in Fayoum Depression. Many fossils of ancient whales were found there. These fossils were studied by a team of international scientists in 2005. The fossils were preserved really well. These fossils are very important. Although Wadi al-Hitan is a famous place, not many people visit it.

3. "Mongooses"

There are 30 different kinds of mongooses in the world. It has a long body and long tail. Their bodies are covered by thick fur. Mongooses can see and hear very well. They are famous for fighting snakes. This animal is active during the day and sleep at night.

4. "Caracals"

Caracals are beautiful gold-coloured wild cats. They aren't very big. They have large ears which help them hear well. They can jump very high and climb trees. Caracals live in deserts, grasslands and forests. They are usually active during the night.

5. "Natural wonders of Egypt"

Egypt has beautiful natural wonders. The White Desert National Park is one of them. It contains five oases. It has rocks that the wind has made into strange shapes. It's a beautiful wonder as the colours of rocks change at different times of the day. So they are very beautiful to look at.

Unit 8

1. "Climate change"

Our planet is getting hotter and our weather is changing. There are more droughts, floods and forest fires. Climate change is one of the main reasons for this. Climate change is caused by greenhouse gases. These gases are made when we burn fossil fuels. So, we need to use cleaner renewable energy.

2. "Weaving"

There are a lot of traditional arts in Egypt. Weaving is an Egyptian tradition. It's an amazing craft although there aren't many traditional weavers in Egypt today. A weaver uses a machine called a loom. This machine crosses threads under and over each other to make fabric.

3. "Seagrass"

Seagrass is the food for many sea animals. It's found in the sea along the coast. Baby fish and sea animals live in it because it is a safe place. Seagrass helps keep the sea healthy. It also can help stop climate change. This is because it absorbs 10 % of the ocean's carbon dioxide every year.

Unit 9

1. "What do you do to help the environment ?"

Our environment is in great danger. It faces many problems like pollution and deforestation. So we have to help it by protecting it and giving up bad habits. We should use rechargeable batteries and reusable shopping bags. We should grow more plants. We should use the air conditioning less often.

2. "The Great Green Wall"

The Great Green Wall is a green initiative in Africa. It was set up in 2007 by the African Union. It aims to solve the problem of desertification in the Sahel region of Africa. Desertification happens when green land becomes desert. The Great Green Wall Initiative will plant millions of trees, seedlings and plants across Africa. These trees and plants will improve the land for farming again.

Unit 10

1. "The International Space Station"

The International Space Station is a huge spacecraft. It is 70 km above the Earth. It's a place where astronauts live and work. It orbits the Earth every day. It's one of the brightest objects in the sky. You can see it without using a telescope.

2. "Your trip to the planetarium"

Last week, I went to the planetarium in Alexandria. I went with my family. We went by train. We saw a really interesting film about Ancient Egyptians. We learned about how the Ancient Egyptians had studied the stars. They had even used the stars to help them build the Pyramids.

3. "Dr Farouk El-Baz"

Dr Farouk El-Baz is one of the most important scientists. He was a space scientist and geologist. He worked with NASA. He helped to plan where Apollo II should land on the moon. Farouk El-Baz also started studying deserts on the Earth. He used satellites to find rivers that were under the sand.

4. "Modern discoveries"

The telescope is one of the most important inventions. Astronomers had studied space with their eyes before the telescope was invented. It was invented in 1608. Galileo improved the design. He made the lenses stronger. He could study the planets in our solar system.

Unit 11

1. "A new nature reserve"

A new nature reserve will open on the coast. It will protect many fish, birds and sea animals. It will be a good place for families to walk. We can also have a picnic there. We will visit the reserve to learn more about the environment. We will also learn how to keep fish, birds and sea animals safe there.

2. "A job you would like in the media"

There are many different jobs in media. For me, I would like to be a journalist. It is a great job. I have studied media and Arabic at university. I love writing and I am interested in the news. I like meeting different people and finding out more about the world.

3. "The Mother of All Broadcasters"

Safia el Mohandes was the first female voice on the radio. She was born in 1922 in Cairo. She joined the Egyptian radio. She was the first female radio presenter. Safia was very kind and helpful to all radio broadcasters. She retired in 1982.

4. "Farouk Shousha"

Shousha is a well-known radio presenter and a famous poet. He was born in Damietta in 1936. He graduated from the Faculty of Dar al-Ulum in 1956. Shousha worked as a radio and TV presenter. He was called "the guardian of the Arabic language." He won the Nile Prize for Literature in 2016.

Unit 12

1. "Driverless cars"

In the future, driverless cars will change all of our lives. We will be able to travel anywhere without touching the controls! They will also be electric. They will be better for the environment. Driverless cars will be part of our life.

2. "Technology schools"

I love maths and science. I'd like to go to a technology school. They help students with the skills that they need to work well. You need to pass a test to get into a technology school. It won't be easy. Students who are successful often work in factories and businesses to get experience.

3. "My goals for the future"

I want to do something to help other people. I'm going to work as a volunteer at weekends. I will help in the children's hospital. I will read the children funny stories. I will play games with them. Really, it is a great work.

2. Sample tests for Al-Azhar students

٢. اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Alexandria Zone

A. Language Functions

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Dalia : Have you got a smart phone ?
Dina : (1) ..... .
Dalia : (2) ..... ?
Dina : I bought it last week.
Dalia : How much did it cost ?
Dina : (3) ..... .

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

have - alive - called - has - desert

The camel is a very useful animal for (1) ..... travellers. It (2) ..... the ability to stay (3) ..... in the desert without food and water for a long time so, it is (4) ..... the ship of the desert. The camel uses the fat as a source of energy during its long journeys in the desert.

B. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Scientists are very important to our future. **They** can help farmers to produce good quality food for the world's growing population. They can also develop new crops which don't suffer from diseases. Scientists and engineers can work with car companies to produce cars and other vehicles which use fuel more efficiently. At the same time, researchers scientists are looking for new types of energy to replace oil and petrol. Other scientists are doing research into new treatment for illness. Perhaps the most important work scientists are doing is to find ways of reducing global warming.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. How can scientists help farmers ?

.....

2. Why do scientists and engineers work with car companies ?

.....

3. Why are scientists important for the field of medicine ?

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun **they** refers to ..... .
   a. companies b. problems c. scientists d. farmers
5. Scientists work hard to find ways of reducing global ..... .
   a. problem b. warming c. energy d. power

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Siwa is a very famous ..... in Egypt.
   a. country b. club c. field d. oasis
2. ..... you study English ?
   a. Are b. Do c. Does d. Were
3. The sun gives us ..... energy.
   a. solar b. lunar c. wind d. water
4. Have you ..... used a telescope ?
   a. never b. just c. ever d. recently

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. We won't ..... (saving) water if we take long showers.
2. We ..... (use to) waste water, but now we try to save it.
3. We must start ..... (recycle) more rubbish.

D. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of six sentences on :

"Pollution"

.....
.....
.....
.....

2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif

Qena Zone

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Sara and Yare are talking about visiting the natural wonders in Egypt.

Sara : Do you know any natural wonders in Egypt, Yara ?
Yara : (1) ..... .
Sara : Al Nayzak lake ! (2) ..... ?
Yara : It is a three-hour drive from Hurghada.
Sara : (3) ..... ?
Yara : Yes, I can. It is described as one of the best places to dive and swim.
Sara : Thank you, Yara.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

view - study - go -going - entrance

New Alamein City is (1) ..... to be a beautiful, modern city with apartments, hotels, restaurants and parks. There will be three universities, so, it will be a great place to (2) ..... . At the (3) ..... of the city, there will be two big towers, called the Gate Towers. They will be 170 metres tall and have a great (4) ..... . I'd like to live there one day !

B. Reading comprehension

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

The Grand Egyptian Museum [GEM], is also known as the Giza Museum, welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is further from the city center than the old museum, but only two kilometers from the pyramids at Giza and 15 kilometres southwest of Cairo. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1.557 designs from more than 80 different countries made it the second largest competition in history. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance with its big plants and statues. The biggest statue is the 12-metre statue of Ramses II. It has more space for valuable objects. More people can see them and it is able to look after the objects really well.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the second name of the Giza Museum ?

.....

2. Where is the GEM ?

.....

3. Why do you think Egypt made a competition to design a new museum ?

.....

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The GEM is ..... kilometers from Cairo.
   a. fifty b. five c. fifteen d. two
5. The old museum is ..... than the new one.
   a. larger b. newer c. more modern d. smaller

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This library ..... two years ago.
   a. built b. was built c. build d. building

2. Teachers ..... their students kindly.
   a. treat b. fight c. catch d. hunt
3. They used to ..... their grandfather.
   a. helping b. helped c. helps d. help
4. A ..... is a person who writes articles in a newspaper.
   a. photographer b. journalist c. farmer d. newsreader

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The Pyramids ..... (visiting) by many tourists every year.
2. Tarek said that the red team ..... (wins) the match.
3. He ..... (doesn't) play with his toys until he had done his homework.

D. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of six sentences on :

"Your goals in the future"

.....
.....
.....
.....

3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Beni-Suif Zone

A. Language Functions

1 Finish the following dialogue:

Youssef and Ali are talking about reading.

Youssef : Hello, Ali. What are you doing ?
Ali : Hello, Youssef. (1) ..... .
Youssef : I know you enjoy reading English stories. (2) ..... ?
Ali : I bought it yesterday.
Youssef : (3) ..... ?
Ali : Yes, of course. You can borrow it.
Youssef : Thanks a lot.
Ali : You're welcome.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

up - absorb - burn - Deforestation - down

Climate change is caused by greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide. This is made when we (1) ..... fossil fuels such as oil. Rubbish in landfill sites makes a greenhouse gas called methane. (2) ..... also

produces greenhouse gases. Trees (3) ..... carbon dioxide from the air. When we cut (4) ..... trees, the carbon dioxide stays in the air.

B. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Many people are interested in learning English. It is known that it is a very important language as it is spoken all over the world. It isn't difficult to learn English. You will use it even when you join the university, but unless you use English, you will forget **it**. The English language gives us the chance to read English books and many wonderful stories. Speaking English fluently will help you when you travel to foreign countries to be able to communicate with people there. It is also difficult to use the internet without knowing much about English. It's better for all of us to learn and improve it well.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

.....

2. What will happen if you don't use English ?

.....

3. Why do we use English when we travel to foreign countries ?

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. It is ..... to learn English.
   a. difficult b. easy c. useless d. bad
5. The underlined word "**it**" refers to ..... .
   a. the internet b. a story c. the university d. English

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Our school ..... in around 1990.
   a. build b. is built c. was built d. built
2. That road ..... means turn right.
   a. transport b. sign c. service d. truck
3. Our ..... system includes the sun and eight planets.
   a. solar b. rainy c. cloudy d. model
4. If I had more time, I ..... more.
   a. read b. would read c. reading d. will read

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Fatma had never heard Italian before she ..... (goes) to Rome.

2. What have you ..... (enjoy) most about the unit ?
3. The lessons ..... (studying) by Hassan yesterday.

D. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of six sentences on :

"Your dream job"

.....
.....
.....
.....

4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Sohag Zone

A. Language Functions

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Yousif meets a tourist.

Yousif : Welcome to Egypt. Where do you come from ?
Tourist : (1) ..... .
Yousif : Italy! How did you come to Egypt ?
Tourist : (2) ..... .
Yousif : (3) ..... ?
Tourist : I will stay for a week.
Yousif : I wish you a nice holiday.
Tourist : Thank you.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

palm - tourists - is - be - sold

The Kharga Oasis (1) ..... surrounded by desert, far from the River Nile. It is visited by more and more (2) ..... every year. Hundreds of date (3) ..... trees are grown here. The dates are (4) ..... in many shops in the area. You can also find bags, baskets, shoes and furniture that are also made from the date palm trees.

B. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Egypt is a big Arab country. It is located in the north east of Africa. Egypt has a population of about 104 million people. They are famous for being kind and friendly. Egypt also has a very fine weather and a very long and great history. Its fine weather and beautiful ancient monuments

attract millions of tourists from all over the world. The Great pyramid in Giza is the most popular monument in the world. We all should be proud of Egypt.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What attract tourists to Egypt ?

.....

2. What is the most popular monument in the world ?

.....

3. What is the weather in Egypt like ?

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The Egyptians are ..... people.
   a. lazy b. friendly c. strange d. negative
5. Egypt has a population of ..... one hundred million.
   a. more b. less c. under d. about

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Plants ..... carbon dioxide from the air.
   a. absorb b. release c. send d. heat
2. Basim ..... the test if he studied harder.
   a. will pass b. would pass c. passes d. passed
3. The ..... is a person who travels into space.
   a. pilot b. driver c. thinker d. astronaut
4. The man ..... us that he would attend the meeting.
   a. said b. told c. asked d. said to

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. My family has decided ..... (going) to Jordan next year.
2. If Injy ..... (wants) to save electricity, she'd turn off the computer.
3. Where did your cousins ..... (used to) live before they moved to Cairo ?

D. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of six sentences on :

"Climate change"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

5 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Sharkia Zone

A. Language Functions

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ahmed : (1) ..... ?
Aly : I'm going to talk about plants in the house.
Ahmed : Why are plants in the house good for your healthy ?
Aly : (2)..... .
Ahmed : (3) ..... ?
Aly : I put my plants in my balcony.

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

kittens - with - holes - night - up

Caracals are usually active during the (1) ..... and mostly live alone. Mother caracals often live in (2) ..... that are made by other animals. Caracals usually have between three and six (3) ..... who stay with their mother for about ten months. Caracals can live for (4) ..... to 12 years in the wild.

B. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Scientists had done a lot of research before the first person walked on the moon in 1969 and one of the most important scientists was Farouk El Baz. **He** helped to plan where Apollo II should land on the moon. Farouk also taught astronauts which rocks to take from the moon on later visits. After studying the moon, Farouk started studying deserts on the earth. He used satellites to find rivers that were under the sand.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What had the scientists done before people went to the moon ?

.....

2. How did Farouk El Baz find rivers under the desert's land ?

.....

3. What did Farouk El Baz plan ?

.....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The first person walked on the moon in ..... .

a. 1960 b. 1970 c. 1969 d. 1980

5. ..... was one of the most important scientists.
   a. Mohammed Salah b. Farouk El Baz
   c. Nageeb Mahfouz d. Amr Diab

C. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I didn't have lunch ..... I had returned home.
   a. before b. after c. until d. as soon as
2. We can't continue to use petrol for cars because it is not ..... .
   a. sustainable b. reusable c. greener d. bamboo
3. A ..... is an instrument used to make distant objects appear nearer.
   a. thermometer b. telescope c. mirror d. microscope
4. If Hamdy ..... taller, he would be a very good basketball player.
   a. is b. was c. will d. would be

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I'm really tired because I ..... (revise) all night for my test.
2. Lama's family ..... (go) to England for a holiday if it was cheaper.
3. He used to ..... (played) football for AC Milan and other teams.

D. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of six sentences on :

"Life in the future"

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

3. Sample test for inclusive students

٣. اختبار لطلاب الدمج

Dakahlia Governorate

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Moaz : What's your favourite sport, Fadi ?
Fadi : a. Football. b. Kick boxing. c. Basketball.
Moaz : How long have you been doing kick boxing ?
Fadi : a. Since I was 6. b. Thank you c. Goodbye
Moaz : a. Is it boring ? b. Is it expensive ? c. Is it hard ?
Fadi : No, it isn't. It's interesting.
Moaz : a. When do you do it ? b. Where do you do it ? c. Who do you do it with ?
Fadi : I do it in the club.

2 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Some tourists like to visit Egypt every year. They don't like to come to Egypt in the summer. They like to come in the winter. Tom and Jane are tourists. They are from London. They like to enjoy the fine weather in Egypt and see the ancient monuments. They like to visit Cairo, Luxor and Aswan by air because it is fast and more comfortable. They visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx by bus. They visit many places and take photos to remember their good days in Egypt.

Choose the correct answer :

1. Tourists like to visit Egypt in ..... .
   a. summer b. winter c. fall d. autumn
2. Tom and Jane are ..... .
   a. Egyptians b. Chinese c. Japanese d. English
3. Tourists like to visit Egypt by ..... .
   a. plane b. train c. ship d. bus
4. Tourists take ..... to remember their days in Egypt.
   a. hats b. photos c. bags d. flags
5. The weather of Egypt is ..... .
   a. bad b. snowy c. fine d. storm
6. Tourists go the Pyramids and the Sphinx by ..... .
   a. car b. bus c. train d. bike

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. He lives in a remote area. The synonym of the word "remote" is ..... .
   a. huge b. near c. far d. small
2. He works for a charity. He is a ..... .
   a. doctor b. teacher c. manager d. volunteer
3. A ..... is a place where people leave rubbish on the land.
   a. habitat b. forest c. landfill d. desert
4. The Pharaohs preserved their dead bodies well. This means they ..... them well.
   a. discovered b. sold c. kept d. served
5. A/An ..... is a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away.
   a. telescope b. microscope c. amplifier d. webpage
6. To form the adjective from "coast", we add "..... ".
   a. -al b. -ly c. -ing d. -ed

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. Have you ..... helped to clean your house ?
   a. never b. ever c. since d. for
2. If he trains harder, he ..... win the match.
   a. would b. had to c. will d. would have
3. If we ..... greener energy, we would produce less pollution.
   a. used b. use c. uses d. using
4. They decided to ..... many trees in this area.
   a. plants b. planted c. planting d. plant
5. After we ..... useful information about the stars, we did our research.
   a. collecting b. had collected c. have collected d. collect
6. The governor said that the park ..... the biggest in Egypt.
   a. is b. was c. does d. did

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d :

"I went to the park in the afternoon. - Last weekend I got up at 9 o'clock in the morning. - I went home in the evening. - I had breakfast with my family"

a. Last weekend I got up 9 o'clock in the morning. I went home in the evening. - I had breakfast with my family. I went to the park in the afternoon.

b. I went to the park in the afternoon. Last weekend I got up at 9 o'clock in the morning. I went home in the evening. I had breakfast with my family.

c. I had breakfast with my family. I went home in the evening. Last weekend I got up at 9 o'clock in the morning. I went to the park in the afternoon.

d. Last weekend I go up at 9 o'clock in the morning. I had breakfast with my family. I went to the park in the afternoon. I went home in the evening.

Quick Look

An hour before the Exam

تمكن من مراجعة منهجك فى ساعة واحدة قبل الامتحان

أهم الأفكار المتكررة فى الامتحانات السابقة والتى تعتبر من أهم مواضع الامتحان.

السؤال الأول فى ورقة الامتحان

A. Language Functions

1 A. Finish the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Heba are talking about reading.

Ahmed : Hi ! Heba, where are you going ?

Heba : (1) ..... .

Ahmed : (2) ..... ?

Heba : Yes, I like reading.

Ahmed : What kinds of books do you read ?

Heba : (3) ..... .

Ahmed : (4) ..... ?

Heba : I visit the library twice a week.

Ahmed : Could you recommend me a book ?

Heba : (5) ..... . *(Giza 2022)*

B. Finish the following dialogue:

Essam and Adel are talking about next summer holiday.

Essam : Hello, Adel. Where will you go next summer holiday ?

Adel : (1) ..... .

Essam : Sharm ElSheikh ! (2) ..... ?

Adel : I will go with my friend Asser.

Essam : (3) ..... ?

Adel : No, we will stay in a hotel.

Essam : How will you go ?

Adel : (4) ..... .

Essam : How long will you stay ?

Adel : (5) ..... . *(Qalyoubia 2023)*

السؤال الثانى فى ورقة الامتحان

B. Reading Comprehension

2 A. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

must - environment - renewable - mustn't - fossil - comfortable

We should do our best to keep the environment clean. We (1) ..... cut down trees because they absorb carbon dioxide. Also, we mustn't burn (2) ..... fuels to avoid climate change. That's why we should use (3) ..... energy such as solar energy and wind power. So, we will be able to live in a safe (4) ..... . *(Dakahlia 2022)*

B. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

Plane - calls - for - astronauts - since - space craft

The international space station is a huge (1) ..... 70 Km above the Earth. It is a place where (2) ..... live and work when they go into space. Most astronauts stay on the space station (3) ..... about six months. They can send e-mails or make phone (4) ..... to the Earth. *(Damietta 2023)*

السؤال الثالث فى ورقة الامتحان

3 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

There are some beautiful natural wonders in Egypt, such as the White Desert, National Park and Al-Nayzak Lake. There are also some wonderful man-made wonders, such as the Great Pyramid and the Citadel of Qaitbay in Alexandria.

Egypt also has some wonders that aren't visited by many tourists like Gabel Elba. This is because it is difficult to reach. Another wonder that is difficult to reach is the Lost City because **it** is now under the Mediterranean Sea near Alexandria. When the Lost City was discovered, Frank Goddio saw lots of very old statues, temples and monuments there.

Another wonder is the Great Sand Sea in the south of Egypt. This is a part of the Western desert where you can find lots of big sand dunes. Some unusual glass is also found in the Great Sand Sea. Egypt's natural and man-made wonders are among the most beautiful wonders in the world.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The main idea of the text is .....
   a. The Egyptian seas. b. The Egyptian monuments.
   c. The Egyptian wonders. d. The Egyptian people.
2. The Great Pyramid is a ..... wonder.
   a. man-made b. modern c. natural d. new
3. Some unusual glass is found in ..... .
   a. the Great Pyramid b. the Great Sand Sea
   c. the Nayzak lake d. the Citadel

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What does the underlined pronoun (**it**) refer to ?

   .....

5. Summarize the wonders which are mentioned in the text. (At least 4 wonders)

   .....

6. Have you visited any of these wonders before ? *(Giza 2023)*

   .....

السؤال الرابع في ورقة الامتحان

C. Vocabulary and Structures

4 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Rewrite your homework. The prefix "Re" means to do it ..... . *(Cairo 2022)*
   a. before b. first c. again d. last
2. He takes no money for his voluntary work, he does it for ..... . *(Sharkia 2022)*
   a. free b. money c. food d. wealth
3. "....." is a person who travels to space. *(Menofia 2023)*
   a. An astronaut b. A researcher c. An assistant d. A driver
4. Everyone should protect the environment. "Protect" means ..... . *(North Sinai 2023)*
   a. increase b. keep safe c. discover d. damage
5. "....." is the synonym of the word "strange". *(Qalyoubia 2023)*
   a. Familiar b. Usual c. Similar d. Unusual
6. A ..... is a place where people leave rubbish on the land. *(Beheira 2022)*
   a. habitat b. forest c. landfill site d. desert

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A/An ..... is a scientist who studies stars and planets. *(Sharkia 2022)*
   a. driver b. engineer c. assistant d. astronomer
2. A ..... is a piece of equipment you use to see things that are far away. *(Qalyoubia 2023)*
   a. telescope b. satellite c. sensor d. map
3. To get the adjective of "sustain", you add the suffix "..... ". *(Ismailia 2022)*
   a. -al b. -ment c. -able d. -tion
4. If something is ..... , it costs much money. *(Sohag 2022)*
   a. easy b. cheap c. expensive d. difficult
5. Trees breathe in carbon dioxide and breathe out oxygen so, they are ..... for us. *(Damietta 2023)*
   a. bad b. harmful c. useful d. useless
6. Satellites send lots of signals. The antonym of the word "send" is "..... ".
   a. deliver b. allow c. pass d. receive *(Port Said 2023)*

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان

5 A. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. In the past, people ..... (use) to get paper bags at supermarkets. *(Giza 2022)*
2. If it ..... (rain) heavily, we will use umbrellas. *(Menofia 2023)*
3. The pyramids ..... (visit) by many tourists every year. *(Suez 2022)*
4. I didn't go to the theatre until I ..... (finish) my work. *(Sohag 2022)*
5. Nada watched the film as soon as she ..... (does) her homework. *(Qalyoubia 2022)*

B. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. We need ..... (using) cleaner renewable energy. *(Cairo 2023)*
2. Ali ..... (not use) to like cheese, but now he loves it. *(Luxor 2023)*
3. Two chairs ..... (broken) during yesterday's party. *(New Valley 2023)*
4. Amr told me that he ..... (travel) abroad the next week. *(Cairo 2022)*
5. Heba ..... (do) her homework for two hours. She hasn't finished yet. *(Dakahlia 2022)*

السؤال السادس في ورقة الامتحان

D. Writing

6 **A. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :**

"A biography of a person you like"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Assiut 2022 / Alexandria 2022 / Sohag 2023)

B. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"A review of your dream job"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Damietta 2023)

C. Write ONE HUNDRED and TEN (110) words on the following :

"A short story about a holiday you had"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(Gharbia 2022)